

**Owner's Manual** 

**A3** 

Owner's Manual English 09.2020 8Y0012720AE



A3

www.audi.com

# Warranty entitlement record

Vehicle identification number			
Model, engine output, gearbox, month and year of manufacture			
Engine and gearbox code			
Paint no., interior equipment no.			
Optional equipment no.			
Date of delivery to customer:			
Audi dealer's stam	ıp		

No part of this publication may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG reserves the right to change the information in this publication without prior notice. All rights under the laws of copyright are expressly reserved by AUDI AG.

AUDI AG, Auto-Union-Straße 1, 85045 Ingolstadt, Germany

© 2020 AUDI AG



# For the sake of the environment

This environmentally friendly paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.

#### **Foreword**

Thank you for choosing an Audi.

Your new Audi is a combination of superb craftsmanship and state-of-the-art technology. Audi recommends that you read this Owner's Manual carefully so that you quickly become familiar with your vehicle and can take full advantage of all its functions in everyday use.

In addition to information on how to use the controls and equipment, this Manual also contains important information on looking after your vehicle. This is relevant for your safety and will help preserve your car's value. The Manual also offers useful driving tips and advice, together with some suggestions on how to drive your car with minimum impact on the environment.

Audi wishes you safe and enjoyable motoring with your vehicle.



#### 

Please read the important safety information about the use of child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat ⇒ page 76.

### **Table of Contents**

Notes on this Owner's Manual	5	Child lock	48 49
Quick reference	6	Panorama sun roof	50
Getting started	6	Garage door opener	51
Online information	6		
FAQs	6	Lights and vision	54
Front cabin	8	Exterior lights	54
Overview of warning and indicator lamps .	9	Interior lights	57
3		Clear vision	58
Displays and controls	14	Windscreen wipers	60
Instrument cluster	14	•	
Instrument cluster overview	14	Sitting correctly and safely	64
How to use the multi-function steering		Correct seating position for vehicle	
wheel	15	occupants	64
Selecting the display	16	Front seats	64
Coolant temperature gauge	16	Steering wheel	67
Rev counter	17	Head restraints	68
Power meter	17	Seat belts	69
Mileage recorder	17	Memory function	72
Outside temperature display	18	Airbag system	73
Engine oil temperature gauge	18	Child restraint systems	76
Boost display	18		
Vehicle functions	18	Storage and convenience	82 82
Touch display	21	Ashtray	82
Touch display	21	Power sources	82
display	21	Cup holders	83
Multi Media Interface	23	Storage compartments	83
ridti ricdia interface	23	Luggage compartment	84
Head-up display	29	Roof carrier	87
Description	29	Noor carrier	07
bescription	23	Heating and cooling	88
Speech dialogue system	30	Air conditioner	88
General notes	30	Manual air conditioner	89
Description	30	2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air	0.5
External voice control function	31	conditioner	90
		Auxiliary heating/ventilation	93
Global functions	33	Auxiliary air conditioning	95
Other function selector buttons	33		
		Driving	97
Setting off	34	Starting the vehicle	97
Personal settings	34	Driving	99
Users	34	Engine	104
		Start/stop system	108
Doors and windows	37	Brakes	110
Central locking system	37	Electro-mechanical parking brake	112
Keys	41	Special driving situations	114
Boot lid	45		

Handling dynamics	116	Assisted parking	189
Audi drive select	116	Park assist	191
Suspension	116	raik assist	191
Steering	117	Infotainment	194
Four-wheel drive (quattro)	118		194
Electronic stabilisation control	118	Telephone	
Electronic Stabilisation control	118	Introduction	194
I Bada and Italian and an artist and	121	Setting up	194
High-voltage system	121	Using the Audi phone box	196
General notes	121	Using the telephone	197
Charging the high-voltage battery	121	Settings	201
Charging equipment	127	Messages	202
		Troubleshooting	203
Towing a trailer	138		
Driving the vehicle with a trailer or		Audi connect	205
caravan	138	General information	205
Removable towing bracket	141	Audi connect infotainment	205
		Using the Wi-Fi hotspot	206
Assistance systems	146	Audi connect infotainment services	206
Driver assist systems	146	Functions on demand	207
General notes	146	Audi connect vehicle control services	207
Sensors for detecting the vehicle's		Settings	208
surroundings	147	Troubleshooting	209
Driver information	150	Emergency call	210
Speed warning function	150	Overview	210
Camera-based traffic sign recognition	150	Emergency call	210
Traffic light information	152	Online roadside assistance call	212
Rest recommendation	154	Information on data processing	212
Lap timer	154	Information about third-party services	
·		and other services with added benefit	213
Driver assistance	156		
Speed regulation systems	156	Navigation	215
Efficiency assist	158	Calling up the navigation menu	215
Adaptive cruise assist	159	myAudi navigation	215
Distance warning	170	Entering a destination	216
Lane departure warning	170	Stopping route guidance	219
Audi pre sense	173	Map	219
Side assist	176	Alternative routes	221
Exit warning system	178	Further functions	221
Emergency assist	179	Satellite map	222
		Electric range	223
Parking and manoeuvring	181	Map update	223
Introduction	181	Traffic information	224
Rear parking aid	181	Hazard alerts	225
Parking system plus	182	Settings	226
Reversing camera/surround view cameras .	184	Sectings	220
Rear cross-traffic assist	188		
Ncai ciuss-tiailic assist	100		

### **Table of Contents**

Radio	229	Wheels	279
General notes	229	Tyres and rims	279
Radio functions	230	Tyre pressure loss indicator	284
Online radio	232		
Options and settings	234	Care of vehicle and cleaning	286
Troubleshooting	235	General notes	286
-		Washing the vehicle	286
Media	236	Notes on cleaning and care	287
General notes	236	Taking the vehicle out of service	291
Bluetooth audio player	236	•	
Amazon Alexa	237	Self-help	292
Multimedia connections	237	Mobility	292
Playing media	238	General notes	292
Options and settings	242	Equipment	292
Supported media and file formats	243	Tyre repair kit	293
Troubleshooting	244	Changing a wheel	295
3		Compact temporary spare wheel	298
Audi Smartphone Interface	245	Jump-starting	299
Setting up	245	Towing away	301
Troubleshooting	246		
		Fuses and bulbs	305
Further settings	247	Fuses	305
System settings	247	Bulbs	308
Software update	248	Changing turn signal bulb in headlight	309
Connected devices	248	Changing bulbs for rear lights	310
Legal information	249	gg	
-3.		Customer information	313
Further information	251	Data protection	313
Trademarks and licences	251	Information on data protection	313
Driving school mode	251	Image recording	313
<b>3</b>		Data recorders	313
Service and care	252	Information transmitted	314
Checking and topping up fluids	252		
Fuel	252	Accessories and modifications	
Filling the tank	255	to the vehicle	317
Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue/		Maintenance, repairs and technical	
DEF)	260	changes	317
Emission control system	263	Accessories and replacement parts	318
Engine compartment	265	Information according to EU chemicals	
Engine oil	268	regulation REACH	319
Cooling system	271		
Brake fluid	273	Technical data	320
Electrical system	274	Identification data	320
Battery	275	Vehicle data	320
Windscreen washer system	277	Radio equipment	323
Service interval display	278	adarba	223
Service interval display for natural gas	_, 0	Index	325
system	278		525
0,000	_, _		

In this Owner's Manual, Audi provides you with important information, tips, suggestions and warnings. "Audi" refers to AUDI AG, the importer for your country and the joint ventures.

Audi works continuously to develop and further improve all products and models. Audi reserves the right to alter any part of the vehicle and its equipment or technical specifications at any time. The Owner's Manual is based on the information available at the time of printing. No legal commitment can therefore be implied by the information, illustrations or descriptions in this publication.

#### **KEEP THIS MANUAL**

Please ensure that this Owner's Manual and all associated documents are always kept in the vehicle. This is especially important when you lend or sell the vehicle to others

This manual describes the **equipment available** for all versions of the vehicle at the time of going to print. Some of the equipment described here will not be available until a later date, or may only be available in certain markets.

Some sections of this Owner's Manual do not apply to all vehicles. If this is the case, a text at the start of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, e.g. "Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function". This optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also marked with an asterisk "\*"

**Illustrations** are intended as a general guide, and may vary from the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

All references to **positions** such as "left", "right", "front" or "rear" are given as seen facing in the direction of travel.

- \* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment
- ► The section is continued on the following page.

⇒ A Refers to a "WARNING" within the same section. If the WARNING symbol is followed by a page number, the warning text referred to is included in a different section.

#### **WARNING**

Texts with this symbol contain safety information. They warn you of serious dangers, possibly involving accident or injury.

# 1

#### **CAUTION**

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to a possible risk of damage to your vehicle.



#### For the sake of the environment

Texts with this symbol refer to points relevant to the protection of the environment.



#### Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information of a more general nature.

# **Getting started**

### Online information

#### myAudi

You can access your Owner's Manual in digital form on myAudi using Audi online manuals. You can also find information on Audi Service, the maintenance of your vehicle or the Digital Service Schedule.

Important: You must have created a myAudi account and must have added your vehicle to it.

- ► Go online to my.audi.com, or:
- ▶ Start the myAudi app on your mobile device.



#### Note

Audi online manuals and the Digital Service Schedule are not available in all countries or on all mobile devices.

### **FAQs**

#### Before you set off

- How do I adjust the seats? ⇒ page 64
- How do I adjust the steering wheel?⇒ page 67
- How does the selector lever work? ⇒ page 100
- What is a transmission position and what is a driving program? 

  page 100
- How does the electro-mechanical parking brake work? ⇒ page 112
- How do I adjust the exterior mirrors?⇒ page 58
- How do I refuel my vehicle? ⇒ page 255
- How do I refuel my g-tron with natural gas?
   ⇒ page 258
- How do I refill the AdBlue tank on my diesel vehicle? ⇒ page 261
- Where is the windscreen washer container?⇒ page 268
- How can I store the tyre pressures? ⇒ page 284
- How do I drive with a trailer or caravan?⇒ page 138

#### Breakdowns and emergencies

- How do I jump-start my vehicle? ⇒ page 299
- Where can I find the warning triangle?⇒ page 292
- Where can I find the first-aid kit? ⇒ page 292
- Where can I find the recommended tyre pressures? ⇒ page 281
- Which airbags are installed in my vehicle?⇒ page 73

#### **Useful functions**

- How can I use a mobile phone as a key to the vehicle? ⇒ page 37 or ⇒ page 44
- How can I automatically control the distance to the vehicle in front? ⇒ page 159, Adaptive cruise assist
- How can I have the adaptive cruise assist system react automatically to speed limits and the road ahead? 
   ⇒ page 164
- How can I stay in my lane more easily?⇒ page 164
- How can I receive a warning if I don't stay in my lane? ⇒ page 170
- How can I use the parking aid? ⇒ page 181
- How can I operate the main beam headlights automatically? ⇒ page 55
- How can I drive off more easily? ⇒ page 113
- How can I check the blind spot more easily when changing lanes? ⇒ page 176, Side assist
- How can I open the boot lid with my foot?⇒ page 47
- How can I change the vehicle set-up in different driving situations depending on my personal mood and driving style? ⇒ page 116, Audi drive select
- Why does my engine switch off during driving?⇒ page 104
- How can I benefit from using the swerve assist and turn-off assist features? 
   ⇒ page 175 or
   ⇒ page 175

#### Displays and controls

- How do I switch on the touch display? *⇒* page 23
- How do I use the touch display? ⇒ page 21
- How do I adjust the volume? ⇒ page 33
- How do I navigate through the menus? ⇒ page 24
- How can I enter letters and numbers by handwriting? ⇒ page 27
- How can I control functions such as the navigation system by voice? ⇒ page 30
- Which functions can I control using the buttons on the steering wheel? ⇒ page 15 or ⇒page 33
- How can I have information projected onto the windscreen? ⇒ page 29, Head-up display
- How can I adjust the brightness of the instrument and display lighting? ⇒ page 58

- ⇒page 76 - What do I have to be aware of when driving

- How do I secure a child restraint system?

- How can I deactivate the front passenger's air-

bag? ⇒ page 75

- through an automatic car wash? ⇒ page 286
- How can I drive in an efficient and environmentally conscious way? ⇒ page 107
- How can I see when the next service date is? ⇒ page 278

#### Infotainment

- How can I connect my mobile phone to the handsfree telephone system? ⇒ page 194
- How can I switch between connected devices? ⇒ page 248
- How can I call up information online? ⇒ page 205, Audi connect
- How can I use the Wi-Fi hotspot? ⇒ page 206
- What ways are there to enter a navigation destination? ⇒ page 216
- How do I operate the map functions? ⇒ page 219
- How can I display traffic information? *⇒* page 224
- How can I listen to the radio? ⇒ page 229
- How can I play media? ⇒ page 238
- How can I play music from my mobile phone via the infotainment system? ⇒ page 236, Bluetooth audio player

#### Tips and tricks

- How can I unlock my vehicle from inside to let passengers in? ⇒ page 39
- How can I open all the windows from outside using the remote control key? ⇒ page 50, Convenience open/close function

# Front cabin

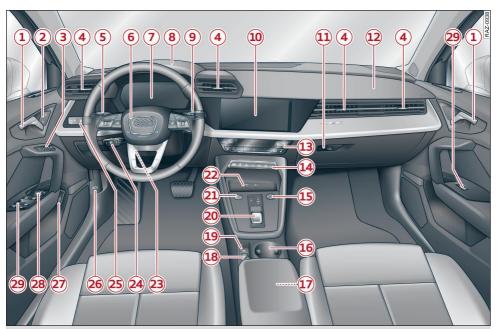


Fig. 1 Front cabin

1	Interior door handle			<ul> <li>Key-operated switch for front</li> </ul>	
2	Central locking switch	39		passenger's airbag	75
3	Buttons for memory function	72	12	Front passenger's airbag	73
4	Air outlet		13	Air conditioner	88
<u>5</u>	Control lever for:		14)	Depending on equipment fitted,	
_	– Turn signals and main beam			buttons for:	
	headlights	55		– Drive select	116
	– Main beam assist	55		<ul> <li>Electronic stabilisation control</li> </ul>	
	– Lane departure warning	170		(ESC)	119
	– Lane guidance	164		– Hybrid modes 🖾 (plug-in	
6	Multi-function steering wheel with:			hybrid drive)	105
	– Horn 🖶			– Start/stop system	108
	– Driver's airbag	73		- Hazard warning lights	57
	- Controls	15, 33		– Park assist	191
	– Paddle levers	102		– Parking aid	181
7	Instrument cluster	14	(15)	MMI touch control	23, 33
8	Head-up display	29	16	Depending on equipment fitted:	
9	Control lever for windscreen wipers			<ul> <li>Starting the engine in the event</li> </ul>	
Ŭ	and washer	60		of a malfunction	98
10)	Centre display	23		- Cup holder	83
ก	Lockable glove box with:			– Ashtray	82 1

17	Centre armrest with storage com-	
	partment	
18)	Depending on equipment fitted:	
	– Electrical socket	82
	– Cigarette lighter	82
19	Switch for electro-mechanical park-	
	ing brake	112
20	Depending on equipment fitted:	
	<ul> <li>Selector lever (for automatic</li> </ul>	
	gearbox)	100
	<ul><li>Gear lever (for manual gearbox) .</li></ul>	100
21)	START ENGINE STOP button	97
22	Depending on equipment fitted:	
	– Audi music interface	237
	– Audi phone box	196
23)	Steering wheel adjustment	67
24)	Control lever for:	
	– Speed regulation systems	156
	– Adaptive cruise assist	159
25)	Switches for:	
	– Lights	54
	<ul><li>All-weather lights</li></ul>	54
	– Rear fog light	54
26	Bonnet lock release	266
27	Button for:	
	- Boot lid	45
	<ul> <li>Tank flap release (plug-in hybrid</li> </ul>	
	drive)	256
28)	Adjuster for exterior mirrors	58
29	Switches for:	
	– Window regulators	49

# i) Note

- Some of the items of equipment listed in this section are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.

- Child lock

- The arrangement of switches and controls on right-hand drive models\* may be slightly different from the layout shown on ⇒ page 8. However, the symbols used to identify the controls are the same.

# Overview of warning and indicator lamps

#### Description

48

The warning and indicator lamps light up or flash in the instrument cluster. Their purpose is to indicate functions or faults. Certain warning and indicator lamps light up when the ignition is switched on and must go back out when the engine is switched on or once the vehicle is moving.

Some of the warning and indicator lamps may be accompanied by a driver message and a warning tone. The warning/indicator lamps and driver messages can be masked by further displays. To display a warning or message again, use the controls on the multi-function steering wheel to select the second display tab (driver messages)  $\Rightarrow$  page 15.

Some of the warning lamps may be displayed in different colours.

### ⚠ Central warning/indicator lamps

If the warning lamp  $\triangle$  or indicator lamp  $\triangle$ lights up, note the information in the instrument cluster.

#### Overview

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which of the following warning/indicator lamps are shown:

#### Red warning lamps

$\triangle$	Central warning lamp  ⇒ page 9, instrument cluster ⇒ page 14
£	Cooling system  ⇒ page 16,  ⇒ page 271,  ⇒ page 271
<b>*</b>	Seat belt ⇒ page 71
0	Gearbox ⇒ page 103

	Drive system
	⇒page 108,
	charging system
حابر	⇒page 127,
دنۍ	cooling system
	⇒ page 271,
	electrical system
	⇒page 274
(E)	Electro-mechanical parking brake
<b>(P)</b>	⇒page 112
	Electro-mechanical parking brake
	⇒ page 114,
	brake system
	⇒ page 273
	Steering
₩!	⇒ page 117
<b>⋒~</b>	Steering lock
	⇒page 117
<del>(</del>	Charging system
20-	⇒page 127
	Adaptive cruise assist
	⇒page 161,
	safe start monitor
Ā	⇒page 168,
	driver intervention prompt
	⇒page 168
	Adaptive cruise assist
<b>&gt;</b> 4	⇒page 161,
	⇒page 164
	Adaptive cruise assist
	⇒page 161,
NO.	take over steering prompt
	⇒page 164
	Distance warning
⊃!ં⊂	⇒page 170
	Lane departure warning
	⇒ page 171,
/	emergency assist
	⇒ page 179
	Pre sense
	⇒ page 173
	AdBlue
Ш	<i>⇒ page 260</i>

_	AdBlue
Be	⇒page 261
	Bonnet
<b>\$</b>	⇒page 267
الميارة	Engine oil pressure
	⇒page 269
<del>c - 5</del>	Electrical system
تت	<i>⇒page 274</i>
_	g-tron: Natural gas system
3	<i>⇒ page 278</i>

3-0	g-tron: Natural gas system  ⇒ page 278	
Yellow indica	tor lamps	_
$\triangle$	Central indicator lamp ⇒ page 9	_
<u>[7</u>	Engine speed governing ⇒ page 17	
<b>\( \( \tau \)</b>	Engine speed governing ⇒ page 17, drive system ⇒ page 108	
<b>₹</b>	Central locking system ⇔ <i>page 39</i>	
- <b>\</b> \\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\	Bulb monitor ⇔ <i>page 57</i>	
<b>≣</b> C	Adaptive light ⇒ <i>page 57</i>	
	Headlight range control ⇔ <i>page 57</i>	
	Light sensor/rain sensor ⇒ page 57, ⇒ page 62	
<b>⇔</b> !	Windscreen wipers ⇒ <i>page 62</i>	
20	Safety systems ⇔ <i>page 73</i>	
	Engine start system ⇒ page 98	
?	Convenience key ⇒ <i>page 98</i>	
***************************************	Hill hold assist ⇔ <i>page 100</i>	

	Gearbox
27°4	⇒ page 103,
3.1.7	clutch
	⇒page 103
// N	Vehicle sound
	⇒ page 108
	Drive system
(~	⇒ page 108
	Brake pads
	⇒page 111
	Brake system
	⇒page 111
106	Electro-mechanical parking brake
<b>(P)</b>	⇒ page 114
	Suspension control
Ö	⇒ page 117
•	· · ·
<del>@</del> !	Steering
•	⇒ page 117
<u> </u>	Steering lock
<b>⊚</b> <del></del> •	⇒page 117
	Electronic stabilisation control
OFF	⇒page 119
	Electronic stabilisation control
ESC OFF	⇒ page 119
Ħ	Electronic stabilisation control
	⇒ page 119
(ABS)	Anti-lock brake system
	⇒page 119
	High-voltage battery range
	⇒ page 127,
	fuel tank system/high-voltage
OO	system
	⇒ page 255
	Adaptive cruise assist
	⇒ page 161,
	take over steering prompt
<b>***</b>	⇒ page 164,
	⇒ page 104, ⇒ page 171
	Adaptive cruise assist
7 / 1	⇒ page 169
.1.	Distance warning
ર્-દ	⇒page 170

<b>/⊜</b> \	Lane departure warning ⇒ <i>page 172</i>
	Pre sense ⇒ page 173
A''B	Lane change warning, exit warn- ing system ⇒ page 178
SOS	Emergency assist ⇔ <i>page 180</i>
Pળ∆	Parking aids ⇔ <i>page 184</i>
<b>.</b>	Rear cross-traffic assist ⇒ page 188
P⊕ <sup>OFF</sup>	Park assist ⇔ <i>page 193</i>
sos	Emergency call function  ⇒ page 211
	Fuel tank system ⇒ page 255, ⇒ page 255
<b>(</b>	Emission control system ⇒ page 256, ⇒ page 265
i Co	AdBlue ⇔ <i>page 260</i>
	AdBlue ⇔ page 261
<b>-</b>	Particulate filter ⇔ page 263
<b>₩</b>	Engine oil level (MIN) ⇒ page 269
SENSOR	Engine oil sensor ⇒ page 269, ⇒ page 269
ľ	Engine warm-up requested ⇔ <i>page 269</i>
===	Electrical system ⇒ page 274
<b></b>	Washer fluid level ⇒ page 277
<b>3</b> —C	g-tron: Natural gas system ⇒ page 278

<u>(!)</u>	Tyre pressure  ⇒ page 284,  ⇒ page 284
TPMS	Tyre pressure  ⇒ page 284

Further indicator lamps		
≣O	Dipped headlights  ⇒ page 54	
<u> </u>	Side lights ⇒ page 54, ⇒ page 54	
<b>\( \rangle</b>	Turn signals ⇔ page 55, ⇔ page 57	
$\Rightarrow$	Turn signals ⇔ page 55, ⇔ page 57	
	Rear seat belt ⇔ <i>page 71</i>	
CNG	Natural gas engine ⇔ <i>page 97</i>	
₹EV	Plug-in hybrid modes ⇔ <i>page 106</i>	
(A)	Start/stop system ⇒ page 109	
<b>(P)</b>	Hold assist ⇔ page 113	
<b>⇔</b> ¹ <b>⇔</b>	Trailer turn signals ⇔ <i>page 139</i>	
*(*)	Cruise control ⇒ page 157	
LIM	Speed limiter ⇔ page 157, ⇔ page 157	
*	Efficiency assist ⇒ page 158, ⇒ page 159	
30	Efficiency assist ⇔ <i>page 158</i>	
W	Efficiency assist ⇒ page 158	
ا:ر آ:ات	Efficiency assist ⇒ page 158	

<b>=</b> 0}	Efficiency assist
	⇒ page 158
<b>%</b>	Efficiency assist
	⇒page 158
	Efficiency assist
	⇒ page 158,
	adaptive cruise assist
	⇒page 161
Â	Adaptive cruise assist
	⇒page 161
	Adaptive cruise assist
	⇒page 161,
	⇒page 168
<b>a</b>	Adaptive cruise assist
<b>\text{\rightarrow}</b>	⇒page 161
	Adaptive cruise assist
	⇒ page 161,
	⇒ page 164
/	Lane departure warning
	⇒ page 171
	Main beam headlights
	⇒page 55,
	⇒page 56
	Main beam assist
AUTO	⇒page 55
	Child lock
	⇒page 48
<b>(</b>	Child lock
	⇒ page 49
a	Child lock
W	⇒page 49
=0	Main beam assist
AUTO	⇒page 55,
	⇒page 57
$\overline{}$	Rear seat belt
u	⇒page 71
<u>}}}</u>	Auxiliary heating / ventilation
<u> </u>	⇒page 95
e)))	Convenience key
"//	⇒page 98
	Gearbox
	⇒page 103

	r
EVحر	Plug-in hybrid modes
~~	⇒ page 106
.>ς-EV	Plug-in hybrid modes
~~	⇒ page 106
r <del>7</del> O	Plug-in hybrid modes
	⇒page 106
<b>→</b>	Plug-in hybrid modes
	⇒page 106
<u></u>	Plug-in hybrid modes
	⇔page 106
<u> </u>	Plug-in hybrid modes
ري-	⇒page 106
(A)	Electro-mechanical parking brake
	⇒page 114
*~~	Hold assist
<i>₹</i>	<i>⇒ page 114</i>
$\overline{}$	Speed warning function
(Km/h)	⇒ page 150
	Camera-based traffic sign recog-
_@	nition
FFI	⇒ page 152
"	Rest recommendation
<b></b>	⇔ page 154
	Cruise control
	⇒ page 156,
*	⇒ page 157,
6.3	, 5 , ⇒ page 157,
	⇒ page 158
	Speed limiter
	⇒ page 156,
LIM	⇒ page 157,
	, s ⇒page 158
	Efficiency assist
	⇒ page 158,
~	,
۲ <u>۲</u> ۲۶۳	adaptive cruise assist
	⇒page 167,
	⇒ page 169
	Adaptive cruise assist
	⇒page 161,
	⇒ page 164
<u>a</u>	Adaptive cruise assist
ā_	⇒ page 166

રુ <u>!</u> ૯	Distance warning ⇔ <i>page 170</i>
/	Lane departure warning ⇔ <i>page 171</i>
/ <b>⊜</b> \	Lane departure warning  ⇒ page 172, emergency assist  ⇒ page 180
Av.	Lane change warning, exit warn- ing system ⇔ page 178
SOS	Emergency assist ⇔ <i>page 180</i>
Pળ∆	Parking aids ⇔ <i>page 184</i>
<b>.</b>	Rear cross-traffic assist  ⇒ page 188
P⊕ <sup>OFF</sup>	Park assist ⇒ page 193
P⊕	Park assist ⇒ page 193
	Tank flap ⇔ <i>page 255</i>
i <sup>©</sup>	AdBlue ⇔ <i>page 260</i>
₽.	AdBlue ⇔ <i>page 261</i>
<b>,_</b>	g-tron: Natural gas system ⇒ page 278

#### Instrument cluster

#### Instrument cluster overview



Fig. 2 Overview of Audi virtual cockpit plus



255

Fig. 3 Overview of digital instrument cluster / Audi virtual cockpit

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the following content may be displayed in the instrument cluster:

me	iii cluster.	
1	Left dial	
	– Rev counter	17
	– Power meter	17
2	Tab area	15
3	Central area	15
4	Status line (one or two lines)	
(5)	Right dial	
	<ul> <li>Convenience display</li> </ul>	
6	Display	

– Fuel gauge ∄ . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

	3 3 3	
	tery	
	– Fuel gauge (natural gas) 🔐	255
7	Additional display on right with speedometer	
8	Additional display on left with:	
	- Transmission position	100
	– Audi drive select	116
9	Display	
	– Coolant temperature gauge 🎎	16
	<ul> <li>Charge level of high-voltage bat-</li> </ul>	
	tery	
	– Fuel gauge (natural gas) 🔐	255 ▶

- Charge level of high-voltage bat-



#### **WARNING**

The display may be deactivated if a serious fault occurs in the instrument cluster. The warning lamp may also light up. Stop the vehicle safely. Obtain professional assistance.



- Most of the illustrations on the following pages show the Audi virtual cockpit plus\*. The display and position of the elements may be different in other instrument cluster versions.
- You can change the measurement units for temperature or speed, etc. ⇒ page 247.
- Certain contents of the instrument cluster can also be projected onto the head-up display\*  $\Rightarrow$  page 29.

# How to use the multifunction steering wheel



Fig. 4 View of driver information system

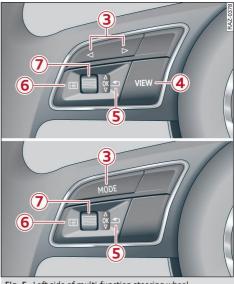


Fig. 5 Left side of multi-function steering wheel

The information in the instrument cluster is organised in different tabs (1). The details from each tab are displayed in the central area (2).

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

#### Selecting a tab

- ► Applies to multi-function steering wheel plus: Press the ⊲ or ⊳ button (3) repeatedly until the desired tab is selected.
- ► Applies to multi-function steering wheel: Press the MODE button (3) repeatedly until the desired tab is selected.

#### Returning to the previous function level

▶ Press the △ button (5).

#### Opening/closing a menu

▶ Press the 🗏 button (6).

#### Selecting and confirming a function

Important: A menu or a list must be displayed.

- ► To select a function, scroll the left thumbwheel (7) to the desired function.
- ▶ To confirm a selection, press the left thumbwheel (7).

#### Changing views

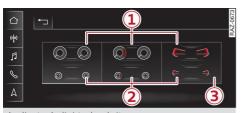
Applies to: multi-function steering wheel plus

▶ Press the VIEW button (4) ⇒ page 16.

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which of the following tabs are available:

1st tab	Vehicle functions ⇒ page 18
2nd tab	Driver messages (only visible if one or more warning/indicator
	lamps or driver messages are dis- played)
3rd tab	Radio <i>⇒ page 229</i>
	Media <i>⇒ page 238</i>
4th tab	Telephone ⇒ <i>page 197</i>
5th tab	Navigation ⇒ page 215

# Selecting the display



Applies to: Audi virtual cockpit

Fig. 6 Centre display: Selecting display

#### Changing views

Applies to: Audi virtual cockpit

► Press the VIEW button to switch between the standard view (1) and the extended view (2).

#### Selecting a layout

Applies to: Audi virtual cockpit

Different layouts may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > Display & brightness > Audi virtual cockpit.
- ▶ Press on the desired layout to select it ③.

#### Setting additional display

Applies to: Audi virtual cockpit

The additional displays that can be selected vary depending on the equipment installed on your vehicle.

- ➤ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > Display & brightness > Audi virtual cockpit > Configure.
- ► Select the desired additional display.

#### Reducing the view

On some equipment versions you can hide the central area in the instrument cluster.

- ► On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > \begin{align\*} button > Reduced display, or
- ► Press the VIEW button on the multi-function steering wheel.

# Coolant temperature gauge

Applies to: vehicles with coolant temperature gauge

The coolant temperature gauge ③ ⇒ page 14 only works when the ignition is switched on. In order to avoid possible damage to the engine, please read the following notes for the different temperature ranges.

#### Engine cold

If the LEDs are still in the lower range of the display, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads.

#### Normal temperature

The LEDs will settle somewhere in the centre of the display once the engine has reached operating temperature. If the warning lamp  $\blacksquare$  lights up in the instrument cluster display, the coolant temperature is too high  $\Rightarrow$  page 271.

# CAUTION

- Additional lights and other accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the radiator. At high outside temperatures and high engine loads, there is a risk of the engine overheating.
- The front spoiler also ensures proper distribution of the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. If the spoiler is damaged this can reduce the cooling effect, which could cause

the engine to overheat. Obtain professional assistance.



#### Note

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

These engines are so efficient that they may not reach their full operating temperature in very cold weather. This is quite normal and no cause for concern.

#### Rev counter

The rev counter ①  $\Rightarrow$  page 14 indicates the number of engine revolutions per minute. The start of the red zone on the dial indicates the maximum engine speed which may be used briefly in all gears after the engine has been run in properly. However, it is advisable to change up a gear or select transmission position D/S (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone.

#### Engine speed governing

If the indicator lamp lights up, the engine speed will automatically be governed to the speed displayed in the instrument cluster. This protects the engine components, e.g. against overheating or when starting a cold engine.

The rev limiter is deactivated when you take your foot off the accelerator briefly while the engine is running at its normal operating temperature.

If the rev limiter has been activated because of a fault in the engine management system, the indicator lamp will also light up. Make sure that the engine speed does not exceed the speed displayed in the driver information system, for example when shifting down a gear. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

# 1

#### **CAUTION**

The rev counter needle must only ever briefly go into the red zone on the scale; otherwise there is a risk of engine damage. The start of the red zone on the dial is different for some engine versions.

#### Power meter

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive



Fig. 7 Instrument cluster: Power meter

#### Displaying the power meter

 Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > Display & brightness > Audi virtual cockpit > Left gauge > Power meter or Combined.

The power meter  $\bigcirc$   $\Rightarrow$  page 14 indicates the drive capacity currently being utilised. The needle of the power meter indicates the current capacity utilisation.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the power meter may indicate the following driving states:

- (1) Drive system switched off
- Vehicle recuperating electrical ener-
- 3 Drive system switched on
- Vehicle driving with electric motor (green)
- (S) Vehicle driving with electric motor, combustion engine may cut in (green dashes)
- Vehicle driving for a short period with maximum power output from electric motor and combustion engine.

# Mileage recorder

The trip recorder and odometer are displayed in the status line  $\textcircled{4} \Rightarrow page 14$ .

The trip recorder shows the distance that has been travelled since it was last reset. It is used to ▶

measure individual journeys. The odometer records the vehicle's total mileage.

#### Resetting trip recorder

► On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > \begin{align\*} button > Reset kilometres.

# Outside temperature display

The outside temperature is displayed in the status line  $\textcircled{4} \Rightarrow page 14$ .

When the vehicle is stationary or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed in the instrument cluster may be higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine.

At temperatures below  $+5^{\circ}$ C a snowflake symbol appears next to the temperature display  $\Rightarrow \triangle$ .



#### WARNING

Do not rely on the outside temperature display as an ice warning. Bear in mind that there may be patches of ice on the roads even at outside temperatures around +5 °C – risk of accident!

# Engine oil temperature gauge

Applies to: vehicles with engine oil temperature gauge

The engine oil temperature \*\* is indicated by a bar display in the instrument cluster, depending on your vehicle's equipment.

► Call up the vehicle functions tab and change to the extended view ⇒ page 16.

The display shows --- °C at low engine oil temperatures. The engine has reached its operating temperature in normal driving conditions when the oil temperature is between 80 °C and 120 °C. If the engine is running under increased load at high ambient temperatures, the oil temperature may increase above this value. This is no cause for concern, provided that the indicator/warning lamps are not lit.

# **Boost display**

Applies to: vehicles with boost display

The current boost level of the engine (that is, the current charge pressure) is indicated by a bar display in the instrument cluster, depending on your vehicle's equipment.

► Call up the vehicle functions tab and change to the extended view ⇒ page 16.

### Vehicle functions

#### Overview

The on-board computer is displayed in the first tab of the driver information system. Further vehicle functions are available depending on the equipment on your vehicle.

- ► Press the button on the multi-function steering wheel.
- On-board computer ⇒ page 18
- Energy flow ⇒ page 106
- Lap times ⇒ page 154
- Lap statistics ⇒ page 155
- Reduced display ⇒ page 16
- Reset trip recorder ⇒ page 17

#### **On-board computer**

#### Resetting values to zero

Important: The **consumption**, **short-term memory** or **long-term memory** display must be selected.

➤ To reset the figures in the selected memory to zero, press the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel for one second.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you can scroll the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel to call up the following displays on the on-board computer one after another:

- Time and date ⇒ page 247
- Tank level
- Plug-in hybrid drive: Range display
- AdBlue range ⇒ page 260
- Average fuel consumption ⇒ page 19
- Short-term memory summary

- Long-term memory summary
- Energy consumers ⇒ page 19
- Driver assistance
- Traffic sign recognition and traffic light information

#### Short-term/long-term memory

The short-term memory collects the information on a journey from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is resumed within two hours after the ignition is switched off, the new figures are automatically included in the calculation.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. In this way, you can determine the period for which you wish the on-board computer to supply driving information.

#### Average fuel consumption

The current power consumption can be shown in a bar display. The average power consumption from the short-term memory can also be displayed. If the bar turns green, your vehicle is saving fuel (e.g. using recuperation).

#### **Energy consumers**

In the Energy consumers view, auxiliary equipment currently affecting the vehicle's consumption is listed. The display shows up to three energy consumers. The energy consumer drawing the most power appears at the top of the list. If more than three energy consumers are switched on, the ones currently using the most power are displayed. In addition, a scale indicates the overall current fuel consumption of all energy consumers.



The date, the time and the time/date display format can be changed ⇒ page 247.

#### **Economy tips**

Applies to: vehicles with economy tips

Economy tips are shown briefly on the instrument cluster display in certain situations where fuel economy is affected. By following these economy tips, you can save fuel.

Important: efficiency mode must be selected in Audi drive select.

#### Hiding economy tips

▶ Press the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel. Economy tips that have been cleared from the display will not appear again until the next time you switch on the ignition.

#### Switching economy tips on/off

▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > (Charging & efficiency) > Efficiency assist > Economy tips.



#### Note

The economy tips are not always displayed in every conceivable situation, but are deliberately spaced out over time.

#### Gear shift indicator

To familiarise yourself with the gear shift indicator, drive in the normal way to start with. A gear change will be recommended on the instrument cluster display if the gear you are in is not the most economical choice. If no gear change is recommended, you are already in the most economical gear.

#### Vehicles with manual gearbox

- Change up a gear: The suggested gear appears to the right of the current gear when a higher gear is recommended.
- ◀ Change down a gear: The suggested gear appears to the left of the current gear when a lower gear is recommended.
- →N: This is displayed in place of the current gear. Put the gear lever in neutral and take your foot off the clutch pedal. The engine will be switched off automatically.

#### Vehicles with automatic gearbox

The display is only visible in tiptronic mode ⇒ page 102. The symbol 1 after the current gear means change up a gear.



# (I) CAUTION

The gear shift indicator is intended to help save fuel. It is not intended to recommend the right gear for all driving situations. In certain situations, only the driver can choose the correct gear (for instance when overtaking or driving up a steep gradient).

# Touch display

# General instructions for using the touch display

#### **General notes**

Applies to: touch display

The centre display is touch-sensitive. It is operated in much the same way as a smartphone.



#### Note

Certain gestures are not available in all menus.

#### Pressing

Applies to: touch display



Fig. 8 Touch display: Pressing

#### Selecting a function or button

▶ Press the desired function or button.

#### Pressing and holding

Applies to: touch display



Fig. 9 Touch display: Pressing and holding

#### Calling up options

For certain items, you can call up further options which are not immediately visible.

 Press and hold an item until the corresponding options are displayed.

#### Pressing and dragging

Applies to: touch display

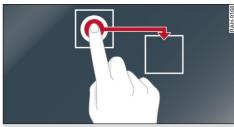


Fig. 10 Touch display: Pressing and dragging

#### Moving an object

You can re-arrange certain objects on the screen as desired.

► Press and hold an object and drag it with your finger to the desired position.

#### Pinching/spreading your fingers

Applies to: touch display



Fig. 11 Touch display: Pinching/spreading your fingers

#### Zooming in/out on an object

- ► Spread two fingers to zoom in on the screen content.
- ▶ Pinch two fingers together to zoom out.

#### Rotating

Applies to: touch display



Fig. 12 Touch display: Rotating

#### Rotating the view or angle

▶ Rotate the object with two fingers.

#### **Swiping**

Applies to: touch display

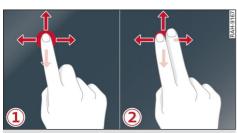


Fig. 13 Touch display: ① Swiping with one finger, ② swiping with two fingers

#### Scrolling or paging in menus/lists

- ► To scroll in menus/lists, swipe up/down with one finger.
- ► To page through menus/lists, swipe up/down with two fingers.

#### Angling 3D views

► Swipe up/down with two fingers.

#### Swiping away from/towards the edge

Applies to: touch display



Fig. 14 Touch display: Swiping away from the edge

#### Opening hidden menus

The symbol indicates a hidden menu.

- Swipe your finger from the top/bottom edge of the screen towards the centre. Or:
- ▶ Press the 🖃 button.

### Closing a hidden menu

 Press within the menu and swipe it towards the top/bottom edge of the screen.

#### Notes on path descriptions

The path descriptions in this manual show you at a glance how to call up the menu you require along with its settings and functions.

#### Example of a path description

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > General > Date & time.

#### Using a path description

- ► The first part of the path indicates which display is to be used (in this example it is the MMI display).
- ▶ Press ☐ to call up the home screen.
- If the SETTINGS button is not displayed, swipe to the left/right with one finger until it appears.
- ► Press the **SETTINGS** button.
- ► If the **General** button is not displayed, swipe to the left/right with one finger until it appears.
- ▶ Press the General button.
- ► If the **Date & time** button is not displayed, swipe up/down with one finger until it appears.
- ▶ Press the Date & time button.



#### Note

Menus or symbols in the path description that are shown in brackets, e.g. (**General**) or (۞), are optional menu items which do not need to be selected in all systems.

#### Settings

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > Display & brightness > MMI.

Available settings:

- Brightness
- Touchscreen feedback

#### Multi Media Interface

#### Notes on traffic safety

Audi recommends that you only use certain infotainment system functions, e.g. enter a navigation destination, while the vehicle is stationary. Always be prepared to stop operating the infotainment system in the interest of your own safety and that of other road users.



#### WARNING

Only operate the infotainment system when the road, traffic, visibility and weather conditions allow you to do so safely and when you can maintain proper control of your vehicle – risk of accident!



#### Note

Certain functions are not available while the vehicle is in motion.

#### Switching on/off

#### Switching the MMI system on/off

► To switch the MMI system off, press and hold **o** on the MMI touch control ⇒ page 33, Fig. 21

- until all the infotainment functions are switched off
- ► To switch the MMI system on, press 🕁 on the MMI touch control.

#### Restarting the MMI system

► Press and hold **o** on the MMI touch control for at least ten seconds.

#### Switching the centre display on/off

- ► To switch the centre display off, press of in the notification centre ⇒ page 26.
- ► To switch the centre display on, touch the display.

#### Introduction

You can display and operate different infotainment and vehicle functions using the touch display of the Multi Media Interface (MMI).

#### Setup wizard

After switching on the system for the first time, you can use the wizard to set up your vehicle, e.g. to select the desired system language and connect a telephone.

- ► Follow the directions given on the centre display.
- Applies to MMI: To access the setup wizard at a later time, select the following on the home screen: HELP > Setup wizard.

#### Usage tips

If necessary, you can have usage tips shown as an introduction to the different MMI functions.

- Applies to MMI: To call up usage tips, select the following on the home screen: HELP > Usage tips > Basic information or Expert information.
- ► Follow the directions given on the display.

#### Menus and symbols



Fig. 15 MMI: Centre display

	Name	Description
1	Overview page	Selected information boxes and quick access buttons for certain functions are shown here ⇒ page 24
2	Quick access bar	Returning to the home screen or overview page, quickly accessing a menu $\Rightarrow$ page 25
3	Display area	Selecting a menu, changing settings, displaying content ⇒ page 25
4	Favourites	Using/managing favourites ⇒ page 25
\$-7	Status bar	Operating functions and adjusting quick settings $\Rightarrow$ page 26, displaying current notifications $\textcircled{6} \Rightarrow$ page 26, status display $\textcircled{7} \Rightarrow$ page 26, time

#### Description of global symbols

The symbols below allow you to control standard functions. These symbols may appear in all menus in the appropriate context.

Symbol	Description
⁻⊐	Go back one level
X	Close menu
P	Search for content
(i)	Call up explanatory information for a menu
0	Call up settings for the selected menu
	Call up sub-menu
<b>1</b> //₌	Adjust settings
☆/★	Assign favourite/favourite assigned

Symbol	Description
	Switch functions on/off
<u> </u>	Switch functions on/off
0/⊚	Switch functions on/off
	Call up additional functions
>	Call up additional information on the selected menu

### **Overview page**

The overview page is the first menu page on the MMI. Information on certain vehicle functions, such as media, the clock and the telephone, is shown in information boxes. The information boxes available can be re-positioned on the overview page and some of them can be changed. In certain contexts you can use some functions directly, e.g. mute the volume.

# Switching between the overview page and the home screen

► Press ☐ repeatedly until the desired view is shown.

#### Configuring the overview page

- ► Press and hold an information box on the overview page.
- To change the position of the information box, keep holding it and drag it to the desired position.
- ► To change the information box, press  $\mathscr{L}_{\equiv}$  and select the desired information box.
- ▶ Press **Done** to complete the configuration.

#### Quick access bar

You can use the quick access bar to return to the home screen and switch easily between four menus which can be configured as desired.

# Returning to the home screen or quickly accessing a menu

#### Configuring the quick access bar

- ► Press and hold a button in the display area of the start screen or on the guick access bar.
- ► To move a button to the quick access bar, drag it from the display area to the quick access bar.
- ► To re-arrange the buttons, drag them within the quick access bar to the desired position.
- ▶ Press **Done** to complete the configuration.



#### Note

It is not possible to move  $\bigcirc$  to another position.

#### Display area

The buttons in the display area of the home screen can be re-arranged as desired.

#### Configuring the display area

- ► Press and hold a button in the display area of the start screen.
- ► To re-arrange the buttons, drag them to the desired position.

▶ Press **Done** to complete the configuration.

#### Switching between menu pages

If a menu contains more than one page, ——— is shown in the display area. The white bars indicate the position of the current menu page.

► To switch between menu pages, swipe to the right/left with one finger.

#### **Favourites**

You can create favourites for quick access e.g. to radio stations, frequently used contacts or vehicle settings. In the **FAVOURITES** menu, the stored favourites are sorted by topic in information boxes

#### Adding a favourite

The  $\mit \hookrightarrow$  button indicates that e.g. a selected radio station can be added to the favourites. In certain contexts it is also possible to add elements without the  $\mit \hookrightarrow$  button to the favourites, e.g. entries in a list.

- ▶ Press ☆, or:
- ▶ Press and hold an item in a list.
- Press Store as favourite. The selected element will be added as a favourite.

#### Using a favourite

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select FA-VOURITES. The stored favourites will be shown
- ▶ Select the desired favourite to call it up.

Stored favourites can only be deleted or re-arranged in the corresponding menu (e.g. **RADIO**).

#### Re-arranging information boxes

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select FA-VOURITES.
- ▶ Press and hold the desired information box.
- Drag the information box to the desired position.
- ▶ Press **Done** to confirm the position.

#### Status display



Fig. 16 Centre display: Frequent symbols in the status bar

The symbols in the status bar show you at a glance whether e.g. a mobile phone is connected or a data connection is available. The most frequent symbols are listed in the table.

	Description
1	A data connection is available. The bars indicate the strength of the data connection.  Data transfer is in progress.
2	A data connection is available. The bars indicate the strength of the data connection.  No data transfer is in progress.
3	A mobile phone is connected. The bars indicate the strength of the mobile reception.
4	No data connection is available.
(5)	A problem occurred when connecting the mobile phone to the MMI.
6	A user is selected. If a question mark appears in the symbol $\stackrel{\circ}{\cap}$ , the guest user is active.
7	A Bluetooth device is connected.
8	Bluetooth is switched on, but no Bluetooth device is connected.
9	Audio playback has been interrupted.
10	The audio source is muted.
11)	A privacy setting is activated. The additional symbol indicates which privacy setting is currently activated ⇒ page 314.

#### **Notification centre**



Fig. 17 Centre display: Notification centre

Notifications may be shown on the centre display. They will disappear after a certain time, and the corresponding symbol will appear in the status bar  $\textcircled{6} \Rightarrow page 24$ , Fig. 15. You can view these notifications  $\textcircled{3} \Rightarrow Fig. 17$  and adjust the quick settings 2 or operate functions 1 in the notification centre.

#### How to use the notification centre

- ► To open the notification centre, drag the status bar downwards. Or:
- ▶ Press the 🖃 button in the status bar.
- ► To activate/deactivate functions, press the corresponding symbol ①.
- ► To adjust the quick settings, press the corresponding symbol ②.
- ► Press on a notification to receive further information about it.
- ► To delete a notification, drag it to the right edge of the screen.
- ► If there are more than four notifications in the notification centre, the older ones will be hidden. To display older notifications, swipe upwards with one finger.

#### Setting which information is displayed

You can determine whether or not certain notifications are displayed.

- ► To set which information is displayed, press the 

  □ button. Or:
- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Notifications**.
- ► Select and confirm which notifications you would like to have displayed.

#### Available functions

Symbol	Description
[ <sub>(</sub> )]	<b>Press</b> : Switch the centre display on/off
	<b>Press and hold</b> : Switch screen cleaning mode on/off
$\bigcirc$	Call up garage door opener
Û,	<b>Press</b> : Show settings for head-up display
	Press and hold: Switch head-up display on/off

#### Possible quick settings

Symbol	Description
口	Adjust the sound settings
((c.≡	Manage connected devices
$^{\circ}$	Manage users
<b>-</b>	Set which information is displayed in the notification centre
24.06.2019	Set the date and time

#### Text entry

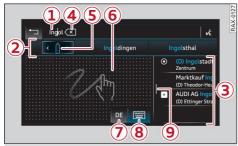


Fig. 18 Centre display: Entering text

#### Overview

You can enter letters, numbers and characters in the entry fields of different menus, e.g. to find an address in the navigation system\*.

The centre display will show the text as it is entered ①. In certain contexts, the system will sug-

gest words based on the characters you have entered (2) and display them in a results list (3).

#### Calling up the text entry function

▶ Press within the entry field 1.

### Changing the input language

Important: More than one input language must be set in the MMI  $\Rightarrow$  page 28.

► To switch between the set input languages, press the button 7.

### Changing the input method

► To switch between handwriting recognition and the on-screen keyboard, press the button (8).

#### **Entering text**

- Applies to on-screen keyboard: You can enter text by pressing the keys on the keyboard. In certain contexts, you can also swipe your finger over the letters<sup>1)</sup>.
- ► Applies to handwriting recognition: Text can be entered by simply writing with your finger in the entry area ⑥. You can write individual characters one over the other or one after the other without having to lift your finger from the screen. When you have finished, the system will interpret what you have written.
- Applies to on-screen keyboard with diacritical marks: To enter diacritical marks (e.g. â, ç, ñ, ö), press and hold the appropriate character and select the desired diacritical mark.
- ► Applies to handwriting recognition: To enter a space, draw a line from left to right<sup>2)</sup> in the entry area **6**).
- ► To select the position where the text is entered, press within the entry field at the desired position. You can adjust the position even more precisely using the slider (§) 1) displayed on the screen.
- ► To delete a single character, press 🗵 4. Or:
- ► Applies to handwriting recognition: Draw a line from right to left<sup>2)</sup> in the entry area **6**.

Depends on equipment and country

<sup>2)</sup> If you have chosen to enter characters in Arabic, make the gestures described in the opposite direction.

#### Touch display

- ► To delete more than one character, press and hold 🖾 (4).
- ► To delete all characters up to a certain position, press and hold (② (4) and drag your finger to the desired position<sup>1)</sup>. The characters that disappear when you do this will be deleted when you let go.

# Using suggested words or selecting entries from the results list

- ► You can use a suggested word ② or select an entry from the results list ③ by pressing on it.
- ► To display more entries in the results list, swipe up/down with one finger.
- ► To expand the results list, press button (9) or drag it inwards.

#### Setting the input language/keyboard layout

- ► On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS** > **Language & keyboard** > **Keyboard**.
- ► To set additional input languages, press the button.
- ➤ To change the keyboard layout for one of the input languages, press >. Select e.g. QWERTZ or OWERTY.

<sup>1)</sup> Depends on equipment and country

# Head-up display

# Description

Applies to: vehicles with head-up display

The head-up display projects certain warnings and selected information from supporting systems onto the windscreen. The display appears within the driver's field of vision.

#### Switching on/off

The  $\frac{C}{M}$  button is located in the notification centre on the MMI  $\Rightarrow$  page 26.

► To switch the head-up display on/off, press and hold the ⊕ button.

#### Settings on infotainment system

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select
 SETTINGS > Display & brightness > Head-up display.

Available settings:

- Display rotation
- Brightness
- Display height: The height of the display can be adjusted. Assume an appropriate seating position ⇒ page 64 and make adjustments on the image of the head-up display.
- Display contents: You can determine which types of information are displayed. The display of certain information and some of the red warning lamps cannot be deactivated.

## (I) CAUTION

Do not place any objects over the opening for the head-up display to avoid scratching the glass cover.

# i Note

- The display may be harder to see in unfavourable light conditions or if you are wearing polarised sunglasses.
- To be able to see the display as clearly as possible, adjust the position of your seat and the height setting for the head-up display.
- A special windscreen is required for the head-up display.

Notes on cleaning ⇒ tab. Cleaning the interior on page 288.

# Speech dialogue system

### General notes

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

You can operate many vehicle functions conveniently by voice.

# For best results when using the speech dialogue system

- Speak clearly in a normal volume. Speak louder if you are driving fast.
- ► Speak in a normal tone without long pauses.
- Close the doors, windows and sun roof\* to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not talking when you say a command.
- Keep the air outlets pointed away from the microphones located near the front interior lights in the headliner.
- ► The system should only be operated by the driver, since the microphones are directed towards this seating position.

## Λv

#### WARNING

- Please direct your full attention to the road at all times! As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, you should only use the functions in a manner that allows you to maintain control of the vehicle in all situations - accident risk!
- The speech dialogue system must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice changes in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!



#### Note

No navigation cues\* or traffic announcements\* are played when a dialogue is active.

# Description

#### How to operate the speech dialogue system

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system



Fig. 19 Centre display: Speech dialogue system

Important: The ignition and the MMI system must be switched on. The system language must be set to one supported by the speech dialogue system. A phone call must not be in progress, and the parking aid must not be active.

#### Via the button of

- ► Briefly press the ½ button on the multi-function steering wheel, or, in certain contexts, press ¼ on the centre display.
- ► Give a spoken command after the tone.
- ► To switch the speech dialogue system off, press and hold the of button on the multi-function steering wheel or say **Cancel**. Alternatively, press ① ⇒ Fig. 19.

#### Via a spoken cue

- ➤ Applies to MMI: To operate the speech dialogue system via a spoken cue, select the following on the home screen: SETTINGS > General > (Speech dialogue system) > Activate speech dialogue system with "Hey Audi".
- ► Say the activation words **Hey Audi** followed by the desired command.
- To switch the speech dialogue system off, say Cancel, press and hold the 

  the full function steering wheel or press 1

  ⇒ Fig. 19.

#### Commands and hints

The speech dialogue system menu shows possible commands or helpful hints for the current dialogue (3).

► For additional assistance for the current dialogue, say **Help** or press ②.

► To pause the speech recognition, say **Pause** or press ④. To resume using the speech recognition, press ④ again or briefly press the ♠ button on the multi-function steering wheel.

#### Additional functions

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

#### Command during speech dialogue

When this function is switched on, you can simply say a new command while the system is giving a spoken cue.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > General > (Speech dialogue system) > Allow command during speech dialogue.

#### Online recognition

Applies to: vehicles with online recognition

You can activate online recognition for additional functions and even better results when using the speech recognition. A supported system language must be selected. When the system is connected to the Internet, your spoken commands will be evaluated online as well as in the vehicle.

- ► A menu for the online recognition function is displayed when you switch the speech dialogue system on for the first time, or:
- ➤ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select
  SETTINGS > General > Speech dialogue system
  > Agreement for SDS online recognition.
- ▶ Read and accept the licence conditions.

#### Amazon Alexa

Applies to: vehicles with Amazon Alexa integration

You can activate Amazon Alexa in order to access certain functions. A reduced number of Amazon Alexa commands is available.

Important: You must be logged in to your myAudi account in the vehicle. Online recognition must be activated. A system language that is supported by the speech dialogue system and by Amazon Alexa must be selected.

- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select USER > Connect to Amazon Alexa.
- ► Follow the directions given on the display.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: To operate Amazon Alexa via a spoken cue, select the following on the home screen: SETTINGS > General > (Speech dialogue system) > Activate speech dialogue system with "Hey Audi".
- Say the activation word "Alexa" followed by the desired command.

# (1)

#### **CAUTION**

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs 

⇒ ① in General information on page 205.

# (i)

#### Note

Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

# External voice control function

Applies to: vehicles with external voice control function

You can use the system in the vehicle to call up and operate the voice control function of a connected mobile phone.

# Switching the external voice control function on/off

Important: The ignition and the MMI system must be switched on. A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI system via the **Handsfree** profile ⇒ page 194. The mobile phone connected must have a voice control function that can be controlled externally. A phone call must not be in progress, and the parking aid must not be active.

- ➤ To switch on the external voice control function, press and hold the % button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- ➤ To switch off the external voice control function, press and hold the of button on the multifunction steering wheel, or press Cancel.

#### Operating the external voice control function

► Give a spoken command after the tone.

#### Speech dialogue system

► To resume using the voice control function after pausing it, briefly press the of button on the multi-function steering wheel or press Resume.



#### Note

Audi only enables you to access your mobile phone's speech dialogue system and accepts no responsibility for the content and commands of the external speech dialogue system.

#### Global functions

# Other function selector buttons

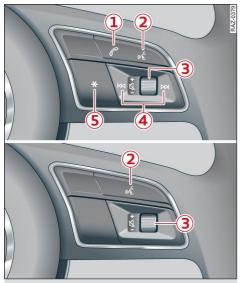


Fig. 20 Right side of multi-function steering wheel



Fig. 21 MMI touch control

#### Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or system message (e.g. during a speech dialogue) directly while it is being played.

- ► To turn the volume up/down, scroll the right thumbwheel ③ ⇒ Fig. 20 up/down or swipe your finger over the MMI touch control ⇒ Fig. 21 in a clockwise or anti-clockwise direction.
- ► To mute the sound, press the right thumbwheel or 

  or on the MMI touch control.

#### Selecting the previous/next track/station

► Press I < < / > / <a> I on the steering wheel <a> or on the MMI touch control</a>.

#### Fast forward/rewind

Press and hold | □ □ / ▷ □ | on the steering wheel
 4) or on the MMI touch control until the desired playing position is reached.

#### Quick access button on steering wheel

Applies to: multi-function steering wheel plus

Button (5) gives you quick access to various functions, depending on your vehicle's equipment.

You can program the imes button with various functions.

- ► To use the function currently programmed, press the ★ button.
- ► To find out which function is currently programmed, press and hold the ★ button. Or:
- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Steering wheel button
- ▶ Select and confirm the desired function.

#### Switching the voice control function on/off

#### Operating telephone functions

Applies to: multi-function steering wheel plus

 $\mathcal{C}$  button (1); refer to  $\Rightarrow$  page 200.

## **⚠** WARNING

The audio system volume should be set at a level which enables you to hear external signals (such as the sirens of police and emergency vehicles) clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.

## Personal settings

#### Users

#### General notes

Applies to: vehicles with individual user settings

Depending on the equipment and country, your vehicle can manage different users in the MMI system. Each user is assigned his/her most recently used settings.

Before driving off, you can select a user in the MMI system and load their individual infotainment and vehicle settings.

Possible users in the MMI system:

- myAudi user: myAudi users can use Audi connect services which require a myAudi account.
   Certain settings are transferred online to your myAudi account. If you log into your myAudi account in another vehicle, you can load your settings into that vehicle.
- Local user: Local users can only store their settings in the current vehicle. Your settings cannot be transferred to other vehicles. Audi connect services which require a myAudi account are not available.
- Guest user: Guest users can store their settings in the vehicle without changing other users' settings. Audi recommends the guest user for temporary use only, as the settings can be overwritten by other users.

So that the user settings can be loaded automatically before a journey, the active user is recognised from the following options (depending on equipment):

- Vehicle key
- Audi connect key
- Audi connect key card

Important: The driver's door must have been opened.

The recognised user is displayed on the MMI. Confirm the user displayed, select another user  $\Rightarrow page\ 34$ , or add a different user  $\Rightarrow page\ 34$ .

# $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

It is possible that some or all of the infotainment and vehicle settings may not be loaded. As the driver you are always responsible for the infotainment and vehicle settings - risk of accident!

# (i)

#### Note

- Certain infotainment and vehicle settings (e.g. mirror settings/last radio station) may be stored, depending on your vehicle's equipment. Further information can be found on the MMI. On the home screen, select SETTINGS > General > Legal information > About Audi connect.
- Applies to myAudi users: The stored settings can only be transferred to compatible vehicles. This capability may be restricted in certain countries.
- Applies to myAudi users: The settings can only be transferred and loaded within the area covered by a particular mobile network service provider.
- Applies to myAudi users with PIN protection activated: If a recognised user is displayed on the MMI and you drive off or wait without entering the 4-digit PIN, the guest user will be selected. Some of the settings of the recognised myAudi user will be transferred to the guest user.

#### User management

Applies to: vehicles with user management

#### Calling up the user management

Applies to: MMI

▶ On the home screen, press **USERS**.

#### Selecting a user

Applies to: MMI

- ▶ Press on the desired user.
- ▶ If prompted, enter your 4-digit myAudi PIN.

#### Adding a myAudi user

Applies to: MMI and Audi connect

Important: You must have registered at my.audi. com and have created a 4-digit myAudi PIN.

- ► Press Add user.
- ▶ Press Log in now to log in with your myAudi access data.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system.

To have existing destinations transferred once from the MMI to your myAudi account, confirm the system query with Yes.

# Adding a local user

Applies to: MMI

- ▶ Press Add user.
- ► Press Start setup.
- ▶ Press Local user.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system.

# Editing a user

Applies to: MMI

Important: You must have selected the user and loaded their settings.

▶ Press on the user.

Depending on the user type, some or all of the following options may be available:

**PIN protection**: When this function is activated, the 4-digit myAudi PIN must be entered before the user settings are loaded.

Delete user from vehicle: The user is only deleted from the MMI list in the vehicle.

#### Deleting a user

Applies to: MMI

▶ On the home screen, select: **Users** >  $\mathcal{J}_{\equiv}$  > one or more entries > **Delete**. The user is only deleted from the list on the MMI. The user permissions for the vehicle (e.g. key user) are not deleted.

# i) Note

- The guest user cannot be renamed.
- When you switch users, the vehicle will load the new user's settings into the vehicle.
- For users with the ⊕ symbol, PIN protection is active. You can edit the user and deactivate the PIN protection.
- Depending on the country, you can use the myAudi app or my.audi.com.

# Key user

Applies to: vehicles with key user management

The owner of the vehicle must be set as the key user for certain Audi connect vehicle control services and functions on demand, depending on the vehicle's equipment.

The key user automatically has remote access rights, which are required in order to control certain functions such as Audi connect vehicle control services via the myAudi app.

# Setting the key user

Important: You must not have set a key user yet.

- ► You need a myAudi account in order to set a key user for the vehicle. Register at my.audi.com.
- ► Add your vehicle at my.audi.com and then verify your myAudi account using one of the available verification procedures.
- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select USERS > ② > Set kev user.
- ► Follow the instructions given by the system and enter the 10-character vehicle code ⇒ page 41. The key user will be set. You now have the authorisation to use the Audi connect vehicle control services ⇒ page 207 and other available vehicle functions, and to manage further users.

# Managing further users

As the key user, you can authorise further users for equipment-dependent Audi connect vehicle control services on my.audi.com.

# Removing the key user

If you remove the key user, all other users and their permissions created by that key user at my. audi.com will be deleted. It will no longer be possible to use the equipment-dependent Audi connect vehicle control services.

All Audi connect keys (depending on equipment) will be deleted.

Important: A key user must be set and the ignition must have been switched on using a vehicle

▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select USERS > ② > Remove key user.

# (i)

# Note

- Depending on the country, you can use the myAudi app or my.audi.com.
- It is not necessary to log in with a myAudi user in the vehicle in order to use the equipment-dependent Audi connect vehicle control services.
- Before you sell your vehicle, reset the settings to the factory defaults.
- Store the vehicle code in a safe place as you may need to enter it again.
- When entering the vehicle code, please note that the system is case-sensitive.
- If you do not have the 10-character vehicle code, please contact your Audi dealer.

# **Doors and windows**

# Central locking system

# **General notes**

# <u>/!\</u>

# WARNING

- Always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.
   This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the vehicle or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows this could lead to injuries.
- Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism\* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside ⇒ page 40, Anti-theft alarm system. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

# Description

All doors and the boot lid can be locked or unlocked simultaneously via the central locking system. When you unlock the vehicle, the central locking system will unlock either the entire vehicle or the driver's door only, depending on the setting you have selected on the MMI system  $\Rightarrow$  page 38. The turn signals will flash twice when the vehicle is unlocked and once when the vehicle is locked. If the turn signals do not flash when you lock the vehicle, check that all the doors and the boot lid are properly closed.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you have the following options for locking/unlocking your vehicle centrally:

- Vehicle key ⇒ page 42
- Sensors in the door handles ⇒ page 42
- Audi connect key on your mobile device
   ⇒ page 42
- Audi connect key card ⇒ page 42
- Lock on the driver's door ⇒ page 39
- Interior central locking switch ⇒ page 39

# Key / vehicle key

The term "key" may refer to the remote control key or convenience key\*, a mobile device with the Audi connect key\* or the activated Audi connect key card\*.

"Vehicle key" refers to the remote control key or convenience key\*. The convenience key\* is a remote control key with special functions ⇒ page 42 and ⇒ page 97.

# Automatic locking function

The vehicle will be locked again automatically if you do not open one of the doors, the boot lid or the bonnet within a short time after unlocking the car. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlock button is pressed by mistake.

# Automatic locking function (Auto Lock)

The Auto Lock function locks the doors and the boot lid when the vehicle exceeds a speed of about 15 km/h. The vehicle is unlocked again immediately when the unlock button in the central locking switch is pressed.

You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags inflate, the doors will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance

#### Accidental lock-out

To prevent yourself from being locked out, only lock the vehicle when there are no keys in the vehicle and all of the doors and the boot lid are closed.

The central locking system prevents you from being locked out of the vehicle in the following situations:

- When the driver's door is open, you cannot lock the vehicle by pressing the button on the remote control key or touching the locking sensor\* on one of the doors.

inside the luggage compartment when the boot lid is closed.

It is not possible to detect an Audi connect key\* or an Audi connect key card in the vehicle.

# $\Lambda$

# WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 37.



# CAUTION

Applies to vehicles with convenience key: The following applies when locking the vehicle:

- If the most recently used vehicle key is detected in the passenger compartment, it is not possible to lock the vehicle by sensor from the outside. Take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle again; otherwise the vehicle will not be secure.
- If you attempt to lock the vehicle using the button on the vehicle key while the front passenger's door or a rear door is open, the vehicle will be locked initially when you close the door if you have accidentally left the key in the vehicle. However, if the keyless system detects a vehicle key inside the vehicle after it is locked as described above, the vehicle is unlocked again. The turn signals flash several times to indicate this. However, if you do not open the vehicle and take out the vehicle key within a short period of time, the vehicle will be locked automatically (this prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked indefinitely). In this case, the vehicle key will be locked inside the passenger compartment.
- If the boot lid is closed and the vehicle key that was last in use is detected inside the boot, the boot lid will spring open again.
   The turn signals flash several times to indicate this. The doors will be locked. Take the vehicle key with you; otherwise it will not be protected against unauthorised access.



### Note

- Never leave any valuable items in the vehicle unattended. Even a locked vehicle is not a safe.
- When you lock the vehicle, the LED on the driver's window sill flashes. If the LED is still on about 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked, the central locking system is not working properly. You should have the malfunction repaired by a qualified workshop.

# Adjusting the settings for the central locking system

The central locking system can be adjusted to your individual settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Central locking.

#### Doors to unlock

- If you select All, all doors and the boot lid will be unlocked when you unlock the vehicle.
- If you select driver's door, only the driver's door will be unlocked. You can still unlock all the doors and the boot lid by pressing the the button on the vehicle key twice. On vehicles with convenience key\*, only the driver's door will be unlocked when you take hold of the door handle. Gripping any of the other door handles unlocks the whole vehicle.

The whole vehicle is always locked when you press the  $\overline{\Box}$  button.

# Long press to open windows

You can set whether all windows and the panorama sun roof\* can be opened using the vehicle key ⇒ page 50, Convenience open/close function.

Pressing and holding the ⊕ button on the vehicle key will always close all the windows and the panorama sun roof\*.

### Fold mirrors

You can set whether the exterior mirrors fold in automatically when the vehicle is locked.

# Tone when locking<sup>1)</sup>

You can set the system to give an acoustic signal when you lock the vehicle.

## Open with convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

You can deactivate the function for locking/unlocking the vehicle via sensor ⇒ page 42.

# Central locking switch



Fig. 22 Driver's door: Central locking switch

► To lock/unlock the vehicle, press the  $\Box$  /  $\Box$  button  $\Rightarrow$   $\bigwedge$ .

Please note the following when you use the central locking switch to lock your vehicle:

- The doors and the boot lid cannot be opened from the outside (for safety reasons, when stopped at traffic lights, etc.).
- The LED in the central locking switch lights up when all of the doors are closed and locked.
- You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags inflate, doors locked from the inside will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

# 

- Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 37.
- The central locking switch also works when the ignition is switched off.
- The central locking switch inside the vehicle is not operative if you lock the vehicle from the outside.

# **Driver messages**

Automatic gearbox: Driver's door: fault. Shift to P before leaving vehicle. See owner's manual

A malfunction has occurred in the driver's door. Select transmission position P to hold the vehicle before getting out. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

# Locking/unlocking the doors manually

If the central locking system fails to work, the doors must be locked/unlocked separately.

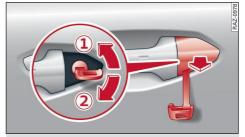


Fig. 23 Driver's door lock



Fig. 24 Door: Locking the door manually

Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Switch on the ignition or press the  $\widehat{\Box}$  button on the vehicle key after opening the driver's door manually. Otherwise the alarm will be triggered.

# Locking/unlocking the driver's door with the emergency key

- ▶ Take out the emergency key ⇒ page 41.
- ► Insert the emergency key into the slot under the door handle and lever off the cap ⇒ Fig. 23.

<sup>1)</sup> This function is not available on all export versions.

- ► To unlock the driver's door, turn the emergency key to the unlock position ① ⇒ Fig. 23.
- ► To open the driver's door, pull the door handle.

# Locking front passenger's door/rear doors with the emergency key

The mechanical locking device is located on the end face of the doors. It is only visible when the door is open.

- ▶ Take out the emergency key ⇒ page 41.
- ▶ Pull the cap out of the opening ⇒ Fig. 24.
- ► Insert the emergency key in the slot inside and turn it as far as the stop to the right (if the door is on the right side) or to the left (if the door is on the left side).
- Insert the cap to seal the opening and close the door.

Once the front passenger's door/rear doors have been closed, they can no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle once. If the child lock is engaged on one of the rear doors, the door can be opened by pulling the inside door handle and then opening the door from the outside.



#### WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 37.

# Anti-theft alarm system

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

If the anti-theft alarm system senses interference with the vehicle it triggers an audible and visible alarm. The anti-theft alarm system is activated/deactivated automatically when you lock/unlock your vehicle. When the alarm is deployed,

it switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

# Switching the alarm off manually

► To deactivate the alarm press the button on the vehicle key or switch on the ignition.

Depending on the equipment on your vehicle, the following components may be integrated in the alarm system:

### Anti-theft alarm

The alarm is triggered if the boot lid, the bonnet or one of the doors is forced open, or if a door is opened after it is unlocked by turning the key in the lock.

# Interior monitor and tow-away protection

The alarm is triggered if movements (e.g. of animals) are detected in the interior or if the vehicle's angle of inclination is changed (e.g. during transport).

You can prevent the alarm from being triggered accidentally by deactivating the interior monitor and/or tow-away protection.

# Safelock<sup>1)</sup>

The doors can no longer be opened from the inside. This makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle ⇒ ⚠. The message Be aware of door safelock. See owner's manual appears on the instrument cluster display when you switch off the ignition as a reminder that the safelock mechanism\* will be activated.

You must deactivate the safelock mechanism if you leave people behind in the vehicle.

# Deactivating the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock 1)

There are various ways to deactivate the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock mechanism\*:

► Press the button on the vehicle key a second time within 2 seconds. Or:

This function may be optional in your country and is not available in all countries/equipment versions.

- ► Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Touch the sensor on the door handle a second time within 2 seconds. Or:
- Turn the emergency key in the door lock to the lock position a second time within 2 seconds.
   Or:
- Applies to vehicles with MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Interior monitor.

If you lock the vehicle in this way, the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock mechanism\* will remain deactivated until the vehicle is unlocked again.

# ↑ WARNING

Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism\* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

# (!) CAUTION

- If you switch off the safelock mechanism\*, the interior monitor and tow-away protection are automatically disabled, and vice versa. This means that your vehicle is no longer completely protected against breakins and theft.
- Applies to vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services: The safelock mechanism is not switched on if you use Audi connect services to lock the vehicle remotely.

# (i) Note

- The interior monitor and tow-away protection will only function as intended if the windows and the sun roof\* are closed.
- The alarm is triggered if you pull one of the interior door handles, even if you have switched off the safelock mechanism\*.

# Keys

# Set of keys



Fig. 25 Keys supplied with the vehicle

# 1 Vehicle key

The vehicle key can be used to lock and unlock the car.

# 2 Emergency key and release button for emergency key

An emergency key is integrated in the vehicle key. To remove it, press the release button and pull out the emergency key.

You can use the emergency key to ...

- activate and deactivate the front passenger's airbag\* ⇒ page 75.
- Applies to vehicles with lockable glove box: lock/unlock the glove box.
- lock/unlock the doors manually ⇒ page 39.
- release the boot lid manually ⇒ page 48.

# (3) Key fob with vehicle code

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

Open the key fob and rub off the coating to reveal the vehicle code. You can use the vehicle code to enable the Audi connect vehicle control services\* on your vehicle. For more information, please refer to  $\Rightarrow$  page 207. If you should lose the key fob, please contact an Audi dealer.

## Audi connect key card

Applies to: Audi connect key

The Audi connect key card performs a number of the functions of the vehicle key and is approximately the size and shape of a credit card ⇒ page 45.

# Replacing a key

If you should lose a vehicle key, please contact an Audi dealer. Have the remote control coding for that vehicle key deactivated. For this purpose you should bring all available keys with you.

Applies to Audi connect key: If you should lose a mobile device on which an Audi connect key is stored, the corresponding mobile device must be deactivated ⇒ page 44. If you do not have short-term access to the myAudi app, it is possible to deactivate all assigned Audi connect keys on the MMI ⇒ page 44, Activating/deactivating the Audi connect key. If you lose the Audi connect key card, you can deactivate it at any time by switching the ignition on with the vehicle key or Audi connect key\*. Alternatively, you can deactivate the function in the myAudi app. To replace an Audi connect key card, please contact an Audi dealer.

It is also important to notify your insurance company if a key has been lost.

### Electronic immobiliser

The immobiliser is designed to prevent unauthorised persons from driving the vehicle.

It may not be possible to start the vehicle with the key if there is another vehicle key from a different make of vehicle on the same key ring.

# Data stored on the vehicle key

Data related to the service and maintenance of the vehicle are stored continuously on your vehicle key while you are driving. Your Audi dealer can read out the data and will then be able to tell you what service work is required.



### WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 37.



# **CAUTION**

The key must not be exposed to excessive temperatures; do not leave it in the sun.



# For the sake of the environment

X Vehicle keys must not be disposed of together with ordinary household waste. They

contain recyclable materials. Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.



# Note

- The function of the vehicle key may be impaired by interference from other nearby radio signals (for example from a mobile telephone or TV transmitter) if these are in the same frequency range. You should always check that your vehicle is locked.
- Applies to MMI: You can check how many keys are initialised for your vehicle. On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Car information.

# Locking and unlocking the vehicle

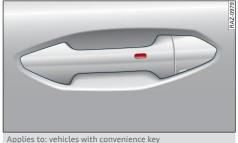


Fig. 26 Door handle: Sensor\* for locking

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, there are various ways to lock/unlock your vehicle. You can select which doors are unlocked in the settings on the MMI system ⇒ page 38.

# Unlocking/locking via buttons on vehicle key

- ► To unlock the vehicle, press the 🗓 button ⇒ page 41, Fig. 25.
- ▶ To lock the vehicle, press the 🗓 button **once**.

# Unlocking/locking via sensors

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

- ► To unlock the doors/boot lid, take hold of the door handle/release catch on the boot lid.
- ► To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor on the door handle once ⇒ Fig. 26. Do not take hold of the door handle when doing so, otherwise the vehicle will not be locked. Once the doors have been locked, they cannot

be opened again immediately. This will enable you to check that the doors are properly closed.

# Unlocking/locking using the Audi connect key / Audi connect key card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key/Audi connect key

Important: The Audi connect key/Audi connect key card must have been activated ⇒ page 44 / ⇒ page 45.

► To unlock/lock the vehicle, hold the mobile device/key card against the centre of the handle on the driver's door.

# Locking/unlocking the vehicle using the Audi connect vehicle control services1)

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

Important: The Audi connect vehicle control services must have been set up ⇒ page 207, Audi connect vehicle control services. The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched off.

Please note the information on the safelock mechanism ⇒ (1) in Anti-theft alarm system on page 41.

# WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 37.



- Do not use the vehicle key when the vehicle is out of sight.
- Automatic gearbox: The vehicle can only be locked when transmission position P is selected.
- Do not use the vehicle key for unlocking/ locking when you are inside the vehicle, as you might trigger the anti-theft alarm\*. In this situation, press the unlock button 🛅.



### Note

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

- The convenience key must be no more than approx. 1.5 m from the door handle/

- luggage compartment to unlock/lock the vehicle.
- You can deactivate the function for unlocking the vehicle with the convenience key (keyless entry) on the MMI  $\Rightarrow$  page 38.
- To prevent the vehicle battery from becoming discharged, the energy management system will gradually switch off convenience functions that are not required. In this case you may not be able to unlock the vehicle via sensor.

# LED and battery in vehicle key



Fig. 27 Vehicle key: Removing battery cover

# LED in the vehicle key

The LED (1) lights up when you press the buttons.

- ► The LED should flash once when you press one of the buttons briefly.
- ► The LED should flash repeatedly when you press and hold one of the buttons (convenience open/close).
- ▶ If the LED does not flash, the battery in the vehicle key is flat. Replace the battery in the vehicle kev.

# Replacing the battery in the vehicle key

- ► Take out the emergency key ⇒ page 41 and insert it at an angle into the opening ⇒ Fig. 27 on the remote control key.
- ► In order to release the battery cover, press the emergency key into the remote control key as far as necessary so that the cover lifts open slightly (2) ⇒ Fig. 27. Then lift the battery cover off from the outside.



Depending on country

- ► Change the battery and insert the new battery with the "+" symbol facing up.
- ▶ Put the battery cover back on.
- ▶ Insert the emergency key again.



## WARNING

If batteries or button cells are swallowed or enter the body in any other way, they can cause severe or lethal injuries within an extremely short period of time - risk of chemical burns!

- Keep the vehicle key and the key fob with batteries out of the reach of children.
- Keep new and used batteries away from children.
- If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the vehicle key and keep it away from children.
- Seek a doctor's assistance immediately if you suspect that a battery has been swallowed or has entered the body in any other way.



# For the sake of the environment

Used batteries must be disposed of appropriately and must not be discarded with ordinary household waste.



### Note

The new battery must be of the same type as the original one in the vehicle key.

### Audi connect key

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key

You can use your mobile device to lock, unlock  $\Rightarrow$  page 42 and start  $\Rightarrow$  page 97 the vehicle.

Applies to all users: Important: You must be using a compatible mobile device with an Android operating system. You can find a selection of supported Android devices in the database of tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth. You must have registered at my.audi.com. The myAudi app must be installed on your mobile device, and the service must be activated in the MMI. A key user must have been set  $\Rightarrow$  page 34.

# Assigning an Audi connect key

Applies to: key user

- ▶ Use the myAudi app to create a key for yourself or another user.
- ► Applies to MMI: Call up the security code in your vehicle. On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Audi connect key > Call up security code. A six-character code will be displayed.
- ► Enter the security code in the myAudi app. You will receive your key, or the user you have selected will receive an invitation to install the key.

# Accepting an Audi connect key

Applies to: invited users

► Accept the invitation in the myAudi app.

# Activating/deactivating the Audi connect key

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle. If you deactivate the function, all Audi connect keys that have been assigned and the Audi connect key card can no longer be used. All assigned Audi connect keys and the Audi connect key card can be used again as soon as you reactivate the function.

- ▶ Use your vehicle key to switch on your vehicle's
- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Audi connect key.
- ► Activate or deactivate the option Audi connect key.



# Note

- Audi connect keys can be managed on the myAudi portal or in the myAudi app.
- The key user can remove Audi connect keys that were assigned previously and re-assign them to other users.
- Invited users can also remove existing Audi connect keys.
- The Audi connect key may fail to function properly if the mobile device remains uncharged for several days.
- Before you sell your vehicle, reset the settings to the factory defaults  $\Rightarrow$  page 248.
- Applies to MMI: You can check how many Audi connect keys are initialised for your

vehicle. On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Car information.

# Audi connect key card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key

You can use your Audi connect key card to lock/unlock  $\Rightarrow$  page 42 and start  $\Rightarrow$  page 97 the vehicle.

This prevents you from having to give your mobile device to others e.g. for a service appointment or if you require roadside assistance. The key card must be activated before each use.

Important: You must have an Audi connect key ⇒ page 44.

# Activating/deactivating an Audi connect key card

- ► Switch on the ignition using the Audi connect key ⇒ page 97.
- ► Remove your mobile device from the Audi phone box.
- ► Place the key card in the Audi phone box. Follow the instructions given by the MMI.

The key card is automatically deactivated again as soon as the ignition is switched on using an Audi connect key or a vehicle key. Once deactivated, the key card can therefore be stored in the vehicle.

You can check the status of your key card on the MMI  $\Rightarrow$  page 45.

# For the sake of the environment

# Checking status

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key

The status of assigned Audi connect keys and the Audi connect key card can be checked on the myAudi portal, in the myAudi app and in the vehicle.

 Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Audi connect key > Audi connect key.

# **Boot lid**

# **General information**

# $\Lambda$

# **WARNING**

- Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism\* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside ⇒ page 40. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you are not using the vehicle. Children could otherwise enter the vehicle e.g. through the luggage compartment and become locked inside. To avoid risk of injury, never allow children to play in or around the vehicle.
- To prevent any risk of injury, make sure that no one is in the path of the boot lid - in particular around the hinges, the upper and lower edges and the complete surrounding edge.
- After closing the boot lid, always check that the catch has engaged properly. The boot lid could otherwise open suddenly when the vehicle is moving – this could result in an accident.
- The boot lid must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving; otherwise toxic exhaust fumes can be drawn from outside the vehicle into the interior.
- If a luggage rack (e.g. a bicycle carrier) is attached to the boot lid, the boot lid may not open completely or may move downwards by itself due to the added weight. For this reason, make sure you support the boot lid or take the luggage off the carrier before opening the boot lid risk of injury!
- Applies to vehicles with power-operated/ sensor-controlled boot lid: Always be careful when closing the boot lid. A safety feature is

provided (pinch protection), but this may not always be able to prevent serious injuries to yourself or others in all circumstan-

# CAUTION

To avoid damage, please take care that the boot lid does not hit the ceiling when opening it inside a garage or car park, etc.



# Note

When the vehicle is locked, you can unlock the boot lid separately by pressing the  $\stackrel{2x}{\Leftrightarrow}$  button on the vehicle key twice. The boot lid will lock automatically when you close it again.

# Opening/closing boot lid



Applies to vehicles with power-operated boot lid: Fig. 28 Driver's door: Opening boot lid

# Opening boot lid

- ► Applies to vehicles without convenience key: Unlock the vehicle or the boot lid with the A button on the vehicle key and press the release catch on the boot lid. Or:
- ► Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Press the release catch on the boot lid. The vehicle key must be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment. Or:
- ▶ Press the ﷺ button on the vehicle key twice with the ignition switched off. Or:
- ► Applies to vehicles with power-operated boot lid: Pull the \square button in the driver's door.

# Closing boot lid

► Applies to vehicles without power-operated boot lid: Pull down the boot lid by the handle on the inside and let it drop into the latch. Or: ► Applies to vehicles with power-operated boot lid: Refer to ⇒ page 46.

### WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 45.

# Power-operated boot lid

Applies to: vehicles with power-operated boot lid



Fig. 29 Boot lid: (1) close button\*, (2) lock button\* (vehicles with convenience key\*)

The boot lid can be opened and closed automatically  $\Rightarrow \bigwedge$  in General information on page 45.

# Opening boot lid

- ▶ Press the ⇔ button on the vehicle key twice with the ignition switched off  $\Rightarrow$  page 41, Fig. 25. Or:
- ▶ Briefly pull the ⇔ button in the driver's door ⇒ page 46, Fig. 28. Or:
- ► Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Press the release catch on the boot lid. The vehicle key must be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment.

#### Closing boot lid

- ▶ Press the ← button inside the boot lid. Or:
- ▶ Press the release catch on the boot lid. Or:
- ▶ Press the boot lid down slightly. Or:
- ► With the ignition switched on, pull and hold the  $\Leftrightarrow$  button in the driver's door  $\Rightarrow$  page 46, Fig. 28 until the boot lid is closed. Or:
- ► Applies to vehicles with convenience key: With the ignition switched off, press and hold the  $\stackrel{2x}{\Leftrightarrow}$ button on the vehicle key until the boot lid closes. Make sure to stand clear of the boot lid when doing so (do not stand further away than
- ▶ Press the ← button inside the boot lid. Or:

► Applies to vehicles with convenience key: With ton inside the boot lid. The vehicle key should be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment and should not be inside the vehicle. The vehicle will be locked when you press the ⊕\* button.

The boot lid will stop moving if:

- the boot lid again. Or:
- The boot lid cannot open freely or there is an obstruction.

catch in the boot lid again, the boot lid will reopen.



# WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 45.



## Note

If the battery is low, the boot lid can still be opened and closed manually; however, this will require more effort. If you move the boot lid slowly less effort will be required.

# Opening/closing boot lid with a foot gesture (kicking movement)

Applies to: vehicles with sensor-controlled boot lid



Fig. 30 Rear of vehicle: Kicking movement (example)

The boot lid can be opened and closed<sup>1)</sup> automatically ⇒ ∧ in General information on page 45.

Important: The convenience key\* must be on your person. The ignition must be switched off. You must be standing behind the boot lid.

► With a single fluid movement, swing your foot forwards and back once under the bumper without touching it  $\Rightarrow$  *Fig. 30*. Take care not to slip. The boot lid will open/close<sup>1)</sup> when the system detects the gesture. The boot lid will stop moving if you perform the described movement again.



#### WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 45.



# Note

The boot lid will open/close<sup>1)</sup> only if you make the exact gesture described above. This is to prevent the boot lid from opening/closing<sup>1)</sup> in similar situations, for instance if you walk between the rear of the vehicle and a garage door. In certain situations, the system may be temporarily unavailable or the functionality may be restricted. This can happen in the following cases, for instance:

- If you are standing too close to or too far away from the bumper.
- If the boot lid was closed or opened immediately beforehand.
- If you park near a hedge and the wind blows the branches back and forth under the vehicle over an extended period.
- If you wash your vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner or drive through an automatic car wash.
- In heavy rain.
- If the bumper is heavily soiled (e.g. after driving on salted roads).
- If the radio signal from the remote control key was affected by interference from other transmitters (e.g. mobile phones or remote control devices).

3Y0012720AE

The closing function is available on vehicles also equipped with power-operated boot lid.

# Releasing the boot lid manually



Fig. 31 Inside of boot lid: Access to manual release

- ► Fold the rear seat backrest forwards ⇒ page 85.
- ▶ Take out the emergency key ⇒ page 41.
- Applies to Saloon: Prise off the cover in the boot lid trim ① ⇒ Fig. 31 using the emergency key.
- Applies to Sportback: Prise off the cover 
  in the boot lid trim ② 
  Fig. 31 using the emergency key.
- ➤ To unlock the boot lid, use a suitable tool (such as a screwdriver or the emergency key) to press the release lever in the direction of the arrow.
- ► Move the backrest back into its upright position and make sure it engages.

# **MARNING**

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 45.

# **⚠** WARNING

After you have folded the backrest back upwards, always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards.

# Child lock

The child locks disable the rear window switches and prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside.



Fig. 32 Driver's door: Controls



Applies to: vehicles with manual child lock

Fig. 33 Rear door: Manual child lock

# Vehicles with & button

Applies to: vehicles with electric child lock

- ► To activate/deactivate the child lock (for the interior door handle and electric window switch) on each of the rear doors, press the left/right 🖁 button on the driver's door ①  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 32. The LED in the button will light up or go out.
- ► Make sure that the child lock is working by checking that the rear electric window switches and door handles are out of action.

# Vehicles with 🕅 button

Applies to: vehicles with manual child lock

- ► To activate/deactivate the child lock for the electric window switches in the rear doors, press the 🕾 button on the driver's door ②

  ⇒ Fig. 32. The LED in the button will light up or go out.
- ➤ To activate/deactivate the manual child lock for the interior handles in the rear doors, open the corresponding rear door and use the emergency ▶

key to turn the key-operated switch in the direction of the arrow (or in the opposite direction) ⇒ Fig. 33. The rear door handle is out of action while the child lock is on.

 Make sure that the child lock is working by checking that the rear electric window switches and door handles are out of action.

Switching on the child lock deactivates the following functions:

- The rear interior door handles
- The rear window switches

# Driver message in the instrument cluster display

# (f) / (g) Child lock: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the child lock. Press the  $\mathbb{A}/\mathbb{Z}$  button again.

If the message remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

# $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 37.
- If there is a malfunction in the child lock, it may be possible to open the rear doors from the inside - risk of accident!

# **Electric windows**

# Opening/closing windows

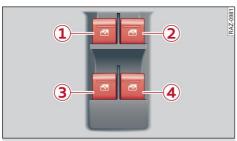


Fig. 34 Driver's door: Switches for electric windows

Switches for electric windows:

- Front left window
- (2) Front right window

- (3) Rear left window
- Rear right window

# Opening/closing the windows

The driver can operate all the electric windows. All electric windows have two-stage switches:

- ► Press/pull the switch briefly to the second stop: the window will automatically open/close all the way. The window will stop moving immediately if the switch is operated again.
- ➤ To set an intermediate position, press/pull the switch to the first position until the window has reached the desired position.

# What to do if the one-touch open/close function fails to operate

You may be able to reactivate the one-touch open/close function if it fails to operate.

- ► Pull and hold the electric window switch until the window is fully closed.
- ► Release the switch and then pull it again for at least one second.

# $\Lambda$

# WARNING

- Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 37.
- Take care when closing the windows. Careless use of the windows can cause injuries.



# Note

- The windows can be operated for a few minutes after the ignition has been switched off. The window switches are only deactivated when the driver's door or the front passenger's door is opened.
- The electric windows have a roll-back function. The window may stop moving upwards automatically, and may also re-open even when there does not appear to be an obstacle. Pull and hold the electric window switch until the window is fully closed.

# Convenience open/close function

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

# Convenience open/close function for windows/sun roof\*

You can use the MMI to set whether all the windows and the sun roof\* are opened/closed all at once ⇒ page 38, Adjusting the settings for the central locking system.

- Press and hold the note in a button on the vehicle key until all the windows and the sun roof\* have reached the desired position ⇒ Λ.
- ► Touch and keep your hand in contact with the sensor\* on the door handle until all the windows and the roof\* are closed. Do not rest your hand on the door handle while this is happening.

The turn signals flash once when all the windows and the roof\* are closed.

# $\Lambda$

# WARNING

- Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 37.
- Take care when closing the windows and the sun roof\*. Careless or uncontrolled use can cause injuries.
- For safety reasons, you should only use the vehicle key to open and close the windows and sun roof\* when you are at least 2 metres away from the vehicle. To avoid injuries, always keep an eye on the windows and the sun roof\* when pressing the button to close them. The windows and sun roof stop moving as soon as the button is released.

# Panorama sun roof

# Operating panorama sun roof and sun roof blind

Applies to: vehicles with panorama sun roof and sun roof blinds



Fig. 35 Headliner: Button for panorama sun roof

The switches have two stages.

# Operating sun roof blind

The roof blind can be opened and closed by hand, regardless of how far open the panorama sun roof is at the time. The roof blind can be adjusted to any intermediate position.

# Operating sun roof

- ➤ To tilt the roof open: Briefly press the ఉ switch in the headliner upwards to the second position 1.
- ► To tilt the roof closed: Briefly pull the switch downwards to the second position.
- ► To slide the roof open: Briefly slide the ♣ switch backwards to the second position 2.
- ► To slide the roof closed: Briefly slide the switch forwards to the second position.
- ► To set an intermediate position: Slide, press or pull the ⇔ switch to the first position until the roof has reached the desired position.

# Closing the sun roof manually

If a trapped object is detected in the mechanism when the panorama sun roof is closing, a safety cut-out will be triggered and the roof will open again automatically. If this happens, you can use the safety cut-out override to close it.

► After the sun roof opens automatically, pull and hold the corresponding switch within 5 seconds until the sun roof is closed.



# WARNING

Take care when closing the sun roof. Careless or uncontrolled use can cause injuries. For this reason, always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.



# **CAUTION**

Always close the sun roof when you leave your vehicle and when it is raining or snowing to avoid damaging the interior equipment and, in particular, the electronic equipment.



## Note

- The sun roof can still be operated for a few minutes after the ignition is switched off if neither of the front doors is opened.
- The sun roof cannot be opened if the temperature is too cold.

# Garage door opener

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

The garage door opener allows you to activate garage doors, security systems, home or office lighting and other electric devices using control buttons inside your car. The functions are operated on the MMI. You can program several receivers, which perform the functions of up to eight hand-held transmitters.



# WARNING

- When you are operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no persons or objects are close to the devices receiving the transmitter signals. Otherwise, persons might be injured or other damage caused by moving parts.
- Do not allow looking at the displays and operating the centre display to distract you from watching the traffic.



# Note

Before you sell your vehicle, reset the settings to the factory defaults ⇒ page 248.



# Note

Before programming your system for the garage door opener, please check that it is compatible:

- You can obtain information from your qualified workshop or at www.homelink.com.
   There you will also find further information on HomeLink.
- You can view information about HomeLink (compatibility level/status/country code/ HomeLink generation) on the MMI:
- On the home screen, select CAR > Settings
   & service > Garage door opener > ①.

#### How to use

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

Important: The relevant hand-held transmitter must have been programmed ⇒ page 52, Programming, the vehicle must be within range of the system and the ignition must be switched on.

Several options are available for opening/closing the garage door or other system.

- ► To display the \( \frac{1}{12} \) button (**garage door opener** button), press the \( \frac{1}{12} \) button in the status bar \( \phi \) page 26.
- ► If you have programmed only one hand-held transmitter, press the \( \buildrightarrow \) button on the status bar of the centre display \( \phi \) page 24. Or:
- Applies to vehicles with programmable steering wheel button: If you have configured the programmable steering wheel button, press the ★ button ⇒ page 33. Or:
- Applies to vehicles with GPS link: If you have programmed the GPS link, press the

The possible number of hand-held transmitters depends on the equipment.

appropriate button on the centre display (notification centre ⇒ page 26). The button will appear on the MMI shortly before you reach the linked system. Or:

► When you select reverse gear, the parking aid\* / reversing camera\* / surround view camera\* is shown on the centre display. To display the buttons for the first three garage door openers, press the □ button in the status bar, then press the appropriate button for the system.

When transmission has been completed successfully, the driver message **Send to: XXX** will appear.

# **Programming**

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

The procedure described here is suitable for programming both fixed code and rolling code systems on the MMI.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

# Programming

Applies to: MMI

Important: You must have the hand-held transmitter with you, and the vehicle must be within range of the system (e.g. garage door) you would like to program. If you program more than three hand-held transmitters, assign the first three slots to the systems you want to use in reverse gear.

- ► To display the garage door opener button ♠, press the ☐ button in the status bar ⇒ page 26.
- ► To program the garage door opener for the **first time**, press the button on the centre display. Follow the instructions on the MMI. Or:
- ➤ To program further systems, select the following on the home screen: CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener. Select the desired button: (+). Follow the instructions on the MMI.
- ► To reprogram a system, select the following on the home screen: CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener. Press the /= button and

select // for the system you would like to reprogram. Select **Program**. Follow the instructions on the MMI.

For some systems, the garage door opener is available immediately after programming; for others, it must be synchronised additionally.

# Synchronising<sup>1)</sup>

Important: You must have already programmed the hand-held transmitter, and the vehicle must be within range of the system (e.g. garage door).

To synchronise the system directly following programming, follow the instructions on the MMI.

If you would like to synchronise at a later time:

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener.
- Press the button for the system you would like to synchronise.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

#### **GPS link**

Applies to: vehicles with GPS link

For more convenient operation, you can program in the location of your system.

Important: The relevant hand-held transmitter must have been programmed ⇒ page 52 and the vehicle must be in front of the corresponding system.

► If you have just programmed your system, follow the instructions on the MMI. Or:

If you wish to program the GPS link for a previously programmed system:

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select
   CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener.
- ▶ Press the 🖉 button.
- ► Press the button for the system your vehicle is currently positioned in front of.
- ► Select GPS link.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

<sup>1)</sup> Applies only to rolling code systems

The notification centre ⇒ page 26 can only display up to three programmed systems. If you would like to see all the systems, press \text{\text{\text{\text{!}}}}.

# Renaming an assignment

You can assign individual names (with up to 10 characters) to the systems you have programmed.

▶ If you have just programmed your system, follow the instructions on the MMI. Or:

If you wish to rename a previously programmed

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Garage door open-
- ▶ Press the 🖉 button.
- ▶ Press the 🖋 button for the system you would like to rename.
- ▶ Select Rename. You may have to delete the default name first (e.g. Garage door opener 1).
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

# Deleting an assignment

The programmed systems can be deleted individually or all at once.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Garage door open-
- ▶ Press the / button.
- ► To delete an **individual** system, press the button for the corresponding system. After the tick mark ✓ is set, select Delete.
- ► To delete all systems, select: All > Delete.

# i) Note

- Before programming a button, make sure that the batteries in the hand-held transmitter are charged.
- The programming process can take up to 30 seconds, and you may need to press the button on the hand-held transmitter again during that time.
- It may be necessary to synchronise the garage door opener with the system after programming. Note the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the device.



# i) Note

If a universal receiver is installed, the system must be programmed via "UR mode".

- Switch on the ignition.
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener.
- Press and hold the corresponding (+) but-
- Select Yes, in UR-Mode and follow the instructions on the MMI.

# Lights and vision

# **Exterior lights**

# Switching lights on and off



Fig. 36 Dashboard: Light switch module

# 1 Light switch 🌣

Press ① until the desired lighting function is selected. The selected function will be displayed briefly in the instrument cluster. The AUTO lighting function is selected automatically when the ignition is switched on.

- AUTO The headlights are switched on automatically according to the ambient light conditions. On vehicles for some markets, the daytime running lights\*, tail lights and number plate light are switched on permanently.
- ≫ ← You can turn on the side lights at speeds below 10 km/h.
- OFF You can switch all of the light functions off at speeds below 10 km/h.

If the dipped headlights or side lights are switched on, the corresponding indicator lamp / will light up in the instrument cluster.

# 2 All-weather light 2

Applies to: vehicles with all-weather lights

The front lights are adjusted automatically so that you are not dazzled, for instance when driving on a wet road.

# (3) Rear fog light<sup>1)</sup> ()‡

To avoid dazzling the traffic behind you, the rear fog light should only be used in accordance with country-specific regulations.

# Automatic headlight range control

Your vehicle is equipped with automatic headlight range control. This prevents oncoming traffic from being dazzled when your vehicle is heavily loaded. The headlight range is adjusted automatically.

## Audi adaptive light

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive light

With the adaptive light feature, you have better vision in the dark because the lights are controlled dynamically to match the vehicle speed and road conditions, e.g. on motorways or country roads, at intersections or through corners. The adaptive light feature can only be used when the AUTO lighting function is activated.

# $\Lambda$

# WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- The automatic headlights are only intended to assist the driver. The driver must always ensure that the headlights are used when required, and may have to switch them on or off manually, e.g. when the light conditions or visibility are poor. For example, the light sensors are not able to detect fog. Therefore, you should always switch on the dipped headlights 
  □ in these conditions and when driving after dark.



### i) Note

 If the vehicle battery has been losing charge for a while, the side lights or parking lights may be switched off automatically. Avoid using the side lights for long periods (several hours). Switch the left or right parking lights on where appropriate.

<sup>1)</sup> In some countries, two rear fog lights may be fitted.

- The driver is responsible for adhering to the relevant country-specific regulations when using the lights while driving and parking the vehicle.
- Depending on the export market, the rear lights on some vehicles may be switched on together with the headlights when the daytime running lights\* are activated. On other vehicles, the rear lights remain off.
- In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals or rear lights can sometimes mist up, due to the temperature difference between the interior and exterior of the car. They should clear again partially or completely soon after you switch on the headlights. This has no influence on the life expectancy of the vehicle lights.
- When the side lights are switched on with the ignition switched off, the symbol will light up in the light switch module.

# Turn signal and main beam headlight lever



Fig. 37 Control lever: Switching light functions on/off

The turn signal lever also operates the parking lights, main beam headlights and headlight flasher.

# 

The turn signals will flash if you move the lever while the ignition is switched on. The corresponding indicator lamp or will flash. The parking lights will be switched on if you do this with the ignition switched off.

- 1 Turn signals/parking lights (right side)
- 2 Turn signals/parking lights (left side)

If you just tap the lever, the turn signals will flash three times (one-touch signalling).

If one of the indicator lamps flashes twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Drive carefully to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

# Main beam ≣○ and headlight flasher

- ► Move the lever to the appropriate position:
- (3) Main beam headlights on (vehicles with main beam assist\* ⇒ page 55)
- 4 Main beam headlights off or headlight flasher

The indicator lamp will light up in the instrument cluster.



# WARNING

The main beam can dazzle other drivers. Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other drivers.

# Main beam assist

Applies to: vehicles with main beam assist

The main beam assist automatically switches the main beam headlights on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions.

A camera (located in the mounting for the interior mirror) detects light sources from other road users. The main beams are activated/deactivated automatically depending on the position of vehicles on either side of the road, on the road speed, and on other traffic and ambient conditions.

On vehicles with matrix LED headlights\*, individual segments of the main beam are activated/deactivated. The relevant sector in front of the vehicle is masked, while the surrounding areas remain lit. The ambient surroundings are thus illuminated optimally without dazzling other road users.

# Activating the main beam assist

Important: The lights must be set to AUTO and the main beam assist function must be activated on the MMI  $\Rightarrow$  page 56.

# Lights and vision

▶ Briefly press the lever forwards ③ ⇒ page 55, Fig. 37 to activate the main beam assist. The indicator lamp will light up in the instrument cluster display and the main beams will be activated/deactivated automatically. The indicator lamp is lit when the main beams are partially or fully on.

# Activating/deactivating the main beams manually

If the main beams are not activated/deactivated as expected, you can do this manually:

- ➤ To activate the main beams manually, briefly press the lever forwards ③ ⇒ page 55, Fig. 37. The indicator lamp will light up.
- To deactivate the main beams manually, pull the lever towards you 4 

  ⇒ page 55, Fig. 37. The main beam assist will be deactivated.

# Flashing the headlights

➤ To flash the headlights, pull the lever towards you ④ ⇒ page 55, Fig. 37. The main beam assist function will remain activated if the headlights were dipped.

# **↑** WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- The main beam assist is only intended to assist the driver. It is always the driver who is responsible for controlling the lights and making adjustments according to the light conditions and visibility.
- The main beam can dazzle other drivers.
   Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other drivers.

# (i) Note

When using the lights, make sure you adhere to the relevant country-specific regulations, for example with regard to dazzling other road users. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

# Adjusting the settings for the exterior lighting

The exterior lighting can be adjusted to your individual settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Lights & vision > Exterior lighting.

# Automatic headlights

The following settings are available in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Activation time – You can determine how soon the lights are switched on by using the settings Early, Medium or Late to adjust the sensitivity of the light sensor.

**Main beam assist** – You can switch the main beam assist on/off.

# Entry/exit lights

The entry/exit lights illuminate the area around the vehicle when the vehicle is unlocked or when the driver's door is opened with the ignition off. The entry/exit lights are operational in the dark when the lights are set to AUTO. Within certain system limits, the front and rear daytime running lights\* are switched on automatically every time the vehicle is unlocked, irrespective of the ambient light conditions.

# Headlight dip settings for driving at home and abroad

If you drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a lefthand drive country, or vice versa, it is not necessary to adjust the headlights, as they are designed for use when driving on the left or right.

One exception to this is when you are driving on motorways. In this case you should turn the light switch to the dipped headlights setting  $\mathbb{S} O$  to prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled.

# Hazard warning lights



Fig. 38 Centre console: Hazard warning lights

The hazard warning lights make other road users aware of your vehicle in hazardous situations.

► Press the △ button ① to switch the hazard warning lights on/off.

When the hazard warning lights are on, the indicator lamps and both flash simultaneously.

If you brake hard at high speed, the brake lights will flash and the hazard warning lights will come on automatically  $^{1)}$ .

You can use the turn signals to indicate a change of direction (or lane) even when the hazard warning lights are on. The hazard warning lights will be interrupted temporarily.

The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

# Driver messages

If the indicator lamp in lights up, a bulb has failed. The driver message shown indicates the cause and what action should be taken. If a message continues to be displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

# Audi adaptive light: fault. See owner's manual

The adaptive light\* feature is out of action. The dipped beam headlights will still be working normally. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

# Headlight range control: fault. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the headlight range control which may cause other road users to be dazzled. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

# Main beam assist: fault. See owner's manual

You can still switch the main beam headlights on and off manually. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

# Main beam assist: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

This message will appear if the camera view is obstructed. The system will switch itself off. Try switching the system on again later.

# Automatic headlights: fault. See owner's manual

The light sensor/rain sensor is out of action. For safety reasons, the dipped beam headlights will then be switched on permanently when the lights are set to AUTO. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

# Interior lights

# Front interior lights



# **Buttons for interior lights**

豜 - Interior lights on/off

<sup>1)</sup> This function is not available on all export versions.

 are switched on and off automatically when this function is activated.

# Touch-sensitive reading lights\*

- ► Briefly touch the surface 1 to turn the appropriate reading light on/off.
- ➤ To use the manual dimmer function, touch the surface ① when the light is switched off, and hold your finger on the surface until the desired brightness level is reached.

# Rear interior lights

Applies to: vehicles with rear reading lights



Fig. 40 Headliner: Reading lights

# Reading lights

- ▶ Press the ৵ button 1 to switch the reading lights on/off.
- ➤ To use the manual dimmer function\*, press the 

  → button ① when the light is switched off,
  and keep pressing it until the desired brightness level is reached.

# **Background lighting**

Applies to: vehicles with background lighting

The background lighting turns on when the ignition is switched on. The background lighting is deactivated when the light function is OFF.

The background lighting can be adjusted to your individual settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select
 CAR > Lights & vision > Background lighting.

You can select from several colour profiles, e.g. **Maritime**.

Additional settings and profiles:

- Brightness: You can adjust the brightness of the entire background lighting.
- Individual: You can adjust the brightness and colour of the background lighting individually for discrete linear and surface lighting zones.
- Audi drive select: The colour of the linear and surface lighting changes depending on the drive select\* mode set.

# Display brightness

You can adjust the standard brightness of the instrument cluster and display lighting as desired. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > Display & brightness.

Settings available on the MMI:

- Cockpit dimming
- Head-up display
- MMI
- Audi virtual cockpit

# Clear vision

# Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Fig. 41 Driver's door: Adjuster knob for exterior mirrors

- ► Turn the knob in the driver's door to the appropriate position:
- 0 To deactivate all setting functions.

→/ → - To select the exterior mirror (left or right side). To adjust the mirror surface, tilt the knob in the desired direction.

- To fold in the exterior mirrors\*. To fold the mirrors out, turn the knob to any of the other positions. One of the MMI settings allows you to control whether or not the mirrors are folded in automatically when you lock the vehicle *⇒* page 38.

# Tilt function\* for front passenger's exterior mirror

Important: The knob must be in the position for adjusting the exterior mirror on the passenger side.

The mirror is tilted slightly when you select reverse gear in order to provide a better view of the kerb, for example, when reversing into a space.

You can adjust the mirror surface by tilting the knob in the desired direction.

The mirror returns to its original position from the reversing position:

- When you switch off the ignition
- If you drive forwards faster than 15 km/h
- If the knob is no longer in the position for adjusting the exterior mirror on the passenger side

# WARNING

Convex or wide-angle\* exterior mirrors give a larger field of vision. However, they make objects look smaller and further away than they really are. If you use these mirrors to estimate the distance to vehicles behind you when changing lane, you could misjudge the distance. Risk of accident!

# **CAUTION**

- Applies to vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors: If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), the mirrors must be fully retracted with the electric control. You will hear a loud noise when the mirrors snap back into place. Do not readjust the mirror housing by hand, as this will interfere with the mirror adjuster function.

- Applies to vehicles without electrically retractable exterior mirrors: If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), it must be returned to its proper position by hand.
- Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent them from being damaged. Electrically retractable exterior mirrors\* must NOT be folded in or out by hand. Always use the electrical power con-



# (i) Note

If the electrical adjustment should fail to operate, both of the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by lightly pressing the edge of the mirror glass.

# Anti-dazzle setting

#### Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

▶ Pull the lever at the bottom of the mirror towards you.

## Automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

▶ The interior and exterior mirrors will darken when bright light (e.g. from the headlights of a following vehicle) shines on the surface of the interior mirror



# WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken mirror. This fluid can cause irritation to the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid. Seek medical assistance if needed.



# **CAUTION**

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken mirror. This fluid can damage plastic surfaces and paintwork. Use a wet sponge or similar to remove the fluid as soon as possible.

# i Note

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

- The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors may not function as intended if the light falling on the surface of the interior mirror is obstructed.
- The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors do not darken if the interior lighting is on or the car is in reverse gear.

# Sun visors



Fig. 42 Headliner: Sun visor

# Sun visor

The sun visors can be pulled out of their mountings and turned towards the door 1.

# Make-up mirrors

The light\* for the make-up mirror comes on automatically when you slide open the mirror cover 2.

# Windscreen wipers

# Switching on the windscreen wipers



Fig. 43 Operating lever: Windscreen wipers



Fig. 44 Operating lever: Rear window wiper\*

- $\blacktriangleright$  Move the lever  $\heartsuit$  to the appropriate position:
- (0) Wipers off
- ① Rain sensor/intermittent wipe. As long as the vehicle has been moving faster than approx. 4 km/h at least once, the windscreen wipers will be activated automatically in the rain. The higher the sensitivity level for the rain sensor (i.e. the further switch ⑥ is moved to the right), the sooner the windscreen wipers react to moisture on the windscreen. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode (this will activate the intermittent wipe mode). In intermittent wipe mode, you can adjust the interval with switch ⑥.
- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Lights & vision > Rain sensor.
- (2) Slow wipe
- (3) Fast wipe
- 4 Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position, the wipers will switch from slow continuous wiping to fast continuous wiping after a while.
- (§) Wash/wipe (©). The number of wipe and extrawipe cycles depends on how long you hold the lever in position (§).

The screen is given an extra wipe a few seconds later to remove any dribbles of water (if the vehicle is moving). You can deactivate this function by moving the lever to position (§) again within 10 seconds after the extra wipe. The extra-wipe function is activated again the next time you switch on the ignition.

If you hold the lever in position (5) for more than half a second, the extended wipe function will be activated. In this case, the windscreen wiper will move closer to the edge of the windscreen during >

The headlight washer system\* only operates when the dipped headlights are switched on. The headlights are also automatically washed intermittently when you move the lever to position

Applies to vehicles with rear wiper: 7 Rear wipe \(\superscript{\text{\tin}}\text{\tin}\text{\tetx{\text{\tetx{\text{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\tin}\text{\text{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\texi}\text{\texi the frequency of the windscreen wipers.

If the windscreen wipers are on and in operation, the rear window wiper will also be switched on automatically when you engage reverse gear.

Applies to vehicles with rear wiper: (8) Rear wash/ wipe . The number of wiper cycles depends on how long you hold the lever in position (8).

# WARNING

- The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still obliged to manually operate the windscreen wipers as required depending on visibility.
- Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.
- Poor visibility can cause accidents. Always ensure that the wiper blades are in good condition ⇒ page 61, Cleaning/changing the windscreen wiper blades.

### **CAUTION**

- In icy conditions, check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the wiper blades are frozen to the windscreen when you switch on the windscreen wipers, this could damage the wiper blades.
- Make sure you switch off the windscreen wiper system (lever in position (0)) before you use an automatic car wash. This will avoid inadvertent triggering of the wipers and possible damage to the wiper system.

# (i) Note

- The windscreen wipers are deactivated when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windscreen wipers after switching the ignition on again by moving the lever to any position. Single wipe (lever in position 4) also works when the ignition is switched off.
- Worn or dirty wiper blades can cause smearing on the glass. This can also impair the effectiveness of the rain sensor. Please check the wiper blades regularly.
- The windscreen washer jets are heated when the ignition is switched on if the outside temperature is low.
- If you stop briefly, e.g. at traffic lights, the wiper speed setting will automatically be reduced by one level.

# Cleaning/changing the windscreen wiper blades

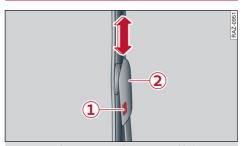


Fig. 45 Windscreen wipers: Changing wiper blades

# Wiper change position

- ► Switch the ignition off, move the windscreen wiper lever to position (4) ⇒ page 60, Fig. 43 and hold it there until the wipers move into the wiper change position.
- ▶ To move the windscreen wipers back to their original position, switch on the ignition and hold the lever in position 4 until the wipers have returned to their original position, or drive faster than 12 km/h.

You can also switch the wiper change position on/off on the MMI system:

► Switch the windscreen wipers off (position (0) ⇒ page 60, Fig. 43).

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Wiper change position.

# Cleaning wiper blades

Important: The wipers must be in the wiper change position.

- ▶ Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
- ▶ Notes on cleaning ⇒ table on page 287.

# Changing wiper blades

Important: The wipers must be in the wiper change position.

- ▶ Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
- ► Keep hold of the wiper blade.
- ▶ Press the release button (1) on the wiper blade.
- ▶ Pull the wiper blade out of the mounting on the wiper arm (2).
- ▶ Fit the new wiper blade into the mounting on the wiper arm. You should hear it engage.
- ▶ Fold the wiper arm back down onto the windscreen.
- ▶ Switch off the wiper change function.

# / WARNING

- For safety, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.
- Dirty wiper blades can impair the driver's view - risk of accident!



# **CAUTION**

- The wipers must be in the wiper change position before they are lifted off the windscreen! Otherwise the wiper motor or the paintwork on the bonnet may be damaged.
- Never move your vehicle or operate the lever while the wiper arms are off the glass in a raised position. The wipers will otherwise automatically return to their park position and may damage the bonnet and windscreen.



#### Note

- You can also use the wiper change position, for example, if you want to fix a cover over the windscreen in the winter to keep it clear of ice.

- You cannot activate the wiper change position when the bonnet is open.

# Cleaning/changing the rear wiper blade

Applies to: vehicles with rear window wiper



Fig. 46 Rear window wiper: Attaching the wiper blade

# Cleaning the wiper blade

- ▶ Lift the rear wiper arm away from the glass.
- ▶ Notes on cleaning ⇒ table on page 287.

# Taking off the wiper blade

- ▶ Lift the rear wiper arm away from the glass.
- ▶ Pull the wiper blade out of the retainer.

# Fitting the wiper blade

- ▶ Press the mounting on the wiper blade into the retainer.
- ► Fold the wiper arm back down onto the rear window.



# WARNING

For safety, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.

# **Driver messages**

If the indicator lamp 💎 lights up, there is a fault in the wiper system. The driver message shown in addition indicates the cause and what action should be taken. If a message remains displayed and does not disappear, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

# Automatic wipers: fault. See owner's manual

The light sensor/rain sensor is out of action. You can continue to use all the other functions of the windscreen wiper lever that do not use the rain sensor. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

# Sitting correctly and safely

# Correct seating position for vehicle occupants

#### General notes

As the driver, you are responsible for ensuring that all vehicle occupants are sitting in the correct position and that they stay in this position for the entire journey. Ensure that:

- Every vehicle occupant has adjusted his/her seat correctly ⇒ page 64.
- The steering wheel is set correctly ⇒ page 67.
- The mirrors have been adjusted so that you have a good view of the surrounding area
   ⇒ page 58.
- Every vehicle occupant has adjusted his/her head restraint correctly ⇒ page 68.
- Every vehicle occupant has fastened his/her seat belt correctly ⇒ page 69.
- Applies to vehicles with deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: The front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated as appropriate for the occupant of the front passenger's seat ⇒ page 75.
- Any children are correctly secured in a suitable child restraint system on an appropriate seat ⇒ page 76. Please read the important safety information about the use of child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat ⇒ ♠ in General notes on page 76.

# Examples of incorrect seating positions

Seat belts can only provide maximum protection if the belt webbing is positioned correctly. Sitting out of position greatly reduces the effectiveness of the seat belts and increases the risk of injury since the belt webbing is not worn in the position for which it is designed.

The following list shows just some examples of incorrect sitting positions which can be dangerous to all occupants. The list is not complete, but will help to make you aware of possible dangers which can be avoided. Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

- Never stand up in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never travel with the backrest reclined too far.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lie down on the rear seat.
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out of the window.
- Never put your feet out of the window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never put your feet on the seat cushion.
- Never ride in the footwell.
- Never sit on the armrests.
- Never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt.
- Never climb into the luggage compartment.



### WARNING

Sitting out of position, not wearing a seat belt or being too close to the airbag exposes the occupants to potentially fatal injuries if, for instance, the airbags inflate and strike an occupant who is not seated in one of the proper positions. Please note the important information and safety precautions in the corresponding chapters on the subjects above.



#### Note

If physical factors prevent you from being able to assume a correct seating position, please contact a qualified automotive specialist.

# Front seats

# **General notes**

#### Ensure that:

- You can press the pedals down completely with your legs still slightly bent.
- Your torso is at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel/dashboard.
- Your knees are at least 10 cm away from the dashboard.
- Your thighs are resting lightly on the front of the seat cushion.

- The backrest is in an upright position and makes full contact with the occupant's back.
- You have a good view of your surroundings.
- You have an unobstructed view of the instrument cluster, warning/indicator lamps and head-up display\*.

#### WARNING

- If you are too close to the steering wheel/ dash panel, the airbag system cannot protect you correctly - risk of severe or fatal injury!
- To reduce any risk of injury to the driver during a sudden brake application or in an accident, never drive with the backrest tilted too far back. The airbag system and seat belts can only provide proper protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing the seat belt in the correct position. If the backrest is reclined too far to the rear, the seat belt may slide away from harder body parts towards softer areas such as the stomach risk of injury!
- Never adjust the seats when the vehicle is moving - this could lead to an accident.
- Be careful when adjusting the seats. Careless use of the seat adjustment controls can cause injuries to both the front seat and rear seat occupants.
- Never place objects in the driver's footwell.
   Such objects could move under the pedals and interfere with their proper function. In the event of sudden braking or a change of direction, you would not be able to use the pedals. This could result in a loss of control and possibly cause an accident.
- Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
- Never lay additional floor mats or other floor coverings over the existing floor mats; this would restrict the pedal area and possibly obstruct the pedals, which could cause an accident.
- Never place your feet on the dashboard, out of the windows or on the seat, as this could lead to injury. This also applies to the rear seat occupants.

# (1)

# CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with manually adjustable head restraints

Take care when adjusting the seat to ensure the head restraint does not collide with the headliner or sun roof\*. This could cause damage.

# Manual adjustment of seats

Applies to: vehicles with manual seat adjustment



Fig. 47 Front seat: Adjuster controls

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

# Adjusting the seat position

- ► To move the seat forwards/backwards, pull the lever ① and move the seat.
- ► To move the seat upwards/downwards, pull/ press the lever ②.

# Adjusting the backrest

► To move the backrest forwards/backwards, turn the knob (3).

# Adjusting the thigh support

► To move the thigh support in or out, lift the handle 4 and slide it in either direction.

### Adjusting the seat cushion angle

► To adjust the angle of the seat cushion, pull/ press the lever ⑤.

# Adjusting the lumbar support

► To adjust the lumbar support, press the appropriate side of the button (6).

# $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- Never adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is moving - this could lead to an accident.
- Be careful when adjusting the seat height.
   Careless or uncontrolled use of the seat adjustment can cause injuries.
- Do not drive with the backrests of the front seats reclined too far as otherwise the seat belts and airbags could fail to restrain the occupants properly in an accident, possibly leading to injury.

# **Electric adjustment of seats**

Applies to: vehicles with electric seat adjustment



Fig. 48 Front seat: Buttons for seat adjustment

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

# Adjusting the backrest

► To move the backrest forwards/backwards, press button 1 forwards/backwards.

# Adjusting the seat position

- ► To move the seat forwards/backwards, push button (2) forwards/backwards.
- ► To move the seat up/down, press the rear area of button (2) upwards/downwards.
- ► To adjust the seat cushion, press the front area of button ② upwards/downwards.

#### Adjusting the lumbar support

► To adjust the lumbar support, press the appropriate side of the button ③.

# Adjusting the thigh support

➤ To move the thigh support in or out, lift the handle (4) ⇒ page 65, Fig. 47 and slide it in either direction.

# Massage function

► Press button ④ ⇒ Fig. 48 to switch the massage function on/off.

# $\Lambda$

### WARNING

- Never adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is moving - this could lead to an accident.
- The electric front seat adjustment also works when the ignition is off. To avoid accidental injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- Be careful when adjusting the seat height.
   Careless or uncontrolled use of the height adjustment can cause injuries.
- Do not drive with the backrests of the front seats reclined too far as otherwise the seat belts and airbags could fail to restrain the occupants properly in an accident, possibly leading to injury.

# Massage function for front seats

Applies to: vehicles with massage function



Fig. 49 Centre display: Massage function

# Calling up the massage function on the MMI

Applies to: MMI

- ▶ On the home screen, select CAR > Seats.
- ► To display the different seats, press on \( \rightarrow \) or \( \lambda \).

The red highlighting in the symbol ② shows which seat is currently selected.

# Calling up the massage function via the button

► To call up the **Massage** menu, press the 👌 button (4) \( \rightarrow page 66, Fig. 48.

# Switching massage function on/off

Applies to: MMI

- ► To switch the massage function on/off, press the i button 4 ⇒ page 66, Fig. 48. Or:
- ► On the MMI, press **Start/Stop**.

# Setting massage programme and intensity Applies to: MMI

- ► To select the massage programme, press the corresponding button, e.g. Wave, on the MMI.
- ➤ To set the intensity of the massage, press Intensity on the MMI repeatedly until the desired level is reached.



### Note

The massage function switches off automatically after 10 minutes.

### Front centre armrest

Applies to: vehicles with front centre armrest

The front centre armrest is located between the front seats.

# Adjusting the centre armrest

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- ► To move the armrest forwards/backwards, move it in the corresponding direction.
- ► To adjust the angle, lift the armrest until it engages in the desired position.
- ► To move the armrest back to the initial position, lift the armrest slightly from the top position and then fold it back down.



### WARNING

In certain positions, the centre armrest may limit the movement of the driver's arms - risk of injury!

# Steering wheel

# General notes

#### Ensure that:

- Your torso is at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel.
- Your arms are bent slightly at the elbows.
- You have a good view of your surroundings and can see the instrument cluster and head-up display\* at all times.
- You always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the rim at about the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position while driving.

# $\Lambda$

# WARNING

- If you are too close to the steering wheel,
   the driver airbag cannot protect you correctly risk of severe or fatal injury!
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12
   o'clock position, or with your hands inside
   the rim or on the steering wheel hub. This
   could result in serious injuries to the arms,
   hands and head if the driver's airbag inflates.

# Adjusting the steering wheel position (manual adjustment)

Applies to: vehicles with manual steering wheel adjustment

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted.



**Fig. 50** Steering column: Lever for adjusting the steering wheel position

- ► Press the release lever in the direction indicated by the arrow.
- Move the steering wheel to the desired position.

▶ Push the lever all the way up until the catch engages.

# 

- Adjust the position of the steering wheel only before driving off - risk of accident!
- Press the lever upwards so it is secure and so that the position of the steering wheel cannot shift unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident!

# Head restraints

# General notes

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints



Fig. 51 Correctly adjusted head restraint

#### Ensure that:

- The top of the head restraint is level with the top of your head.
- The head restraint is as close as possible to the back of your head.
- The head restraints on any occupied rear seats are pulled all the way up.

# WARNING

- There is a head restraint for every seat. It is very important that all vehicle occupants adjust their head restraint correctly before every trip. Incorrectly adjusted head restraints can increase the risk of neck injuries in an accident or during sudden or unexpected braking or other manoeuvres.
- Remove the rear head restraints only if this is necessary in order to attach a child restraint system ⇒ page 76. Store head restraints securely if you remove them, e.g. in the luggage compartment. Install the head

restraint again immediately after removing the child restraint system. Travelling with the head restraints removed increases the risk of severe neck injuries.

## Front head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

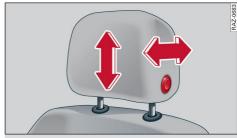


Fig. 52 Front seat: Adjusting head restraint

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

# Adjusting head restraint

- ▶ To raise or lower the head restraint or move it backwards, press the side button and move the head restraint in the desired direction. Release the button and slide the head restraint further until you feel it click into place.
- ▶ To move the head restraint forwards, adjust the position of the head restraint until you feel it click into place.

#### Rear head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

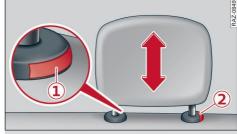


Fig. 53 Rear seat: Adjusting/removing head restraint

# Adjusting head restraint

- ➤ To raise the head restraint, adjust the position of the head restraint until you feel it click into place.
- ➤ To lower the head restraint, press the button ② and move the head restraint downwards. Release the button and slide the head restraint further until you feel it click into place.

# Removing head restraint

Applies to: vehicles with removable head restraints

- ▶ Fold the backrest forwards slightly ⇒ page 85.
- ▶ Raise the head restraint as far as it will go.
- Press button ② ⇒ Fig. 53. If the head restraint has an additional button, press that button as well ①. At the same time, pull the head restraint out of the backrest ⇒ in General notes on page 68.

# Installing head restraint

- ▶ Fold the backrest forwards slightly ⇒ page 85.
- ▶ Push the posts of the head restraint into the guides until you feel them click into place.
- Press the button 2 and push the head restraint all the way down. It should no longer be possible to remove the head restraint from the backrest without pressing the button.

# Seat belts

# **General notes**

Every seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt. When worn correctly, seat belts are the most effective way to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries in an accident. You should therefore always wear your seat belt correctly and you should also ensure that all vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly while the vehicle is moving.

Although the vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, every vehicle occupant must still wear a seat belt. In addition to their normal function of protecting the vehicle occupants in a collision, the seat belts also hold them in a position where the airbags can inflate properly and provide maximum protection. Seat belts offer protection in

accidents in which no airbags are triggered or where they have already been triggered.

# $\Lambda$

### WARNING

The risk of severe or fatal injury is increased if the seat belt is worn incorrectly or not at all, or if it is damaged.

- All vehicle occupants (including the driver)
  must put their seat belt on correctly before
  every trip and must always keep it on while
  the vehicle is moving, regardless of whether
  the seat is equipped with an airbag or not.
  This also applies to children who are being
  secured in a child restraint system appropriate to their height, weight and age using the
  seat belt.
- In an accident, unbelted passengers will be thrown around in the vehicle and make violent contact with the steering wheel, dashboard, windscreen, doors, etc. They could even be thrown out of the vehicle. Rear passengers who do not use seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the other occupants.
- Never allow passengers to share the same seat belt. Never secure more than one person (including small children) with the seat belt.
- Never travel with children or babies on your lap and never share the same seat belt.
- To ensure that the seat belt is fully effective, the latch plate must always be engaged in the correct buckle for a particular seat.
- To ensure that the seat belts can provide maximum protection, all vehicle occupants must be seated in the correct seating position ⇒ page 64.
- Check the condition of the seat belts at regular intervals ⇒ page 287. If you notice that the belt webbing, fittings, retractor mechanism or buckle of any of the belts is damaged, the belt must be replaced by a qualified workshop.
- The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair a damaged belt yourself.

- Seat belts which have been worn in an accident must be replaced by a qualified workshop.

# Wearing a seat belt correctly

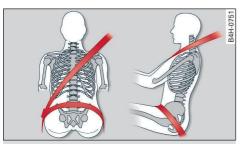


Fig. 54 Seat belt position over lap/shoulder



Fig. 55 Positioning seat belts during pregnancy

Seat belts must always be worn correctly in order to provide the best possible protection in the event of an accident and to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Correctly worn seat belts also hold the vehicle occupants in position in such a way that the airbags provide maximum protection if they are triggered. For this reason, it is essential that you always fasten your seat belt and ensure that it is worn correctly  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 54.

Make sure that you are wearing your seat belt correctly by checking the following points:

- The lap belt section of the seat belt should be worn tightly across the hips.
- The shoulder section of the seat belt should be fitted across the centre of the shoulder.
- The belt must always make firm and even contact with the body.

At all times during pregnancy, women must wear the seat belt so that it runs evenly across the

chest and as low as possible over the hips; the belt must make even contact so that there is no pressure on the stomach  $\Rightarrow$  *Fig. 55*.

# WARNING

Wearing a seat belt incorrectly may result in serious injuries in the event of an accident or under sudden braking or manoeuvres.

- Never travel in a moving vehicle with the backrest reclined. The further the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the seat belt.
- The seat belt itself or a loose seat belt can cause serious injuries if it slides away from harder body parts towards softer areas such as the stomach.
- The shoulder section of the seat helt should be fitted across the centre of the shoulder and torso and never under the arm. behind the back or over the neck or face.
- The lap belt section of the seat belt must be worn tightly across the hips, and never over the stomach or abdomen.
- The seat belt must make firm and even contact with the upper body and hips.
- Do not allow the seat belt to become twisted or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
- The protection offered by the seat belt in an accident is reduced if the height of the belt is not correctly adjusted or if the seat belt is not properly positioned. Make sure that the seat belts are properly positioned and the height correctly adjusted to suit the vehicle occupants.
- Seat belts worn too loose can result in injuries because they allow excessive forward movement in a crash; the occupant will be brought to a sudden stop by the belt web-
- Loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket) impairs the proper fit and function of the belts.
- Do not wear the belt over hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.).
- During pregnancy, women must wear the lap belt section of the seat belt as low as

possible across the hips and underneath the rounded stomach.

## CAUTION

Make sure that no velcro fasteners or sharp objects, such as zip fasteners or rivets on clothing, are in the way of the seat belt while you are wearing it; otherwise the seat belt could be damaged.

## Fastening/unfastening the seat belt

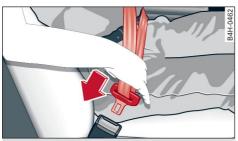


Fig. 56 Latch plate and buckle



Fig. 57 The latch plate of the belt springs out of the buck-

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 69.

#### Fastening the seat belt

- ► To fasten the belt, take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across your chest and lap.
- ▶ Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇒ Fig. 56.
- ▶ Pull the belt to check that it is now securely fastened.

## Unfastening the seat belt

- ▶ Press the red button in the seat belt buckle ⇒ Fig. 57. The latch plate is released and springs out.
- ▶ Guide the belt back by hand so that it is taken up more easily.

## Seat belt monitor

If the warning lamp lights up/flashes, one of the seat belts is not fastened/was unfastened during driving. Above a certain speed, a warning chime will also sound.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the status of the rear seat belts may also be monitored by the following indicator lamps:

- If the indicator lamp lights up, the corresponding rear seat is not occupied.

4 - If the indicator lamp lights up, the rear seat helt has been fastened.

## Adjusting seat belt height

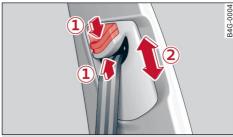


Fig. 58 Belt height adjustment for the front seats: guide fitting

- ▶ To move the seat belt higher, slide the guide fitting (2) upwards.
- ► To move the seat belt lower, squeeze the release mechanism (1) and slide the guide fitting (2) downwards.
- ► After adjusting, pull the shoulder belt sharply to check that the catch on the guide fitting is engaged securely.



#### Note

It is also possible to adjust the height of the front seats to obtain the best position for the front seat belts.

## Additional seat belt functions

#### Automatic belt retractors

The seat belts are equipped with automatic belt retractors. The retractor system gives complete freedom of movement, as long as the pull on the belt is slow. Hard braking locks the belt. The belt will also lock when you accelerate, drive up or down a steep hill or corner sharply.

### **Belt force limiters**

Seat belts with belt force limiters reduce the forces acting on the body from the seat belts themselves in an accident.

### Belt tensioners

Seat belts with reversible belt tensioners may be tightened in certain driving situations. This is done if the belt is too loose and needs to be taken up in order to lie more tightly against the body.

Seat belts with pyrotechnic belt tensioners may be tensioned automatically in certain types of collision. This helps to reduce the forward motion of the occupants.



## WARNING

The pyrotechnic system can only be activated once. If the pyrotechnic belt tensioners have been activated at any time, the system must be replaced by a qualified workshop.



## Note

Some smoke may be released when the pyrotechnic belt tensioners are activated. This does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

## **Memory function**

#### **General notes**

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

The memory function can be used to store and call up seat profiles via the recall buttons in the door trim.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, settings such as the position of the driver's seat and the exterior mirrors can be stored.

## Storing and calling up seat profile

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

The memory function buttons are located in the door trim.

## Storing seat profile

- ► Press the SET button. When the LED in the button lights up, a seat profile can be stored.
- Press one of the numbered recall buttons. A tone will sound to confirm that the settings have been stored

## Recalling seat profile

- ► If the corresponding door is open and the ignition is off, briefly press the recall button once. All the settings for the seat profile will be applied.
- ► If the corresponding door is closed or the ignition is on, press and hold the recall button until the seat profile settings have been applied.



#### WARNING

- For safety reasons, never recall seat settings when the vehicle is moving - this could lead to an accident.
- If necessary, the recall function can be stopped at any time by pressing the seat adjustment button in the door/on the display for the relevant seat.

## Airbag system

## **General notes**

## $\triangle$

## WARNING

- If you do not wear a seat belt or sit in the correct position, or if you are seated too close to the airbag system, you will not be fully protected by the airbag system. This puts you at risk of serious or fatal injury. Ensure that all occupants are seated in the correct position with their seat belts fastened ⇒ page 64. This applies regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not.
- Never place your feet on the dashboard, out
   of the windows or on the seat. To ensure
   that the airbag systems can open without
   obstructions, never lean forwards or lean on
   the door or the side window. You could otherwise sustain potentially fatal injuries if the
   airbags are triggered.
- Persons, pets or objects positioned between
  the airbag system and the occupant will prevent the airbag system from inflating properly and could be catapulted through the vehicle cabin risk of serious or fatal injury.
   Ensure that there are no objects between
  the vehicle occupants and the airbag system. Never secure or carry objects in the
  area of inflation of the airbag systems, in
  particular around the steering wheel, on the
  dashboard, against the doors, on the windows and in the footwell.
- Never apply stickers or other coverings to the airbag system covers.
- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang up clothing. Do not leave any heavy, fragile or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. This could otherwise interfere with the effectiveness of the head-protection airbags.
- If you intend to fit protective covers over the seats, these must be of the specific type approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags. The centre airbags inflate from the

- backrest and the protection they provide would otherwise be seriously impaired.
- Any damage to the original seat upholstery in the area from which the side airbags inflate must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.
- Components of the airbag system are located in various parts of the vehicle. Improper servicing or repairs to the vehicle can cause damage to parts of the airbag system or prevent the airbags from working properly.
   As a result, the airbags may not inflate correctly or may not be triggered at all in an accident situation, putting the occupants at risk of serious or fatal injury. Have any repairs or modifications to the vehicle carried out by a qualified workshop.
- The airbag system can only be activated once; after it has been triggered, have the airbag system replaced by a qualified workshop without delay.
- The airbag may release a fine dust when it is triggered. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle. The fine dust can irritate the skin and eyes and/or cause breathing issues, particularly in persons who suffer or have suffered from asthma or other breathing issues. Get out of the vehicle or open the windows or doors to breathe in fresh air.



## Note

If you are travelling with children, please note the information and safety precautions ⇒ page 76.

## Safety system monitoring

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster monitors the safety systems such as the airbags (including control units, sensors and wiring) and belt tensioners. It lights up for a few seconds when you switch on the ignition.

If the indicator lamp does not light up when you switch on the ignition, if it does not go out after a few seconds, or if it lights up or flashes while you are driving, there is a fault in one of the safety

systems. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

## 

Have the fault in the safety systems examined without delay; otherwise the systems may fail to trigger in an accident – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

## Description

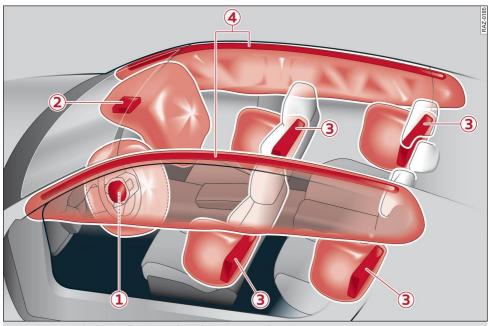


Fig. 59 Overview of airbags (inflation area after airbags are triggered)

The locations of the airbags are marked with the word "AIRBAG". The following airbags are fitted in your vehicle:

- 1 Driver's airbag
- (2) Front passenger's airbag
- (3) Front side airbags and rear side airbags (optional)
- 4 Head-protection airbags

The airbags in your vehicle provide the greatest possible protection in accident situations when passengers are seated in the correct position with their seat belts properly fastened. Airbags are a supplementary restraint system; they are not a substitute for seat belts.

The airbags may be triggered in accidents affecting the front or side areas of the vehicle or (depending on the vehicle's equipment) in accidents in which the vehicle overturns.

It is not possible to define the exact triggering response of the airbag system in all possible situations, since the circumstances in different types of accident will vary considerably. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed and so on. Whether the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision. By processing the signals from the sensors located in the vehicle, the electronic control unit is immediately able to evaluate the severity

of the collision and activate the restraint systems accordingly. If the deceleration rate is below the predefined reference value in the control unit the airbags will not be triggered, even though the accident may cause extensive damage to the car. In these situations, the occupants are restrained by the correctly fastened seat belts.

When an airbag is triggered, it is filled with gas. This causes the relevant airbag cover panel to break off. The airbag then opens into its deployment zone in milliseconds, with significant force. As the seat belt-restrained occupants move in the direction of the impact, the inflated airbags slow their movement, thereby helping to protect e.g. the head, torso and pelvis. Nonetheless, the possibility cannot be ruled out completely that an airbag might cause injury when triggered.

The airbag system will only work with the ignition on.

## Deactivating the front passenger's airbag

Applies to: vehicles with key-operated switch for front passenger's airbag



**Fig. 60** Glove box: Key-operated switch for deactivating front passenger's airbag



**Fig. 61** Headliner: Indicator lamp for status of front passenger's airbag

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the key-operated switch is set to the correct position.

If you have no other alternative than to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, always switch the front passenger's airbag off  $\Rightarrow$  page 77. If you have deactivated the front passenger's airbag, reactivate it as soon as the child restraint system is no longer needed so that the airbag can continue to give the required protection.

- ▶ Take out the emergency key ⇒ page 41.
- ► To deactivate the front passenger's airbag, turn the emergency key to the off position in the key-operated switch ⇒ Fig. 60. The indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF % will light up and remain lit.
- ► The front passenger's airbag can be reactivated by turning the emergency key to the <sup>(1)</sup> position. The indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG ON <sup>(2)</sup> will light up briefly.

## ↑ WARNING

- A child in a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat could suffer a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag were to deploy - risk of severe or fatal injury! Always secure any child restraint systems to the rear seats. If you have no other alternative than to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, always check before driving off that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ॐ is lit continuously.
- Adults travelling on the front passenger's seat will not be protected by the front passenger's airbag if it is deactivated - risk of severe or fatal injury! Before driving off, always check that

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF is not lit.

## Child restraint systems

## **General notes**



Fig. 62 Passenger's sun visor: Airbag sticker

When installing and using child restraint systems, always observe the information in this Owner's Manual, the applicable country-specific regulations and the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

## **MARNING**

To avoid serious or fatal injury, children travelling in the vehicle must always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

- Children under 1.50 m tall or younger than 12 must not travel in the vehicle without a suitable child restraint system. Please observe any other applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.
- Improperly secured child restraint systems in the vehicle can lead to serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident. Always secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Children and babies must NEVER travel on another occupant's lap.
- Never allow more than one child to occupy one child restraint system.
- Never leave a child without supervision in a child restraint system.
- Never allow a child to travel unrestrained in the vehicle or to stand up or kneel on a seat while the car is moving. In an accident, the child could be catapulted through the car, potentially causing fatal injuries to itself and other occupants.

- If children are out of position when the car is moving, they are at greater risk of injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This applies in particular if the child is travelling on the front passenger's seat, or if the child's head is near the opening for the side airbag when the airbag system is triggered in an accident. This incorrect seating position can result in serious or even fatal injury.
- Make sure there is sufficient clearance in front of the child sitting in the child restraint system. If necessary, adjust the seat position and backrest angle of the seat in front of the child restraint system.
- The back of any forward-facing child restraint system must be flush with the backrest of the vehicle seat. Adjust or remove the head restraint if it hinders installation ⇒ page 68. Install the head restraint again immediately after removing the child restraint system.
- Always make sure that the backrest of the seat carrying the child restraint system is properly engaged and that it cannot move forwards. Otherwise the backrest could be moved forwards, together with the child restraint system attached to it, in the event of an accident or other emergency.
- NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
  - Applies to vehicles on which the front passenger's airbag cannot be deactivated: Do
     NOT use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat.
  - Applies to vehicles with key-operated switch for deactivating the front passenger's airbag: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat while the front passenger's airbag is active. If you have no alternative but to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated beforehand via the key-operated switch ⇒ page 75. Make sure that the

- front passenger's airbag is reactivated by means of the key-operated switch as soon as the child restraint system is no longer needed on the front passenger's seat.
- If you need to use a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, move the front passenger's seat all the way back so that it is as far away from the front passenger's airbag as possible. Before doing so, you should ensure that there is nothing blocking the adjustment area. A child in a child restraint system on the front
- passenger's seat could suffer a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag were to deploy risk of severe or fatal injury!
- Always replace the child restraint system with a new one after an accident as damage not externally visible may have occurred.
- The child restraint system must always be properly secured, even when it is unoccupied; otherwise it could be flung through the cabin during sudden braking or in the event of an accident.

## The right place to seat children

Children should always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

You can secure child restraint systems in your vehicle using the ISOFIX retaining rings or the seat belts. You can also secure child restraint systems to the top tether anchorages.

## Always seat children on the rear seats

Accident statistics show that the rear seats are the safest place for children to sit. Children should always be seated in an appropriate child restraint system on the rear seats approved for these systems  $\Rightarrow$  table on page 78,  $\Rightarrow$  table on page 79.

# In exceptional cases: children on the front passenger's seat

Always observe the relevant country-specific regulations regarding whether a child restraint system may be used on the front passenger's seat in exceptional circumstances. A child restraint system must not be used on the front passenger's seat if this is prohibited by the relevant countryspecific regulations. If the relevant country-specific regulations allow the use of a child restraint system, check the tables  $\Rightarrow$  table on page 78 and  $\Rightarrow$  table on page 79 to see whether your system can be secured on the front passenger's seat in the vehicle.

If your child restraint system complies with the relevant country-specific regulations and is suitable for use on the front passenger's seat of your vehicle, please note the following:

Applies to: rearward-facing child restraint systems

- Vehicles without deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: Use on the front passenger's seat is **not** permitted.

Applies to: forward-facing child restraint systems

 Move the front passenger's seat all the way back so that it is as far away from the front passenger's airbag as possible. Before doing so, you should ensure that there is nothing blocking the adjustment area.

## Seats suitable for the attachment of child restraint systems with ISOFIX

Child restraint sys-	ISOFIX	Rear seats		Front passenger's seat*	
tem	size category	Outer	Centre	Front pas- senger's air- bag on	Front pas- senger's air- bag off*
Category 0: Up to 10 kg	E/R1	IL	х	Х	IL
Category 0+: Up to 13 kg	E/R1	IL	х	Х	IL
	D/R2				
	C/R3				
Category 1: 9 to 18 kg	D/R2	IL	X	Х	IL
	C/R3				
	B/F2	IL, IUF	Х	IL	IL
	B1/F2x				
	A/F3				
Category 2: 15 to 25 kg	-	IL	х	IL	IL
Category 3: 22 to 36 kg	-	IL	х	IL	IL
i-Size child re- straint system	F2x/R2/B2	i-U	Х	Х	Х

- ISOFIX size category: The size category specifies the weight range for which the child restraint system is approved. On child restraint systems with universal or semi-universal approval, the size category is specified on the ECE approval label. Each child restraint system carries a label specifying the weight category.
- IL: Seat suitable for the attachment of an ISO-FIX child restraint system with semi-universal approval. Refer to the vehicle list provided by the manufacturer.
- IUF: Seat suitable for the attachment of a forward-facing ISOFIX child restraint system with universal approval.
- i-U: Seat suitable for the attachment of an i-Size child restraint system with universal approval.
- X: Seat not suitable for the attachment of the corresponding child restraint system.

## Seats suitable for the attachment of child restraint systems with the seat belt

Child restraint system	Rear	seats	Front passenger's seat	
	Outer	Centre <sup>1)</sup>	Front pas- senger's air- bag on	Front pas- senger's air- bag off*
Category 0 Up to 10 kg	U, L	U	X	U
Category 0+ Up to 13 kg	U, L	U	Х	U
Category 1 9 to 18 kg	U, L	U	Х	U
Category 2 15 to 25 kg	U, L	U	U	U
Category 3 22 to 36 kg	U, L	U	U	U

- U: Seat suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with universal approval.
- L: Seat suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with semi-universal approval.
   Refer to the vehicle list provided by the manufacturer.
- X: Seat not suitable for the attachment of the corresponding child restraint system.
- 1): Seat not suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with a support leg.

## Recommended child restraint systems

Audi recommends the following child restraint systems from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories:

- Category 0 and 0+: Audi carry cot with optional ISOFIX base
- Category 1: Audi child seat with ISOFIX base
- Category 2 and 3: Audi child seat "youngster plus"
- i-Size child restraint system: Audi I-SIZE carry cot with optional I-SIZE base
- i-Size child restraint system: Audi I-SIZE child seat with I-SIZE base

## i Note

 Child restraint systems can also be secured on seats with side airbags. Side airbags can provide additional protection to children

- who are correctly secured in a suitable child restraint system in the event of an accident.
- For correct installation, some child restraint systems require the use of both the lower ISOFIX anchorages and the seat belt. The simultaneous use of both of these is permissible as long as this does not restrict the restraint systems or seat belts on an adjacent seat.

# Attaching a child restraint system to the bottom ISOFIX anchorages



Fig. 63 Rear seat: Bottom ISOFIX anchorages

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 76.

The bottom ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seat cushion and the backrest on the vehicle's outer rear seats and on the front passenger's seat\*. There are two bottom ISOFIX anchorages on these seats to which you can secure an ISOFIX/i-Size child restraint system.

- ► Activate the child lock ⇒ page 48.
- ► Remove the covers\* from the two ISOFIX anchorages.
- ► Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Pull on the child restraint system to check whether both sides have engaged properly in the ISOFIX anchorages.
- ► If possible, also secure the child restraint system to the corresponding top tether anchorage of the vehicle ⇒ page 81.

## $\Lambda$

## WARNING

- NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
- The ISOFIX anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child restraint systems with ISOFIX. Do not attempt to secure other types of child restraint system, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

# Securing child restraint systems with a seat belt

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 76.

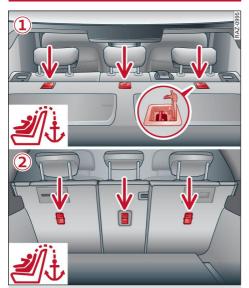
- ► Activate the child lock ⇒ page 48.
- When attaching a child restraint system to the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far upwards as possible.
- ► Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- ► After securing the child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's backrest so that it makes full contact with the child restraint system. You should also ensure that the upper securing point for the seat belt is behind the child restraint system.
- ► If you are using a child restraint system on the rear seat, you should additionally secure the child restraint system to the vehicle's corresponding top tether anchorage ⇒ page 81, if possible.

## $\Lambda$

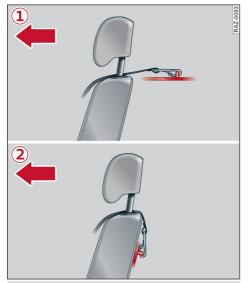
## WARNING

- NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
- To ensure proper protection by the child restraint system, it is important to wear the seat belts in the correct position. Always check that the belt is properly positioned according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system. Incorrectly worn seat belts can give rise to injuries even in a minor collision.

# Additionally securing a child restraint system to the top tether anchorage



**Fig. 64** Version ① rear shelf / version ② rear backrest: Top tether anchorages for securing a child restraint system with a top tether strap



**Fig. 65** Version ① rear shelf / version ② rear backrest: Hooking strap into top tether anchorage

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 76.

The top tether anchorages for additionally securing a child restraint system with a top tether strap are located behind the outer and centre\* rear seats.

- ► Raise the head restraint behind the child restraint system.
- ► Applies to version 1: Fold the top tether anchorage cover upwards.
- Guide the top tether strap of the child restraint system underneath or past both sides of the head restraint (depending on the type of child restraint system) towards the rear.
- ► Hook the strap into the top tether anchorage ⇒ Fig. 65. When doing so, make sure that the belt is not twisted and that it is not on any sharp edges.
- ► Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Pull the strap tight so that the top of the child restraint system rests securely against the backrest.
- ► If necessary, lower the head restraint behind the child restraint system.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

The top tether anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child restraint systems with a top tether strap. Do not attempt to secure other types of child restraint system, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

## Storage and convenience

## **Ashtray**

Applies to: vehicles with ashtray



Fig. 66 Front centre console: Ashtray and cigarette lighter

- ► Open the ashtray (1).
- ▶ To empty the ashtray, lift it out of its holder.
- ► Rotate the upper section to separate it from the ashtray insert.
- Always put the ashtray safely back into the holder after removing it.

## $\Lambda$

## WARNING

Never put waste paper in the ashtray, as this could cause a fire.

## Cigarette lighter

Applies to: vehicles with cigarette lighter

- ► Press in the button on the cigarette lighter ②

  ⇒ page 82, Fig. 66.
- ► When the button on the cigarette lighter springs out, pull the insert out.



#### WARNING

The cigarette lighter only works when the ignition is on. Improper use can cause serious injury or start a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle with the key.

## **Power sources**

When the ignition is switched on, several power sources for external devices are available (depending on the equipment fitted in your vehicle).

## 12 Volt sockets

You can connect electrical accessories to the 12 Volt sockets. The devices connected must not exceed a power rating of 120 W. Do not connect several devices to the vehicle sockets at the same time.

The 12 Volt sockets are marked with the  $\angle$  symbol or 12V. They are located in the front centre console, in the rear cabin\* and in the luggage compartment side trim\*.

## **USB** inputs

Applies to: vehicles with USB input

You can use the USB inputs to charge mobile devices. The USB inputs are marked with the ← or 

□ symbol or CHARGE ONLY.



## WARNING

- Make sure that all connected devices are securely stowed when driving to prevent them from being catapulted through the car under braking or in an accident danger to life!
- Improper use can cause serious injury or start a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle with the key.



## CAUTION

- Please observe the operating instructions for the connected devices.
- To avoid damage to the vehicle's electrical system, never connect equipment that generates electrical current to the power sources in order to charge the vehicle's battery.
- Do not connect a device with a voltage different from the designated voltage of the socket.
- To avoid damage, please take care when detaching connectors from the power sources.



#### Note

Do not plug any additional devices into the sockets while the compressor\*⇒ page 293 supplied with the vehicle is in use. The power rating for the sockets may be exceeded for a

short period of time while the compressor\* is in use.

## Cup holders

Applies to: vehicles with cup holders



Fig. 67 Front centre console: Cup holder

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, there may be cup holders in the front centre console, in the door trim and in the rear centre armrest.

## Cup holder in front centre console

- ► Applies to version 1: Place your drinks in the holder ①.
- ► Applies to version 2: To use the cup holders, fold down the plastic rings (2).

## $\Lambda$

## WARNING

- Do not put any hot drinks in the cup holders while the vehicle is moving. You could be scalded if the hot liquid is spilt.
- Do not use cups, mugs or glasses made from hard materials such as glass or porcelain.
   These could cause injury in the event of an accident.



## **CAUTION**

You should avoid putting open drinks containers in the cup holders. The drinks could otherwise spill over and cause damage to the vehicle's equipment.

## Storage compartments

# Storage shelf behind the rear head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with storage shelf behind rear head restraints

The storage shelf should only be used to store light articles of clothing.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

Do not store any heavy or hard objects and do not transport animals on the storage shelf. They could injure the vehicle occupants in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres or an accident.



## **CAUTION**

Please ensure that hard objects do not chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.



#### Note

Make sure that the slots between the rear window and the storage shelf are kept clear to ensure unimpaired ventilation.

## **Further storage compartments**

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, you will find several storage compartments and retainers that can be used to safely store items. These include, for example, the glove box.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- To avoid the risk of injuries, always keep all storage compartments closed when driving.
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres - risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
- The storage compartments in the door trims should only be used to store small objects.
   Make sure that they are stored safely inside the compartment, as otherwise they might impair the protection offered by the side airbags.

- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang up clothing. Do not leave any heavy, fragile or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. This could otherwise interfere with the effectiveness of the head-protection airbags.
- Make sure that your view to the rear is not obstructed (e.g. by any items of clothing hanging up or objects in the vehicle).

## Luggage compartment

## **General notes**

All luggage and other objects must be safely secured in the luggage compartment. To maintain safe handling on the road, please observe the following points:

- Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- ► Place heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.
- Secure items of luggage to the fastening rings with non-elastic straps.

## **WARNING**

- Applies to vehicles with luggage compartment cover: The luggage compartment cover should not be used as a storage shelf.
   Items placed on this cover could cause injury in an accident or in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres.
- Applies to vehicles with luggage compartment cover: The luggage compartment cover must always be securely attached when in use risk of accident!
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres - risk of accident! Always stow objects safely in the luggage compartment and secure them on the fastening rings. Use suitable securing straps when transporting heavy objects.
- If items of luggage or other objects are secured to the fastening rings with inappropriate or damaged tensioning straps, injuries

- could result in the event of sudden braking or a collision.
- Transporting heavy objects may affect the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity – this could cause an accident. Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.
- The stretch net\* is only strong enough to secure light items. Heavier objects cannot be safely secured - risk of injury!
- Never exceed the maximum axle loads or the maximum gross weight for the vehicle
   ⇒ page 321.
- Never secure a child restraint system to the fastening rings.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the boot and close the boot lid from the inside. In this case the child would be unable to get out of the vehicle without help.
   This could have fatal consequences.
- Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you leave the vehicle.
- Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. All occupants must be properly restrained by the seat belts at all times
   ⇒ page 69.
- Be careful when releasing and folding down the backrest! Carelessness when folding it down could result in injuries.
- The rear backrest must always be securely latched so that objects stored in the luggage compartment will not fly forward during sudden braking.
- Make sure that the rear backrest is securely locked in position so that the seat belt can provide proper protection on the centre rear seat.
- Always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards.

## (1)

## **CAUTION**

 Lower the rear head restraints ⇒ page 68 before you fold down the backrest - risk of damage!

- When returning the backrest to an upright position, make sure that the seat belts for the outer rear seats are in their guides so that they cannot be caught up and damaged in the catches for the backrest. It is also important to remove any other objects from the rear seats to avoid damaging the backrest when folding it forwards.
- If you need to adjust the front seats when either of the rear backrests is folded forwards, please take care to avoid damaging the rear head restraints.
- Please ensure that hard objects do not chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.



- The tyre pressures must be adjusted according to the load the vehicle is carrying
   ⇒ page 281.
- Securing straps are available from specialist retailers.

## Luggage compartment cover

Applies to: vehicles with luggage compartment cover



**Fig. 68** Luggage compartment: Removing and installing luggage compartment cover

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 84.

- ➤ To remove the luggage compartment cover, unhook the cords (1).
- ► Pull out the cover ③ in the direction indicated by the arrows.
- ➤ To install the luggage compartment cover, insert the retainers ② in the guides on the side trim and and push the cover ③ forwards as far as it will go.
- ► Attach the cords (1) to the boot lid.



## Note

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, it may be possible to store the luggage compartment cover under the luggage compartment floor.

## Extending the luggage compartment

Applies to: vehicles with folding backrest



**Fig. 69** Outer backrest: Release lever and backrest lock indicator with red marking

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the backrests can be folded down individually or together.

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 84.

## Folding outer backrest up/down

- ► To fold down the backrest, pull the release lever 1 in the direction indicated (arrow).
- When you no longer need the extra luggage space, move the backrest back into its upright position until it engages and the red marking
   is no longer visible.

## Folding centre backrest\* up/down

Please note the information on ⇒ page 86, Load-through hatch.

## Load-through hatch

Applies to: vehicles with load-through hatch

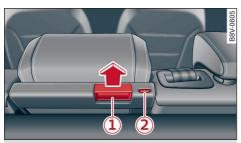


Fig. 70 Centre backrest: Release lever and backrest lock indicator with red marking

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 84.

- ➤ To open the load-through hatch, pull the release lever ① in the direction of the arrow and fold down the backrest.
- ► To close the load-through hatch, move the backrest back into its upright position until it engages and the red marking on the tab ② is no longer visible.

## Fastening rings and stretch net



Fig. 71 Luggage compartment: Location of fastening rings

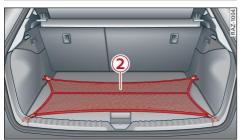


Fig. 72 Luggage compartment: Stretch net\* attached

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 84.

## Fastening rings

There are fastening rings ① in the luggage compartment which can be used to secure luggage and other objects.

► Use the fastening rings to secure items in the luggage compartment.

#### Stretch net

Applies to: vehicles with stretch net

Use the stretch net ② to secure light items in the luggage compartment.

- ► Fold up the clips on the front fastening rings.
- ► Insert the hooks of the stretch net into the fastening rings.

## Floor panel



Fig. 73 Luggage compartment: Lowering floor panel\*

## Removing and installing the floor panel

- ► To remove the floor panel, lift it by the plastic handle ③.
- ► Pull the floor panel towards the rear of the vehicle and out of the luggage compartment.
- ► To insert the floor panel, slide it all the way in towards the backrest 1.

#### Lowering the floor panel

Applies to: vehicles with lowerable floor panel

You can lower the floor panel to increase the loading height in the luggage compartment.

- ► To lower the floor panel, lift it by the plastic handle (3).
- ► Then pull the floor panel back slightly and reinsert it lower down at position ②.

When you no longer need the extra height, you should return the floor panel to position (1); this

will make it easier to load and unload normal items of luggage.

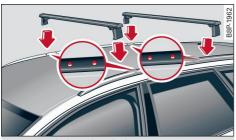
## Roof carrier

## **General information**

Applies to: vehicles with roof carrier mountings



Applies to: vehicles without roof railings Fig. 74 Roof: Attachment points



Applies to: vehicles with roof railings

Fig. 75 Roof railings: Attachment points

Note the following points if you intend to carry loads on the roof:

- The cross bars form the basic elements of a complete roof carrier system. Only use roof carriers suitable for use with your vehicle. Audi recommends using roof carriers and additional elements from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories.
- Ensure that roof carriers are only fitted at the points provided on the vehicle ⇒ Fig. 74 / ⇒ Fig. 75.
- You should ensure that you do not exceed the maximum permitted axle loads, gross weight and roof load for your vehicle ⇒ page 321. The roof load limit applies to the combined weight of the roof carrier, the additional elements and the load itself. Please do not exceed the maxi-

mum carrying load of the carrier system you are using.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- Note the fitting instructions provided by the manufacturer of the roof carrier system. If you do not secure the roof carrier system and roof load correctly, they can become separated from the vehicle and cause an accident.
- The use of a roof carrier system affects the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity and increasing susceptibility to cross winds – risk of accident! Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.



## !) CAUTION

Please take care that the boot lid and panorama sun roof\* do not come into contact with the roof load when opened.



## For the sake of the environment

The increased air resistance means that the vehicle uses more energy. For this reason you should always take off the roof carrier when it is not in use.

## Heating and cooling

## Air conditioner

## Description

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, one of the following options is available:

- Manual air conditioner
- A 2-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner which can be used to adjust the temperature, air distribution and blower speed at the front left and right individually
- A 3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner which can be used to adjust temperature, air distribution and blower speed at the front left, front right and rear individually.

The air conditioner heats, cools, dehumidifies and filters the air inside the vehicle. It operates most effectively with the windows and the panorama sun roof\* closed. If the vehicle has been standing in the sun, it may cool down faster if you open the windows briefly to let the hot air escape.

The deluxe automatic air conditioner will maintain the desired temperature at a constant level. When the heater is on, the blower normally only switches to a higher speed once the coolant has warmed up sufficiently (this does not apply to the defrost setting).

#### Pollution filter

The pollution filter removes impurities, such as dust and pollen, from the air.



## WARNING

 For reasons of safety you should not leave the air recirculation switched on for too long. This mode prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle, so the windows can mist

- over if the air cooling is switched off. Bad visibility can cause an accident.
- People with limited capacity to feel pain or sense temperature could burn themselves when using the seat heating\*. These people must not use the seat heating\* - risk of injury!



## CAUTION

To avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heating\*, please do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point.



## For the sake of the environment

Switching off A/C cooling mode saves energy.



## Note

- Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen clear of snow, ice and leaves to ensure unimpaired heating and cooling, and to prevent the windows misting over.
- Condensation can drip off the air cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak
- If you notice, for instance, that the seat\* or rear window heating is not working, it may have been temporarily switched off by the energy management system. These systems will be available again as soon as sufficient electrical power is available.
- Depending on the country, the air conditioner may contain fluorinated greenhouse gases. Further information is provided on a sticker in the engine compartment.
- If the front passenger's seat heating\* was on when you last switched off the ignition, it will be switched on automatically only if the ignition is switched on again within ten minutes.

## Manual air conditioner

#### How to use

Applies to: vehicles with manual air conditioner



Fig. 76 Manual air conditioner: Controls

The functions can be switched on and off by pressing the buttons. The LED in the corresponding button lights up when the function is switched on.

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow \triangle$  in Description on page 88.

## A/C Cooling mode

The air cooling system only works when the blower is switched on. The air cooling mode is switched on/off when the A/C button is pressed. When the air cooling is switched off, the air is neither cooled nor dehumidified. The windows may mist up as a result. The air cooling is switched off automatically at low outside temperatures.

## OFF Air conditioner

The air conditioner can be switched on and off by pressing the OFF button. The air conditioner will also switch on if you press one of the other buttons. When the air conditioner is switched off, the supply of air from outside the car is cut off.

## / Temperature

The temperature is adjusted by pressing the \( \frac{1}{2} \) buttons \( \frac{1}{2} \).

## **₩ Blower**

You can adjust the blower speed manually by pressing the \$\mathscr{C}\$ buttons 2. You should leave the blower on at a low setting to prevent the windows from misting up and to ensure that the vehicle interior is constantly ventilated. To demist the windows, we recommend that you increase the blower speed and select the \$\mathscr{C}\$ setting or \$\mathscr{M}\$ MAX.

#### Air distribution

The  $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{D}}$  button can be used to adjust the air distribution.

To prevent the front side windows from misting up, open the side air outlets and point them to the side.

## **MAX Defrosting**

The windscreen and side windows are defrosted or demisted as quickly as possible. Point the outer air outlets towards the side windows and set the temperature to maximum to speed up the process. The air output is increased to maximum and most of the air comes out of the outlets below the windscreen. The air recirculation mode is deactivated. A/C cooling mode is automatically switched on depending on the ambient temperature.

#### Air recirculation mode

In air recirculation mode, the air from the interior of the vehicle is filtered and recirculated. This setting prevents fumes etc. from entering the interior  $\Rightarrow \land$  in Description on page 88.

To switch the air recirculation mode on/off, press the 🗢 button.

You can also switch the air recirculation mode off by pressing the W MAX button.

## REAR Rear window heating

If the rear window heating is activated with the ignition switched on, the battery management determines whether or not the vehicle battery charge level is sufficient for the rear window heating to be switched on. Otherwise the rear window heating operates when the engine is running, and switches off automatically after 10 - 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To switch the rear window heating on/off, press the REAR button. To switch on the rear window heating permanently, press and hold the 🕮 REAR button for at least two seconds.

#### Air outlets

Foot-level air outlets underneath the front seats. and adjustable air outlets at the end of the centre console are provided for air conditioning in the rear cabin.

The levers can be used to open and close the air outlets in the centre and on either side of the dashboard and rear centre console. The lever in the centre of the outlets can also be used to adiust the direction of air flow.

## 

The seat heating temperature can be adjusted in several levels. Press the w button once to activate the highest level. Press the # button repeatedly to lower the temperature by one level each time. When no LEDs are lit, the seat heating is switched off.

## 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner

#### How to use

Applies to: vehicles with 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner



Fig. 77 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: Controls

The functions can be switched on/off using the buttons and controlled using the rocker switches. The LED in the corresponding button lights up when the function is switched on.

tion on page 88.

## AUTO Automatic mode

The automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, output and distribution are regulated automatically. The automatic mode is switched off immediately when you operate any of the manual air controls.

The air recirculation mode is also switched on when AUTO is activated.

## OFF Air conditioner

The air conditioner can be switched on and off by pressing the OFF button. The air conditioner will also switch on if you press one of the other buttons. When the air conditioner is switched off, the supply of air from outside the car is cut off.

## A/C Cooling mode

You can select the following settings for cooling mode after pressing rocker switch (3):

- MAX: To activate maximum cooling power on the air conditioner
- ECO: To activate efficiency mode on the air conditioner
- ON: To switch on cooling mode
- OFF: To switch off cooling mode

The air cooling system only works when the blower is switched on. When the air cooling is switched off, the air is neither cooled nor dehumidified. The windows may mist up as a result. The air cooling is switched off automatically at low outside temperatures.

## **Temperature**

The temperature for the driver's and front passenger's sides can be set separately using the rocker switches ①. The temperature can be adjusted between 16 °C (+60 °F) and 28 °C (+84 °F). Outside this range, **LO** or **HI** will appear on the air conditioner display. In the two extreme settings the air conditioner operates continuously with maximum cooling or heating output, and the temperature is not regulated automatically.

## SYNC Synchronisation

When you press the SYNC button, the temperature of the passenger's side is set to the temperature of the driver's side. Synchronisation is deac-

tivated as soon as the setting is changed on the passenger's side.

## Blower

You can adjust the blower speed manually using rocker switch ②. You should leave the blower on at a low setting to prevent the windows from misting up and to ensure that the vehicle interior is constantly ventilated. Press the AUTO button for automatic control of the blower speed.

#### Air distribution

Rocker switch (4) can be used to adjust the air distribution. Press the rocker switch (4) repeatedly until the desired air distribution is shown on the display of the air conditioner control console.

Press the (AUTO) button for automatic air distribution.

To prevent the front side windows from misting up, open the side air outlets and point them to the side.

## **Defrosting**

The windscreen and side windows are defrosted or demisted as quickly as possible. Point the outer air outlets towards the side windows to speed up the process. The air output is increased to maximum and most of the air comes out of the outlets below the windscreen. The air recirculation mode is deactivated. The temperature should be set to 22 °C or higher. The temperature is regulated automatically. A/C cooling mode is automatically switched on depending on the ambient temperature.

The defroster is switched off when the  $\mathbb{R}$ ,  $\boxed{\text{AUTO}}$  or  $\Leftrightarrow$  button or rocker switches 2 or 4 are pressed.

## Air recirculation mode

In air recirculation mode, the air from the interior of the vehicle is filtered and recirculated. This setting prevents fumes etc. from entering the interior  $\Rightarrow \triangle$  in Description on page 88.

The air recirculation mode can be controlled manually or automatically.

## Heating and cooling

- To switch on the automatic air recirculation mode: Press the ⇒ button repeatedly until the LED above the letter ☐ lights up.

The mode in which air recirculation is operating can be changed by pressing the  $\Leftrightarrow$ ,  $\boxed{\text{AUTO}}$  or  $\boxed{\mathbb{R}}$  button.

## Rear window heating

If the rear window heating is activated with the ignition switched on, the battery management determines whether or not the vehicle battery charge level is sufficient for the rear window heating to be switched on. Otherwise the rear window heating operates when the engine is running, and switches off automatically after 10 - 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To switch the rear window heating on/off, press the button. To switch on the rear window heating permanently, press and hold the button for at least two seconds.

#### Air outlets

Foot-level air outlets underneath the front seats and adjustable air outlets at the end of the centre console are provided for air conditioning in the rear cabin.

The levers can be used to open and close the air outlets in the centre and on either side of the dashboard and rear centre console. The lever in the centre of the outlets can also be used to adjust the direction of air flow.

## 

The seat heating temperature can be adjusted in several levels. Press the # button once to activate the highest level. Press the # button repeatedly to lower the temperature by one level each time. When no LEDs are lit, the seat heating is switched off.

### Rear cabin controls

Applies to: vehicles with 3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner

Air outlets underneath the front seats and at the end of the centre console are provided for air conditioning in the rear cabin. The levers provided can be used to adjust the direction and intensity of the air flow. The temperature is adjusted via the thumbwheel.

## **Further settings**

Applies to: vehicles with 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner

Further settings can be adjusted.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **A/C**.

## Automatic air recirculation

Air recirculation is controlled automatically when this function is activated. If the windows mist up, press the  $\Re$  button.

## Automatic supplementary heater\*

The vehicle interior warms up more quickly with the supplementary heater.



## WARNING

When the fossil fuel powered supplementary heater\* is in operation, hot exhaust gases are emitted from the exhaust outlet under the car.



#### For the sake of the environment

Switching off the automatic supplementary heater\* saves energy.



#### Note

At low outside temperatures, water vapour may form in the engine compartment when the fossil fuel powered supplementary heater\* is in operation. This is no cause for concern.

## Auxiliary heating/ ventilation

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation

The auxiliary heating warms up the inside of the vehicle, while the auxiliary ventilation draws in fresh air and can lower the temperature inside the vehicle, depending on the ambient temperature. The function can be used either when the engine is off or when driving (for instance while the engine is warming up).

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the settings for the auxiliary heating/ventilation can be controlled via:

- MMI
- Remote control\*

## Conditions for operation

- There is enough fuel in the tank.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

## 

- The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run when the vehicle is in a confined space – risk of poisoning!
- Never have the auxiliary heating switched on when refuelling the vehicle – risk of fire!
- Because of the high temperatures which occur when the auxiliary heating is running, make sure when parking the car that the exhaust outlet under the car is not obstructed in any way and that the exhaust gases do not come into contact with flammable materials (fire risk).

## (i) Note

- It is advisable to open the air outlets on the dashboard when using the auxiliary heating/ventilation.
- The auxiliary heating/ventilation always heats or cools the vehicle to 22 °C, irrespective of the temperature most recently selected

- The auxiliary heating/ventilation will not switch on or will switch itself off earlier than intended if the battery charge or fuel level is low.
- If the auxiliary heating/ventilation is on, it is not switched off automatically when the engine is started or stopped.
- At low outside temperatures, some visible water vapour may form in the engine compartment. This is a normal phenomenon, and no reason for concern.
- When parking on a hill or gradient, the function of the auxiliary heating may be restricted if the fuel gauge is just above the reserve zone.
- Applies to vehicles with diesel engine compatible with paraffin-based diesel fuel: Using the auxiliary heating with paraffin-based fuel<sup>1)</sup> may produce smoke ⇒ page 253. To prevent this from happening, the auxiliary heating may require a software update.
   Please contact a qualified workshop.

## Switching on/off in the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 93.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > A/C > Auxiliary heating.

#### Immediate start

You can set the operating time and switch the auxiliary heating/ventilation on/off immediately by selecting .

If the symbol flashes on the air conditioner control console display, the auxiliary heating is being pre-heated. The vehicle interior is not yet being heated. When the symbol is lit continuously, the auxiliary heating is active. A coloured bar will light up above the button on the MMI.

If the ① symbol flashes permanently on the air conditioner control console display, the auxiliary ventilation is active. A coloured bar will light up above the button on the MMI.

SYDO12720AF

<sup>1)</sup> This fuel is available in certain countries only.

## Timer programming

You can program up to two timers for the departure time; only one timer can be activated at any one time.

The departure time specifies when the vehicle interior is to reach the desired temperature. The departure time must be within the next six days. The auxiliary heating will continue to run for approx. ten minutes after being switched off.

- ► Select a timer via >.
- ▶ Set the date and select **Next**.
- ► Set the time (departure time) and select **OK**.
- ▶ Use to activate the timer.

The sand ① symbols light up in the air conditioner control console when the timer is on and the auxiliary heating/ventilation is not active. When the timer activates the auxiliary heating, the ① symbol goes out and the symbol starts to flash. When the timer activates the auxiliary ventilation, the symbol goes out and the ① symbol starts to flash permanently.

#### Heat level

- ➤ To have the system defrost the vehicle's windscreen and front side windows, select **Defrost**.
- ► If you want the system to defrost the vehicle's windscreen and front side windows and also warm up the vehicle, select **Warm up**.

# Switching on/off using the air conditioner control console

Applies to vehicles with 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: The auxiliary heating/ventilation can be switched on via the MMI or using the remote control\*. However, when the auxiliary heating/ventilation is running, you can press the OFF button ⇒ page 90, Fig. 77 on the air conditioner control console to switch the auxiliary heating/ventilation off.

## (i) Note

- To ensure that the timer operates correctly, check that the correct time and date are entered in the system settings ⇒ page 247.
- The auxiliary heating/ventilation can be switched on/off immediately even if a timer

has been programmed. This has no effect on the programmed timer setting as long as the auxiliary heating/ventilation is not switched off manually during the programmed period.

## Switching on/off using the remote control

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation and remote control



Fig. 78 Remote control: Auxiliary heating/ventilation

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 93.

The range of the remote control is approx. 400 metres; however this can be greatly reduced by obstacles.

You can achieve the best range by holding the remote control with the aerial ① pointing vertically upwards. Do not cover the aerial.

# Switching the auxiliary heating/ventilation on/off

► To switch on, press and hold the \( \mathbb{\bar{\bar{u}}} \) button (2).

The auxiliary heating/ventilation is switched on when the LED ③ lights up in green for approx. two seconds.

► To switch off, press and hold the OFF button

4.

The auxiliary heating/ventilation is switched off when the LED lights up in red for approx. two seconds.

#### LED in remote control

The LED (3) provides status information each time you press a button:

- If the LED flashes steadily in red or green for approx. four seconds, the signal was not received. Move closer to the vehicle.
- If the LED lights up in orange for approx. two seconds, and then lights up or flashes in red or green, the remote control battery charge is low.
- If the LED flashes irregularly in green for approx. five seconds, the auxiliary heating is disabled. The fuel level or vehicle battery charge is too low or a system fault has occurred in the auxiliary heating/ventilation.
- If the remote control LED flashes rapidly in orange for approx. six seconds after you press a button, the remote control battery needs to be replaced. The same applies if the LED does not light up at all.

## Changing the remote control battery

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation and remote control



Fig. 79 Remote control: Changing battery

- ► Insert a screwdriver or similar in the slot on the side ①
- ▶ Prise the battery cover off upwards.
- ► Slide the battery cover slightly in the direction of the arrow and detach it.
- ▶ Remove the empty battery.
- ► Insert a new battery of the same type ②.
- Put the battery cover back on and slide it in the opposite direction of the arrow until it clicks into place.

## **WARNING**

If batteries or button cells are swallowed or enter the body in any other way, they can cause severe or lethal injuries within an extremely short period of time – risk of chemical burns!

- Keep the remote control out of the reach of children
- Keep new and used batteries away from children.
- If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the remote control and keep it away from children.
- Seek a doctor's assistance immediately if you suspect that a battery has been swallowed or has entered the body in any other way.

## For the sake of the environment

- Used batteries must be disposed of appropriately and must not be discarded with ordinary household waste.
- The remote control contains recyclable materials and must not be disposed of together with ordinary household waste.
   Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.

### **Driver messages**

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation

# **M** Auxiliary heating/ventilation: fault. Not available

If this message appears, a system malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

## Auxiliary air conditioning

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary air conditioning

The auxiliary air conditioner heats or cools the vehicle interior. The vehicle switches the auxiliary air conditioning on, depending on the temperature last selected on the air conditioner console. The function can be used when the drive system is switched off.

You can use the MMI to switch the auxiliary air conditioner on/off immediately or set a timer.

## **Conditions for operation**

- There is enough fuel in the tank.
- The high-voltage battery must be sufficiently charged.



## Note

- If the auxiliary air conditioning is active, the charging status of the high-voltage battery may decrease even when it is being charged.
- If the auxiliary air conditioner is on, it is not switched off automatically when the vehicle is started or stopped.
- The auxiliary air conditioner will not switch on or will switch itself off earlier than intended if the high-voltage battery charge is too low, irrespective of whether the vehicle is being charged at this time.

## Operation

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary air conditioning

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > A/C > Auxiliary air conditioner.

### Immediate start

You can switch the auxiliary air conditioner on/off immediately via the F button. When a function is switched on, a coloured bar will light up above the button.

After an immediate start, the auxiliary air conditioner will continue to run for a maximum of 15 minutes. When the vehicle is being charged using a sufficiently high charging capacity, the auxiliary air conditioning can run for up to 30 minutes.

#### Timer programming

You can set and activate a timer for the departure time

- ▶ Set the date and select Next.
- ► Set the time (departure time) and select **OK**.

The departure time specifies when the vehicle interior is to reach the desired temperature. The departure time must be within the next six days.

The auxiliary air conditioner can run for a maximum of ten minutes until the departure time is

reached; it will then continue to run for approx. five minutes.

When the vehicle is being charged using a sufficiently high charging capacity, the auxiliary air conditioning can run for a maximum of 30 minutes until the departure time is reached; it will then continue to run for approx. 15 minutes.

## After the ignition is switched off

After the ignition is switched off, information on active timers is shown on the display. You can press the # button to start the programmed air conditioner immediately or press > to open the auxiliary air conditioner menu.



## Note

- To ensure that the timer operates correctly, check that the correct time and date are entered in the system settings ⇒ page 247.
- The auxiliary air conditioning can be switched on/off immediately even if a timer has been set.
- You can control the air conditioning in the vehicle interior when charging the high-voltage battery via the charging timers
   ⇒ page 121. The performance of the air conditioner depends on the power rating of the mains connection.

### **Driver messages**

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary air conditioning

The auxiliary air conditioning is currently unavailable due to a fault.

If this message appears, a system malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

## **Driving**

## Starting the vehicle

## Convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key



Fig. 80 Centre console: Starting the engine

Important: The key must be in the vehicle. When using the Audi connect key\*, the mobile device or activated Audi connect key card must be in the charging box  $\Rightarrow$  page 196.

## Starting the engine

- ► Automatic gearbox: Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ► Manual gearbox: Press and hold the clutch and brake pedals.
- ► Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine should start.

Plug-in hybrid drive: The electric drive system should start. The combustion engine only starts when required. A glance at the power meter reveals whether or not the electric drive system is switched on  $\Rightarrow$  page 17.

Electrical components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily while you start the engine. If the engine fails to start immediately, the starter will be switched off automatically after a few seconds. In this case, you should try to start the engine again after about 30 seconds.

Diesel engine: The engine may take a few seconds longer than usual to start on cold days. Please keep your foot on the brake pedal (automatic gearbox) or clutch pedal (manual gearbox) until the engine starts.

Natural gas engine: The engine starts in natural gas mode; it only switches to petrol mode when this is necessary. will light up in the instrument cluster when the engine is running in natural gas mode.

## Switching off the engine

- ► Stop the vehicle.
- ► Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will switch off.

Plug-in hybrid drive: The electric drive system and the combustion engine will switch off.

Applies to vehicles with steering lock: The steering will be locked if you switch off the engine and open the driver's door. The steering lock acts as a theft deterrent. On vehicles with automatic gearbox, transmission position P must be selected.

## Switching off the engine in an emergency

If necessary, the engine can be switched off in an emergency\* while the vehicle is still moving.

► Press the START ENGINE STOP button twice in quick succession or press and hold it.

## Switching the ignition on/off

If you only wish to switch the ignition on or off and do not want to start the engine as well, proceed as follows:

- ► Automatic gearbox: Press the START ENGINE STOP button without pressing the brake pedal.
- ► Manual gearbox: Press the START ENGINE STOP button without pressing the clutch pedal.

## Automatic ignition off

To prevent the vehicle battery from being discharged, the ignition and, in some cases, the exterior lighting may be switched off automatically.

## Requirements:

- Conventional power unit: The start/stop system has switched off the engine.
- Depending on engine version: You must have driven the vehicle.
- Plug-in hybrid drive: You have driven the vehicle. The combustion engine is not running.

#### Driving

- You must have left the vehicle more than 30 seconds ago.
- The ignition must be switched on.

The methods used by the vehicle for detecting whether you have left include the following:

- Driver's door has been opened.
- Driver's seat belt has been unbuckled.
- Brake pedal is not pressed.

The ignition will also be switched off when you lock the vehicle from the outside.



## WARNING

- Never run the engine in confined spaces. The exhaust gases are toxic - risk of poisoning!
- Never switch off the engine until the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would. This would mean a greater risk of accidents and serious injury, because you cannot steer and brake in the normal man-
- Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away  $\Rightarrow$  page 99.

## CAUTION

- Avoid high engine speeds, full throttle and extreme load conditions until the engine has reached its normal operating temperature; otherwise this can damage the engine.
- If the engine has been working hard for a long time, there is a risk of heat building up in the engine compartment after the engine has been switched off: this could cause engine damage. For this reason, you should leave the engine idling for about 2 minutes before switching it off.



## (i) Note

- Any brief noises which may be heard when the vehicle is started and stopped are quite normal and no cause for concern.
- After the engine is stopped, the radiator fan may remain on or turn itself back on for up

- to 10 minutes, even if the ignition is switched off.
- It may not be possible to start the vehicle at extremely low outside temperatures.
- The full performance is not available until the engine is warm.

## **Driver messages**

## Engine start system: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the engine start system. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

## Remote control key: key not recognised. Is key still in vehicle?

The vehicle key was removed from the vehicle with the engine running. If the vehicle key is not in the vehicle you will not be able to switch on the ignition or restart the engine after it has been switched off. You will also not be able to lock the vehicle from the outside.

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect key: The vehicle key and smartphone were removed from the vehicle while the engine was running. If the vehicle key and smartphone are not in the vehicle you will not be able to switch on the ignition or restart the engine after it has been switched off. You will also not be able to lock the vehicle from the outside.

## Remote control key: hold back of key against marked area. See owner's manual

The vehicle key battery is empty or there is radio interference. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the <sup>(9)</sup> symbol ⇒ page 97, Fig. 80.

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect key: The vehicle key battery is empty or there is radio interference. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the  $\mathfrak{P}$  symbol  $\Rightarrow$  page 97, Fig. 80 or place the Audi connect key in the charging box.

If the malfunction remains permanently, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

## Driving

## Driving away, stopping, parking

## Driving away from a standstill

Applies to: vehicles with manual gearbox

- ▶ Press and hold the clutch and brake pedals.
- ► Start the engine.
- ► Select a gear.
- ▶ Release the parking brake.
- ► Take your foot off the brake pedal.
- ► Release the clutch pedal slowly and press the accelerator to pick up speed.

## Driving away from a standstill

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

- ▶ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▶ Start the engine.
- ▶ Select a transmission position.
- ▶ Release the parking brake.
- ► Take your foot off the brake pedal. The vehicle may start to creep forwards.
- ▶ Press the accelerator to increase the speed.

# Securing the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away

Before leaving the vehicle, always secure it so that it cannot roll away.

- ► Apply the parking brake.
- Automatic gearbox: Select transmission position P.
- ► Manual gearbox: Engage first gear.
- When parking on a slope, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle would roll into the kerb if it did start to move unexpectedly.

If this is not possible (e.g. if the vehicle has no electrical power), you must take additional steps to secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away.

- ▶ Only park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▶ Block the wheels by placing suitable objects underneath both the front and rear of each wheel.

Automatic gearbox: Always apply the parking brake before selecting transmission position P. This reduces the load on the locking mechanism when the vehicle is on a slope.

## WARNING

- Always apply the parking brake before leaving your vehicle even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. Otherwise the vehicle can roll away risk of accident!
- Never leave your vehicle unattended while the engine is running - risk of accident!
- If the parking brake is engaged, it may be released automatically if the accelerator pedal is pressed. Take care when pressing the accelerator pedal and always select position P when you park the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.
   This is particularly important if persons or animals are left in the vehicle. They might otherwise unintentionally start the vehicle, release the parking brake or use power-operated equipment - this could cause accidents.
- Do not leave any persons or animals in the vehicle when it is locked. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- If you do not drive away immediately after releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle may start to roll backwards. You should therefore immediately press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake.

## CAUTION

To avoid rolling back on gradients always hold the vehicle with the brake pedal if you have to stop. Do not attempt to hold the vehicle by slipping the clutch or keeping your foot on the accelerator. This could cause the clutch and gearbox to overheat – risk of damage!

## Hill hold assist

When you take your foot off the brake pedal when driving away on a slope, the braking force will be maintained for several seconds. During this period, the vehicle will not roll backwards when you set off.

Important: The driver's door must be closed, the engine must be running and the vehicle must be on a slope and facing uphill.

► To activate the hill hold assist, press and hold the brake pedal for several seconds while the vehicle is stationary.

Use the hold assist ⇒ page 113 if you want to hold the vehicle with the brakes for more than a few seconds

## WARNING

- If you do not drive away immediately after releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle may start to roll backwards. You should therefore immediately press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake.
- The hill hold assist function cannot keep the vehicle stationary in all conditions on a gradient (e.g. if the road is slippery or icy).

## **Driver messages**



## Hill hold assist: unavailable

The hill hold assist is temporarily unavailable. Press the brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

## Changing gear

Applies to: vehicles with manual gearbox

On vehicles which have a manual gearbox, gears are changed by hand using the gear lever. The positions of the gears are marked on the gear lever. Please note that reverse gear can only be selected when the gear lever is pressed down.



#### **CAUTION**

- Always press the clutch pedal all the way
- Take your foot off the clutch pedal after you have changed gear. Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal.
- Always be prepared to change up or down as the road speed and engine speed vary.
- Wait until the vehicle has stopped completely before selecting reverse gear.

## Transmission positions and driving programs

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox



Fig. 81 Centre console: Selector lever

The automatic gearbox changes gear according to the transmission position selected and the way the vehicle is currently being driven. When you drive at moderate speeds, the gearbox will change up early and delay the downshifts to give better fuel economy. The gearbox allows higher engine speeds for performance driving.

The transmission positions are displayed on the selector gate next to the P button (1).

- P (Park): Parking lock

- R (Reverse): Drive backwards

- N (Neutral)

D (Drive): Drive forwards

## Selecting a transmission position

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- Stop the vehicle and press the brake pedal.
- To select the next adjacent transmission position, move the selector lever forwards or backwards to the first point of resistance.
- To skip a transmission position (e.g. to go from D to R), move the selector lever past the point of resistance in the desired direction.
- The selected transmission position will light up next to the selector lever.

## Transmission position N (neutral)

No power is transmitted to the driven wheels in transmission position N. Use transmission position N, for example, in a tunnel car wash.

If you accidentally select transmission position N while the vehicle is moving (at more than

2 km/h), you can switch back to D without pressing the brake.

For safety reasons, the vehicle cannot be locked when N is selected.

## Transmission position P (parking lock)

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

In transmission position P, the vehicle is prevented from rolling away by the parking lock.

- Stop the vehicle and press the brake pedal.
- Press the P button 1.
- The button lights up when transmission position P is selected.

If you switch off the engine when transmission position D or R is selected, P will be engaged automatically. If you switch off the engine in N, P will be selected automatically after approx. 30 minutes.

Conventional power unit: The engine must be running in order to change from P to D or R.

Plug-in hybrid drive: The electric drive system must be switched on or the engine must be running in order to change from P to D or R.

If you cannot move out of P (e.g. if the vehicle has no electrical power), you should seek professional assistance.

## Selecting a driving program

Various driving programs can be selected in transmission position D. These have an effect on when the gearbox changes gear and the reaction to accelerator pedal inputs.

The selected driving program will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

- D (Drive): Normal driving

- E (Efficiency\*): Economical driving

- S (Sport): Performance driving

If you select **dynamic** or **efficiency** mode in Audi drive select\*, the driving program S or E respectively will be activated. The driving program may be switched back to D when the ignition is switched off

Press the selector lever downwards to switch between the current driving program and S.

Plug-in hybrid drive: Not all plug-in hybrid modes are possible in driving program S. When they are operated, the driving program or the plug-in hybrid mode are automatically adjusted if they cannot be combined.

## $\Lambda$

## WARNING

- Before driving off, check that the desired transmission position is displayed next to the selector lever.
- Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇒ page 99.
- In all transmission positions except P and N the vehicle must always be held with the footbrake when the engine is running. This is because an automatic gearbox still transmits power even at idling speed, and the vehicle tends to "creep".
- Do not press the accelerator before selecting a transmission position with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, as this could cause an accident.
- Never select transmission position R or P when driving at normal speeds, as this could cause an accident.
- The car can roll away even if the ignition is switched off.



## Note

You do not have to press the brake pedal if you switch back and forth between D and R within one second. This allows you to rock the car backwards and forwards, e.g. to free it from snow or mud, etc.

## Manual gear selection

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox



Fig. 82 Steering wheel: Paddle levers\*

You can change gear manually in transmission position D. The gearbox must be in tiptronic mode. You can switch to manual gear selection mode either with the vehicle stationary or on the move.

## Gear selection with paddle levers

Applies to: vehicles with paddle levers

You can change gears manually while driving program D or E is active. The gearbox will revert to automatic mode if you do not operate one of the paddle levers again within a short period.

If you operate one of the paddle levers while driving program S is active, the gearbox will switch permanently to manual mode. To leave this mode again you have to select a different driving program.

- ► To change up: Press the paddle lever (+) ⇒ Fig. 82.
- ► To change down: Press the paddle lever (-).
- ► To switch back to automatic mode, press and hold the paddle lever (+).



#### Note

- The gearbox only allows manual gear changes if the engine speed would remain within the permissible range.
- The gearbox automatically shifts up or down into the next gear before a critical engine speed is reached.

#### Accelerator

You can use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle's speed.

#### Maximum acceleration

A kick-down function is available for maximum engine output and acceleration if you press the accelerator all the way down.

Applies to vehicles with boost function: In driving programs D and S, the electric motor may cut in briefly when the accelerator pedal is pressed heavily. The availability of this function depends, among other things, on the charge level of the high-voltage battery and the temperature of the drive components.



#### WARNING

The driven wheels may start to spin when you use the kick-down function, causing the vehicle to lose grip, on slippery or wet roads - risk of accident!

## Launch control

Applies to: vehicles with launch control

The launch control gives you optimum acceleration when starting from a standstill.

## **Important**

- The engine must be warm.
- The steering wheel must be pointing straight ahead.
- The start/stop system\* must be deactivated ⇒ page 109.
- The hold assist\* must be deactivated ⇒ page 113.
- The ESC must be in sport mode  $\Rightarrow$  page 118.
- Driving program S must be selected ⇒ page 101 or Audi drive select\* must be set to **dynamic** mode  $\Rightarrow$  page 116.

#### Using the launch control

- Press the brake pedal with your left foot and hold it down for at least one second.
- Keeping the brake pedal pressed, simultaneously press the accelerator all the way down with your right foot.

When you are finished with the launch control, please remember to fully activate the ESC again.

## WARNING

Only use the launch control when road and traffic conditions permit, and make sure your driving style and acceleration do not inconvenience or endanger other road users. The driven wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads - risk of accident!

## CAUTION

Accelerating with the launch control places a heavy load on all parts of the vehicle. This can result in increased wear and tear.



Some vehicle components may be hot after accelerating with the launch control. In this case, the function may not be available for several minutes. This is to avoid damage. The launch control will be available again after a cool-down period.

## **Driver messages**

## Gearbox: fault. Safely stop vehicle

Do not drive on. Stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible and secure it so that it cannot roll away ⇒ page 99. Obtain professional assistance.

## Gearbox overheating: please stop vehicle

Do not drive on. Select transmission position P and obtain professional assistance.

## Gearbox overheating: please adapt driving style

The gearbox temperature has risen significantly. Drive more passively or take a break until the temperature is back to normal and the indicator lamp has gone out.

Gearbox malfunction: you can continue driving. See owner's manual

A gearbox malfunction has occurred. You can continue driving. However, you should drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

# Gearbox malfunction: you can continue driving (functions limited). Please contact work-

A gearbox malfunction has occurred. The gearbox will switch to the back-up programme. The programme will only move into certain gears or may not be able to shift gears at all. The engine may stall. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

## Gearbox malfunction: no reverse gear. You can continue driving

A gearbox malfunction has occurred. The gearbox will switch to the back-up programme. The programme will only move into certain gears or may not be able to shift gears at all. The engine may stall. You can no longer engage reverse gear. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

## Gearbox malfunction: you can continue driving in D until engine off

A selector lever system malfunction has occurred. It is no longer possible to change out of the selected transmission position. Do not switch off the engine. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

## Vehicle may roll! Cannot shift to P. Please apply parking brake

It is no longer possible to engage the parking lock. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇒ page 99.

## Clutch: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a permanent malfunction in the clutch. The transmissible torque is reduced. You can continue driving, but avoid placing an excessive load on the clutch and do not slip the clutch for longer than necessary. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

# Occurrence Clutch: overheating. Please adapt driving style

There is a malfunction in the clutch. The transmissible torque is reduced. You can continue driving, but avoid placing an excessive load on the clutch and do not slip the clutch for longer than necessary. The indicator lamp will go out when the transmission capability of the clutch has been restored completely.

## Selector lever: fault. Transmission mode can only be changed using both paddle levers.

A selector lever malfunction has occurred. You can continue driving but the selector lever is out of operation. The transmission positions can only be selected by simultaneously pulling both paddle levers briefly while the vehicle is stationary. Transmission position P will be selected automatically when you switch off the engine. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified

# Selector lever: fault. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop

A selector lever malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

# P button: fault. Auto P when engine switched off. Please contact workshop

A malfunction has occurred on the P button on the selector lever. Transmission position P will be selected automatically when you switch off the engine. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

# O Clutch: check pedal. You can continue driving

The clutch is not transmitting the full engine torque. If your foot is on the clutch pedal, please remove it.

## **Engine**

## Running in

A new vehicle should be run in over the first 1,500 km so that all moving parts can settle in together gently and the service life of the engine and other powertrain components can be increased.

For the first 1,000 km, do not exceed two thirds of the engine's maximum rpm speed and do not accelerate at full throttle. You can increase the engine speed gradually over the next 500 km.

## Conventional and mild hybrid drive

Applies to: vehicles with conventional drive systems or mild hybrid drive

Vehicles with conventional drive systems are powered by a combustion engine which burns fuel to generate energy.

Vehicles with mild hybrid drive are equipped with additional battery technology.

## Coasting

Applies to: vehicles with coasting function

Coasting can be used to save fuel. When the vehicle is coasting, the combustion engine is disengaged and the vehicle rolls without the engine braking effect. Coasting mode may be activated automatically up to 130 km/h on vehicles with conventional drive systems and up to 160 km/h on vehicles with mild hybrid drive in driving programs D¹) or E when you take your foot off the accelerator. Data from the efficiency assist\* are used to anticipate the road ahead and regulate accordingly.

The combustion engine may be switched off automatically on vehicles with mild hybrid drive when coasting is activated.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

When coasting is activated, there is no longer an engine braking effect and the vehicle does not slow down as quickly as usual or may even

<sup>1)</sup> Depending on country



## i) Note

You can cancel coasting by applying the accelerator or brakes. Slight corrective brake applications are also possible without cancelling coasting.

## Natural gas engine

Applies to: vehicles with natural gas engine

Vehicles with a natural gas engine can run on CNG (Compressed Natural Gas) and petrol. The fuel mode is changed over automatically.



## Note

Please observe the important safety warnings about the natural gas engine  $\Rightarrow$  page 254.

### Plug-in hybrid drive

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

On plug-in hybrid vehicles, you can choose between electric and combustion engine drive modes or a combination of both ⇒ page 105, ⇒ page 102

#### Coasting

Just like conventional drive vehicles, the combustion engine can be disengaged on plug-in hybrid vehicles to save fuel. In this mode, which is similar to coasting, the vehicle rolls without the engine braking effect. However, the electric part of the drive system remains engaged and is able to recuperate energy if the conditions permit. Coasting mode may activate automatically in driving programs D or E when you take your foot off the accelerator.

## Recuperation

Applies to: vehicles with mild hybrid drive or plug-in hybrid drive

A recuperation feature allows the vehicle to recover energy. A large amount of the kinetic energy is thereby converted into electrical energy and stored in the battery of the hybrid drive system. The recuperation process causes the vehicle to

decelerate in addition to the engine braking effect. This happens automatically in transmission position D when you press the brake pedal or take your foot off the accelerator.

Because the recuperation feature is used to slow the vehicle down when you press the brake pedal, the brakes are only used in addition as necessary. This means that, by adopting a moderate driving style, it is possible to brake the vehicle almost down to a standstill using the recuperation function; this will lose hardly any energy and maximise the electric range.

## Recuperation settings

With some equipment versions you can select whether the vehicle is braked through recuperation when it is coasting.

 Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR (> Charging & efficiency) > Efficiency assist > Recuperation.

**Automatic:** The recuperation braking effect is regulated automatically, e.g. based on the layout of the road ahead. If the vehicle has a front radar sensor, the recuperation can also respond to vehicles in front.

**Off**: The vehicle is not braked through recuperation when it is coasting.



#### WARNING

In certain situations, the recuperation function can brake the vehicle in anticipation of the route or traffic ahead; however the recuperation braking effect is limited. Always be ready to apply the brakes – risk of accident!



## Note

When the ESC is restricted or switched off, the automatic recuperation is unavailable and there will be no braking effect.

## Plug-in hybrid mode

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

### Switching to and from plug-in hybrid mode

The  $\subset$ <sup>EV</sup> button is located in the centre console above the selector lever.

▶ Press ﷺ to switch between electric driving and hybrid driving.

## Hybrid driving

If the ∠EV button is not lit, the hybrid system is being utilised. The vehicle can be powered by the combustion engine or the electric motor if the conditions for this have been met  $\Rightarrow$  page 106. Conditions for electric driving.

Depending on the engine, you can choose between different hybrid modes:

- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Charging & efficiency > e-tron mode.
- Auto Hybrid The electric motor and combustion engine work together efficiently. This mode is particularly suitable for long journeys.
- **Battery Hold** The vehicle is powered predominantly by the combustion engine in order to preserve the charge level of the high-voltage battery as much as possible.
- **Battery Charge** The vehicle is powered by the combustion engine in order to charge the high-voltage battery. This results in a higher fuel consumption.

#### Electric driving

The Æ button lights up in green when the vehicle is in EV mode. The vehicle can be powered by the electric motor if the conditions for this have been met ⇒ page 106, Conditions for electric driving.

#### Conditions for electric driving

- The charge level and temperature of the highvoltage battery must be sufficient.
- Driving program S must not be selected.
- The road speed must be below 140 km/h.
- The accelerator pedal must not be pressed too heavilv.

## Indicator lamps

Symbol	Meaning
Æ¥	EV mode is switched on and active. You are driving purely on electric power.
ÆEV	EV mode is switched on but is tem- porarily in stand-by mode. Electric driving will be resumed immediately as soon as the conditions have been met.
≿ĘV	EV mode is not available because the conditions for electric driving have not been met.
ď	The combustion engine is running.
-	Hybrid mode <b>Battery Hold</b> is active.
	Hybrid mode <b>Auto Hybrid</b> is active.
-	Hybrid mode <b>Battery Charge</b> is active.



## (i) Note

It is still possible for the charge level of the high-voltage battery to drop in Battery Charge and Battery Hold mode, depending on how the vehicle is driven.

#### Energy flow display

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive



Fig. 83 MMI: Energy flow display

You can display the current energy distribution in the vehicle.

- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Vehicle information.
- ► If necessary, scroll to the Energy flow display.
- Combustion engine
  - Orange: Engine on
  - Grey: Engine off

- (2) High-voltage battery
  - Green: Charge level
  - Grey: Drive system not switched on
- Movement arrow
  - Green: Electric driving
  - Orange: Driving with combustion engine
  - Green/orange: Driving with boost function
- Movement arrow
  - Green: Recuperation



#### i) Note

The energy flow can also be displayed in the vehicle functions tab in the instrument cluster.

#### Range monitor

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive



Fig. 84 Range monitor

You can display the estimated vehicle range.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Vehicle information.
- ▶ If necessary, scroll to the Range monitor dis-
- Range potential (value)
- Range potential (diagram)
- 3 Total range (diagram)
- Total range (value)
- (5) Electrical range (value)

Range potential: This value indicates the distance which you can cover in addition by switching off certain convenience functions. Convenience functions with high energy consumption are listed in the display.



- The range can also be displayed in the onboard computer in the instrument cluster. - The range shown depends on the previous consumption values and a forecast. These may be affected e.g. if convenience functions are switched on.

#### Statistics

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

You can display statistics on the distance driven under electric power and using fuel. The values are supplied by the on-board computer's shortterm and long-term memories.

- ▶ On the home screen, select CAR > Car details.
- ▶ If necessary, scroll to the e-tron short term statistics or e-tron long term statistics display.

#### Vehicle sound

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

Electric power units are much quieter than combustion engines. To make the vehicle more audible when driving under electric power, an artificial vehicle sound is produced on models for some countries. The vehicle sound is automatically faded out at higher speeds, as tyre and wind noise increase.



#### WARNING

Other road users may not hear an electric vehicle when it is moving. This applies in particular in areas with traffic calming measures, when manoeuvring or reversing - risk of accident!

### Driving in an efficient and environmentally conscious way

Fuel and energy economy, environmental impact and wear on the engine, brakes and tyres depend largely on the way you drive the vehicle. You can drive in an efficient and environmentally conscious way by considering the following tips:

- Select efficiency mode in Audi drive select\*.
- Switch off any electric equipment you do not need (e.g. seat heating\*).
- Anticipate the traffic conditions to avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- Avoid driving at high speeds.

- Remove ballast, such as roof racks or rear carriers, when not needed.
- Make sure the tyres are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Have the vehicle serviced regularly.
- Do not leave the engine running while the car is stopped.
- Do not use winter tyres in summer.
- Make use of the start/stop system.
- Make use of the engine braking effect.
- Avoid short trips.
- Mild hybrid drive and plug-in hybrid drive: If coasting is no longer possible and you have to brake, you should change quickly from the accelerator to the brake pedal and apply the brakes evenly. This is the most effective way to use the recuperation feature.



#### Note

Sporty driving can lead to significantly higher noise emissions. Please therefore be aware of your social responsibilities and consider the environment and those around you, particularly at night.

#### **Energy management**

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent energy management system to control the distribution of electrical energy. This significantly improves reliability when starting the engine, and also prolongs the life of the vehicle battery.



#### Note

- If the vehicle is driven frequently on short trips, the battery may not be sufficiently charged while driving. In this case, certain convenience functions for electrical equipment may be temporarily unavailable.
- If the vehicle is left standing for long periods, or if electrical equipment is used without running the engine, the battery will gradually lose its charge. To ensure that the vehicle can be started, the electrical equipment is powered back or switched off.

#### **Driver messages**



#### Drive system: fault. Safely stop vehicle

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. The brake servo and the power steering system could stop working. Stop your vehicle as soon as possible. Do not drive on. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇒ page 99. You should have the malfunction repaired by a qualified workshop.

### Drive system: fault. Please contact workshop

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

### Vehicle sound: fault. Vehicle inaudible to pedestrians. Please contact workshop

A vehicle sound fault has occurred. Drive extremely carefully, as other road users may not be able to hear the vehicle under electric power. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

### Further indicator lamps

If lights up, the driving performance is restricted as the combustion engine may not be available, for example. Please note any further messages in the instrument cluster.

## Start/stop system

#### Description

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

The start/stop system can help to save fuel and reduce CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

In start/stop mode, the engine is switched off automatically when the vehicle stops, e.g. at traffic lights. If certain conditions are met, the engine may be switched off before the vehicle has come to a standstill. If the accelerator pedal is pressed in this case, the engine starts and delivers power again.

The ignition and important supporting systems, e.g. the brake servo, remain available during the stop phase. The engine is automatically started on demand.

The start/stop system is automatically activated each time you switch on the ignition.

#### Switching the start/stop system off and on

The A button is located in the centre console above the selector lever. The LED in the button lights up when the function is switched off.

If you switch off the system during a stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

#### **Basic conditions**

- The driver's door and the bonnet must be closed and the driver's seat belt must be fastened.
- Automatic gearbox: Transmission position P, N or D must be selected.
- Manual gearbox: The gearbox must be neutral.
- The steering wheel must be relatively straight.
- The vehicle must have been moving at over 3 km/h since the last stop.

#### **CAUTION**

Always switch off the start/stop system ⇒ page 109 before driving through water.



- In certain situations, the engine may stop earlier while the vehicle is still coasting. A direct transition from coasting mode\* to a stop phase is thus possible  $\Rightarrow$  page 104.
- Automatic gearbox: If you select transmission position D after selecting reverse gear, the car must have been moving at over 10 km/h before the system can switch off the engine again. This allows you to manoeuvre the vehicle without the engine being switched off.

### Switching off/starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

- ► Apply the brakes and keep your foot on the brake pedal until the vehicle is stationary. The indicator lamp (A) will appear in the instrument cluster as soon as the engine has been switched off automatically.
- ► The engine will start again automatically when you take your foot off the brake pedal. The indicator lamp will go out.

If the parking brake is applied or the hold assist\* is switched on, the engine will only restart when you press the accelerator pedal.

Applies to: vehicles with manual gearbox

- ► Stop the vehicle and select neutral.
- ► Take your foot off the clutch pedal. The indicator lamp (A) will appear in the instrument cluster as soon as the engine has been switched off automatically.
- ▶ The engine will start again automatically when you press the clutch pedal. The indicator lamp will go out.



#### Note

- Keep your foot on the brake pedal during a stop phase to prevent the vehicle from movina.
- If you press the START ENGINE STOP button during a stop phase, the ignition will be switched off.
- If you briefly leave the vehicle during a stop phase and then get back in, you will need to close the driver's door and fasten your seat belt for the engine to start again.
- Automatic gearbox: You can control whether or not the engine is switched off by varying the amount of pressure on the brake pedal. For instance, if you brake gently in stopand-go traffic or before turning off at a junction, the engine will remain on while the vehicle is at a standstill. As soon as you press the brake pedal harder, the engine will be switched off.

#### Automatic engine start/stop

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

Before and during each stop phase, the system checks that certain conditions have been met and decides whether to switch off the engine and for how long. For instance, the engine is not switched off if the power consumption is high. Whether or not the engine is started/stopped automatically depends on factors such as the following:

- Ambient conditions (downhill/uphill gradient, altitude and temperature)
- Battery (charge level, temperature and power consumption)
- Engine temperature
- Driver assist systems
- Driving style

#### **Driver messages**

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

#### Drive system: please start vehicle manually

This message appears if certain conditions have not been met during the stop phase and the start/stop system cannot start the engine again automatically. The START ENGINE STOP button must be used to start the engine.

# Vehicle start system: fault. Please contact workshop

A malfunction has occurred in the start/stop system. Drive to a workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

#### **Brakes**

#### General notes

You can use the brake pedal to slow the vehicle down.

#### **Noises**

Brake noise may develop in certain situations, depending on the speed, braking force and ambient conditions (such as temperature and relative humidity).

#### **Braking effect**

The response of the brakes depends on the weather and ambient conditions. To ensure an optimum braking effect, the brake system cleans itself at regular intervals. To do so, the brake pads are applied to the brake discs briefly at high speeds when the windscreen wipers are on.

If the brake system is wet, e.g. after driving in heavy rain, the braking effect may be delayed. Further causes of a temporary increase in brake response time include:

- Wet conditions
- Low temperatures, ice and snow
- Salted roads
- Dirty brake pads

#### Corrosion

Corrosion can form on the brake discs if the car is used infrequently, or if you only drive low mileages. In this case, you can clean the brake discs by braking firmly a few times from a moderately high speed  $\Rightarrow \triangle$ .

Applies to vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: Use transmission position N to do so, to prevent the recuperation function from being used for braking.

#### Brake pads

New brake pads do not give full braking effect for the first 400 km, they must first be "bedded in". However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking effect by applying more pressure on the brake pedal. Avoid placing a heavy load on the brakes during the running-in period.

The rate of wear on the brake pads depends a great deal on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is operated. For example, the rate of wear will increase if the vehicle is used frequently in city traffic, for short distances, or for hard driving with abrupt starts and stops.

Applies to vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: Because recuperation is also used for braking, new brake pads take 800 km to bed in.

#### Ceramic brakes

Applies to: vehicles with ceramic brakes

Ceramic brakes provide excellent braking performance.

When new, ceramic brake discs can take much longer to bed in than normal brake discs. In addition, noises may occur at low speeds due to the properties of the material. Ceramic brake discs absorb more moisture in extremely wet weather. This can cause a temporary reduction in braking performance in comparison to dry brakes. You can compensate for this by applying greater pressure to the brake.

#### Multicollision brake assist system

The multicollision brake assist system can help to reduce the risk of skidding and further collisions during an accident. If the airbag control unit detects that a collision has taken place, the ESC system applies the brakes.

The vehicle will not be braked automatically if:

- the driver presses the accelerator,
- the brake pressure applied by pressing the brake pedal is higher than the brake pressure initiated by the system,
- or the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle's electrical system are not fully functional.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- When applying the brakes to clean off deposits on the pads and discs, select a clear, dry road. Be sure not to inconvenience or endanger other road users; do not risk an accident.
- All brake repairs must be carried out by a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory – risk of injury! Improper repairs can also impair the function of the system.
- Never let the car coast with the engine switched off (this can cause accidents).
- If a braking manoeuvre is initiated by the vehicle, the brake pedal may move automatically towards the floor. Do not rest your foot underneath the brake pedal risk of injury!

## 1

#### CAUTION

- Never let the brakes "drag" by leaving your foot on the pedal when you do not really intend to brake. This can cause the brakes to overheat, resulting in longer stopping distances and greater wear.
- Please observe the important safety warnings on driving on gradients ⇒ page 114.
   This is especially important when towing a trailer or caravan.

## (i)

#### Note

- If you wish to equip the car with accessories such as a front spoiler or wheel covers, it is important that the flow of air to the brakes is not obstructed; otherwise the brakes can overheat.
- Please also observe the information on brake fluid ⇒ page 273.

#### **Driver messages**

## Brakes: fault. Safely stop vehicle

A malfunction has occurred in the brake system. If also light up, this means that the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems have failed. You need to apply much more force to operate the brakes if the brake servo fails.

Do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance. Please refer to the additional safety notes  $\Rightarrow \triangle$ .

# Brake pads: wear limit reached. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop

The brake pads are worn. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the brake pads checked.

## Brake servo: restricted. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop

#### Brake servo: restricted. You can continue driving

If one of these driver messages appears, the brake servo is unavailable, or its function is restricted.

 If the driver message appears when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is off, this does not indicate a fault in the system; the brake servo will be fully functional when the ignition

- is switched on. If you wish to exit the vehicle, first secure it so that it cannot roll away ⇒ page 99.
- If the driver message appears when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is on, this indicates a fault in the system. Secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away ⇒ page 99. Take your foot off the brake pedal. Switch the ignition off and then on again. If the message is still displayed or if it reappears during driving, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. The brake servo remains available with reduced capacity. The brakes may perform differently than usual.

#### Further indicator lamps

The brakes have been used intensively while driving downhill for an extended period. Follow the instructions in the driver message to use the engine braking effect and take the load off the brakes.



#### WARNING

If the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems fail, input from the functions that stabilise the vehicle is no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to skid sideways. Do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

# Electro-mechanical parking brake

### Operating the parking brake

The electro-mechanical parking brake is intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling away accidentally.

The (D) button is located in the centre console below the selector lever. It lights up when the parking brake is engaged. You can release the parking brake manually or automatically when you drive off.

#### Applying and releasing the parking brake

► Applying: Pull the (②) button.

- When appears, the parking brake is keeping the vehicle stationary. You can now take your foot off the brake pedal.
- ▶ Releasing: With the ignition switched on, press and hold the brake pedal and press the (②) button

Automatic gearbox: If the red warning lamp flashes, insufficient braking force has been applied or released. When you park the vehicle, you should select transmission position P or press the brake pedal in addition to stop it from moving. Make sure that the warning lamp has gone out before you drive off.

Manual gearbox: If the red warning lamp flashes, insufficient braking force has been applied or released. When you park the vehicle, you should engage first gear or press the brake pedal in addition to stop it from moving. Make sure that the warning lamp has gone out before you drive off.

## Releasing the parking brake automatically when driving off

Important: The driver's door must be closed and the driver's seat belt must be buckled.

▶ Press the accelerator to drive off.



#### WARNING

- Always ensure that the vehicle is stopped properly and safely – risk of accident!
- If the parking brake is engaged, it may be released automatically if the accelerator pedal is pressed. Take care when pressing the accelerator pedal and always select position P when you park the vehicle – risk of accident!
- If the electrical power supply fails, it is not possible to apply the parking brake (if it was released) or to release the parking brake (if it was applied). Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away
   ⇒ page 99. Obtain professional assistance.
- When the parking brake is applied, the brake pedal may move automatically towards the floor. Do not rest your foot underneath the brake pedal - risk of injury!

## (i)

#### i) Note

- The vehicle may roll backwards on steep inclines when moving off, especially when towing a trailer or caravan. To prevent this from happening, pull the (P) button and hold it while you press the accelerator. Once enough power has been built up at the wheels to ensure that the vehicle will not roll back, release the button to drive off.
- Automatic gearbox: The parking brake will be applied automatically if you leave your vehicle while transmission position D or R is selected.
- Any noises heard when the parking brake is applied or released are quite normal and no cause for concern.
- The parking brake runs an automatic test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is parked. This may cause a slight noise, which is normal.

#### Hold assist

Applies to: vehicles with hold assist

If the vehicle is regularly stationary, for example, at traffic lights, on inclines or in stop-and-go traffic, this system can help the driver move off easily.

#### Switching the hold assist on/off

You can switch the hold assist on/off on the MMI.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Hold assist.

#### Driving off with the hold assist

Important: The driver's door must be closed, the engine must be running or capable of starting automatically and transmission position D, first gear or reverse gear must be selected.

- With the vehicle stationary, press and hold the brake pedal for a few seconds.
- ► When appears, the hold assist is keeping the vehicle stationary. You can now take your foot off the brake pedal.
- ▶ Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

In certain situations, the hold assist may transfer the job of holding the vehicle to the parking hrake.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- The hold assist function cannot keep the vehicle stationary in all conditions on a gradient (e.g. if the road is slippery or icy). Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the hold assist function.
- Always ensure that the vehicle is stopped properly and safely – risk of accident!



#### CAUTION

Switch off the hold assist function before driving the vehicle into a tunnel car wash to prevent the parking brake from being applied automatically.



#### Note

Applies to vehicles with automatic gearbox: When the hold assist function is switched on, it stops the vehicle from creeping forwards when you take your foot off the brake pedal.

#### **Emergency braking function**

You should only use the emergency braking function in a real emergency, for example if the brake system were to fail or if the brake pedal were to be obstructed. If you use the emergency braking function, this has the same effect as heavy braking.

- ► Pull and hold the (②) button while the vehicle is moving.
- ► A warning buzzer will sound and the emergency braking procedure will be triggered.
- ► If you press the accelerator pedal, the emergency braking procedure will be cancelled.



#### **WARNING**

Heavy braking in corners or in bad road or weather conditions can cause the vehicle to skid or lose steering control - risk of accident!

#### **Driver messages**

Parking brake: fault. Safely stop vehicle. See owner's manual

## Parking brake: fault. Please release parking brake

If one of these two messages appears, there is a parking brake fault. If this message appears while the vehicle is stationary, check whether the parking brake can be released and reapplied. If so, switch the ignition off and on again.

If the driver message still appears, if the parking brake cannot be released or if the driver message appears while the vehicle is moving, do not continue driving. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away  $\Rightarrow$  page 99. Obtain professional assistance.

# Parking brake: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay to have the fault rectified. Do not park the vehicle on a slope and secure the vehicle before leaving it so it cannot roll away ⇒ page 99.

# Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep

The braking force may not be sufficient to prevent the vehicle from rolling away. Park the vehicle at a location with a gradient that is less steep.

## (P) Parking brake is applied

The parking brake is applied. Press and hold the brake pedal and release the parking brake.

## Please take over.

The vehicle can no longer be held stationary. Press the brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

## Special driving situations

#### Driving on hills and gradients

Please follow the tips below when driving on hills and gradients or at high altitudes:

- Drive slowly and be ready for possible hazards.

- Do not try to turn round if you can't make it up a hill or gradient. Instead, drive back down in reverse gear.
- Automatic gearbox: When driving down steep gradients, the downhill speed control function may be activated if you press the brake pedal while in transmission position D. The automatic gearbox will then select a suitable gear for the gradient and will attempt to maintain the speed at which the vehicle was travelling when the brakes were applied. You should still continue to use the brakes as necessary. Downhill speed control is deactivated as soon as the road levels out again or you accelerate.
- Automatic gearbox: When driving down steep gradients, use the engine braking effect by selecting driving program S ⇒ page 101. This is especially important when towing a trailer or caravan. This will reduce the load on the brakes.
- Manual gearbox: When driving down a steep gradient, select a lower gear to use the engine braking effect. This will reduce the load on the brakes.
- Try not to stay on the brakes; apply them periodically.
- If necessary, use the hold assist ⇒ page 113.

## WARNING

- Drive only on gradients for which your vehicle is designed. Do not exceed the vehicle's available climbing power. Your vehicle could tip over or slide away.
- Keep the vehicle straight when driving on steep hills and gradients. If your vehicle is in danger of tipping over, you must steer in the direction of the gradient immediately – risk of accident!
- Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the downhill speed control.

#### Driving through water

If you cannot avoid driving on a flooded road, you should follow the advice below:

Check the type of road surface under the water,
 the strength of the current and the depth of
 the water. The water must not be higher than

**the vehicle's underbody**, even allowing for landslides, strong currents and waves.

- Deactivate the start/stop system\*.
- Drive carefully and not faster than walking pace so that any waves created by the movement of the car do not splash over the underbody. Bear in mind that waves can also be created by oncoming traffic.
- Do not stop the car in water.
- Do not drive in reverse.
- Do not switch off the engine.



#### WARNING

After driving through water, carefully apply the brakes to dry them and restore the full braking power.



#### **CAUTION**

Parts of the vehicle (e.g. engine, gearbox, running gear or electrical components) can be badly damaged when driving through water.



#### Note

Avoid driving through salt water to prevent corrosion. If any vehicle parts come into contact with salt water, rinse them with fresh water

## Handling dynamics

### Audi drive select

#### Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Drive select allows you to use different set-ups on your vehicle. You can switch between different driving modes, e.g. from a dynamic set-up to a comfortable one. In addition, you can adapt the vehicle set-up to suit your personal driving style. For example, you might choose to combine a more dynamic drive set-up with more comfortable steering settings.

#### Selecting an Audi drive select mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The strive button is located in the centre console above the selector lever.

- ▶ Press the ﷺ button repeatedly until the desired mode appears on the instrument cluster or centre display. Or:
- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Audi drive select.

You can change the mode while the vehicle is stationary or moving. If traffic conditions permit, take your foot off the accelerator briefly after you change the mode so that the new mode is also activated for the engine.

The following options are available, depending on the equipment in your vehicle:

**efficiency** – trims the vehicle to a fuel-saving setup and helps the driver adopt an economical driving style. The start stop system is activated and driving program E is selected.

**comfort** – alters the vehicle set-up for a more comfortable ride and is suitable for long motorway trips, for instance.

**auto** – gives an overall impression of a comfortable but dynamic ride and is a good choice of setup for everyday use.

**dynamic** – gives the vehicle a tighter set-up and is ideal for performance driving. Driving program S is selected.

**individual** – allows the vehicle set-up to be adjusted to your personal preferences. Press  $\nearrow$  to configure the mode  $\Rightarrow$  page 116, Individual settings.



#### Note

When the ignition is switched on, certain systems (such as the drive system) are reset to a balanced setting. Select the current mode again to use its settings in full.

#### Individual settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which systems you can select:

#### Drive system

The response of the engine to accelerator pedal movements is more spontaneous or balanced. On vehicles with automatic gearbox, the gear changes take place at higher or lower engine speeds.

#### Steering

The degree of power assistance can be varied. A lighter steering response is suitable on long motorway trips or for relaxed driving on winding roads, for example.

#### Suspension

The suspension is set for a firmer or more comfortable ride depending on the road surface.

#### Engine sound

The sound of the engine is matched to the selected setting and ranges from subdued to dynamic. If you use the automatic settings, the engine sound depends on which driving program is selected.

## Suspension

#### Suspension control

Applies to: vehicles with suspension control

The suspension control is an electronically controlled shock absorber system. The firmness of

the shock absorbers is adapted to the road conditions and the driving situation. The settings depend on the Audi drive select\* mode selected.

**Ground clearance** 

The height and ground clearance of the vehicle can be affected by the following factors:

- Changes in temperature
- Changes in vehicle loading

#### WARNING

Take special care that no-one can be injured if the vehicle level is changed, e.g. while the underbody or wheel arches are being washed.



#### **CAUTION**

Always ensure that there is sufficient clearance above and below the vehicle. This applies especially when driving into areas with low headroom, e.g. car parks. You should also be aware that the underside of the vehicle can make heavy contact with the ground if you drive onto the kerb or up a steep ramp - risk of damage!

#### **Driver messages**



### Suspension: fault. You can continue driving

A malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

## Steering

#### Description

The electro-mechanical power steering assists the driver when steering by adapting the degree of power assistance electronically, depending on the speed. The settings depend on the Audi drive select\* mode selected.

#### Progressive steering

Applies to: vehicles with progressive steering

For increased dynamic performance and vehicle handling, the steering ratio is varied depending on the steering input. The more the steering wheel is turned, the more direct the steering response. This facilitates manoeuvring and provides precise steering feedback at high speeds.

#### **Driver messages**

## Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle

The power assistance may have failed. Adapt your driving style immediately to allow for the possibility of heavy steering and stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇒ page 99. Do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

## Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. The ignition can no longer be switched on. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇒ page 99. Do not have the vehicle towed away, because you won't be able to steer it. Obtain professional assistance.

## Steering: fault. You can continue driving

There is a fault in the steering system. The steering may be heavier or its response may be more sensitive than usual. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Have the steering checked by a qualified workshop without delay. Please note that the red warning lamp may appear if you restart the engine, and in this case you must not continue driving.

### Steering lock: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.



#### WARNING

Your vehicle must not be towed if there is a fault in the electronic steering lock - risk of accident!



#### Note

You can drive on if the warning/indicator lamp 

# Four-wheel drive (quattro)

#### Description

Applies to: vehicles with four-wheel drive

The four-wheel drive system varies the distribution of power to the front and rear axles and thus improves the vehicle's handling characteristics. It interacts with a selective wheel torque control, which may intervene when cornering ⇒ page 118.

The four-wheel drive is specially designed to complement the superior engine power of your Audi. This combination gives the car exceptional handling and performance capabilities - both on normal roads and in more difficult conditions, such as snow and ice. Even so (or perhaps especially for this reason), it is important to observe certain safety points  $\Rightarrow \Lambda$ .



#### WARNING

- Even with four-wheel drive, you should always adjust your speed to suit the conditions risk of accident!
- The braking ability of your car is limited by the grip of the tyres. In this respect, your car is no different from a car without four-wheel drive. So do not be tempted to drive too fast - risk of accident!
- On wet roads bear in mind that the front wheels may start to "aquaplane" and lose contact with the road if the car is driven too fast. If this should happen, there will be no sudden increase in engine speed, as with a front-wheel drive car. So do not drive too fast in the wet: adjust your speed to suit the conditions (accident risk).

# Electronic stabilisation control

#### Description

The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) increases the car's stability. It reduces the tendency to skid and improves the stability and roadholding of the vehicle. The ESC detects critical handling

situations, such as understeer, oversteer and wheelspin on the driven wheels.

It stabilises the vehicle by braking individual wheels or by reducing the engine torque.

The stabilisation functions integrated in the ESC system include the following:

#### Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking up under braking until the vehicle has reached a virtual standstill. You can continue to steer the vehicle even when the brakes are on full. Keep your foot on the brake pedal and do not pump the brakes.

You will feel the brake pedal pulsate while the anti-lock brake system is working.

#### Traction control system (ASR)

In the event of wheelspin, the traction control system reduces the torque to match the amount of grip available, increasing the vehicle's stability.

#### Electronic differential lock (EDL)

When the EDL detects wheelspin, it brakes the spinning wheels and directs the power to the other wheels. This function is not available at high speeds.

To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle can still be driven. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

#### Selective wheel torque control

The selective wheel torque control function intervenes when cornering by braking the wheels on the inside of the bend individually as required. This enables precision cornering.



#### WARNING

- The grip provided by the ESC and the integrated systems is still subject to the physical limits of adhesion. Always bear this in mind, especially on wet or slippery roads. If you notice the systems cutting in, you should reduce your speed immediately to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not

let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving - this can cause accidents.

- Remember that the accident risk always increases if you drive fast, especially in corners or on a wet or slippery road, or if you follow too close behind the vehicle in front of you. Please bear in mind that even the ESC and the integrated systems cannot compensate for the increased accident risk.
- When accelerating on a uniformly slippery surface (for instance all four wheels on ice or snow), press the accelerator gradually and carefully. The driven wheels may otherwise start to spin (in spite of the integrated control systems), which would impair the car's stability and could lead to an accident.



The ABS and ASR systems can only work properly if all four tyres have a similar degree of wear. Any differences in the rolling circumference of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.

#### Operation

The 身岬 button (幕 on some vehicles) for operating the ESC is located in the centre console above the selector lever. The ESC is switched on automatically when the ignition is switched on.

#### Restricting the ESC

In certain situations it may be appropriate to restrict the stabilisation functions of the ESC so that the wheels can spin - for example, when rocking the car backwards and forwards to free it, or when driving with snow chains fitted. The ESC can also be restricted if reduced stabilisation input is desired during performance driving.

- To restrict the ESC, press the ₱ off button briefly. The indicator lamp 👫 will light up.
- To reactivate the full range of ESC stabilisation functions, press the button again. The indicator lamp will go out.

#### Switching off the ESC

For more active control of the vehicle with no input from the ESC stabilisation functions, the ESC system can be switched off completely.

- To switch off the ESC, press and hold the 皂 🕫 button for more than 3 seconds. The indicator lamps & and ESC OFF will light up.
- To reactivate the full range of ESC stabilisation functions, press the button again. The indicator lamps will go out.

#### WARNING

- If the ESC has been switched off or if its functions have been restricted, the vehicle will not be stabilised at all or will only be stabilised to a limited degree. The driven wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads - risk of accident!
- Only drive the vehicle with the ESC switched off or with restricted functions if this is necessary. You should switch the ESC on again as soon as possible.



- Systems which can apply the brakes automatically may be partially or completely unavailable if the ESC is restricted, switched off or malfunctioning.
- If there are faults in other systems or if specific driver assist systems are active, the ESC must be switched on for system-related reasons. The ESC is switched on automatically if necessary and cannot be operated via the button in this case.

#### **Driver messages**

### Stabilisation control (ESC/ABS): fault! See owner's manual

There is a fault in the ABS or EDL. This will also cause an ESC malfunction. The vehicle can still be braked in the normal way (however the ABS control function will be out of action).

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

#### Handling dynamics

### Further indicator lamps

If standard flashes while the vehicle is in motion, the ESC is intervening. Noises may be heard while this is happening. If the indicator lamp lights up permanently, the ESC system has been switched off for system reasons. If the indicator lamp goes out, this means the system is fully functional.

## High-voltage system

### General notes

#### Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

All work on the high-voltage system must be carried out solely by qualified high-voltage technicians and authorised workshops according to Audi's regulations.

The high-voltage system includes a high-voltage battery, power electronics, electric motor, a high-voltage air conditioner compressor, a high-voltage heater, charging system, charging connection and orange high-voltage cables.

The high-voltage battery is located in the vehicle floor in front of the rear axle and does not require any maintenance to be performed by the driver.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

The voltage of the high-voltage system is potentially lethal! Touching damaged high-voltage components could cause you to be fatally electrocuted. A warning sticker is attached to the different parts of the high-voltage system. This is intended to warn you of the high voltage.

- Even when the ignition is switched off, potentially lethal voltages still exist in the high-voltage system.
- Never perform work on the orange-coloured high-voltage cables or the other high-voltage components yourself. Work on the highvoltage system may only be performed by authorised workshops that have been approved for this type of work.

- The orange-coloured high-voltage cables must never be damaged, modified, removed or disconnected from the high-voltage system.
- Never use cutting, forming or sharp-edged tools or heat sources in the vicinity of highvoltage components and high-voltage cables.
- Any gases escaping from the high-voltage battery may be toxic or flammable.
- Damage to the high-voltage battery may result in the battery developing a leak (either immediately or subsequently) which could release toxic or flammable gases. These gases must not be inhaled!
- Do not expose yourself to any fluids escaping from the high-voltage battery; avoid all contact with these fluids.
- The electrolyte fluid in the high-voltage battery is corrosive. If the electrolyte fluid comes into contact with your skin, rinse the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash with soap. Have the affected area examined by a doctor.
- In the event of a technical emergency, inform the service team that the vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage battery.



#### CAUTION

The high-voltage system can be damaged if the underside of your vehicle makes heavy contact with the ground. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the vehicle checked.

## Charging the high-voltage battery

#### Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The following options are available for charging the high-voltage battery:

Charging method	Charging cable
Charging at a domestic or industrial AC power outlet	Audi e-tron charging system (compact) ⇒ page 130
Charging at a public charging station (with AC power)	Factory-supplied charging cable ⇒ page 129 or charging cable at charging station

For AC power supplies, Audi recommends charging the high-voltage battery at an industrial power outlet, charging station or wallbox. The efficiency will be higher and the charging time much lower compared with charging at a domestic power outlet.

You should only charge the vehicle at a domestic power outlet with the Audi e-tron charging system (compact) if an industrial AC power outlet or a public AC charging station is not available.

The driving range of a high-voltage battery diminishes over time as the battery ages. The ageing process is accelerated and the available range reduced even more if the high-voltage battery is frequently charged to its maximum capacity.

#### Charging time

The amount of time required to charge the vehicle can vary depending on the following:

- Type of power outlet used (domestic or industrial).
- The country's grid voltage, current rating and number of phases available.
- Domestic connection.
- Charging capacity setting on Audi charging system operating unit.
- Fluctuations in mains supply.
- Ambient temperature surrounding the vehicle.
- Temperature of high-voltage battery and Audi charging system operating unit.
- Air conditioner settings for interior temperature.
- Electrical capacity of charging connector.
- Ignition switched on/off.

#### Important safety notes

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive



#### WARNING

Improper battery charging, e.g. failure to observe generally applicable safety precautions, the use of unsuitable or damaged outlets and charging cables, or charging at unsuitable electrical installations can result in short-circuits, electric shocks, explosions, fire and serious burns – risk of fatal injury!

- Do not charge the vehicle at a power outlet or electrical installation if it shows signs of damage or improper installation.
- Never use charging equipment which is visibly damaged and/or dirty. Always check the charging equipment for damage before use.
- Never make modifications or repairs to electrical components and in particular to the high-voltage system.
- Never charge the vehicle in potentially explosive atmospheres. The components of the charging equipment can produce sparks and ignite inflammable or explosive vapours. To reduce the risk of explosions, especially in garages, please ensure that the operating unit of the Audi e-tron charging systems is at least 50 cm above the ground during charging.
- Never use an extension cable, a cable reel, a multiple outlet strip or adapter (e.g. a travel adapter or time switch) with the charging equipment.
- Do not touch the contacts on the vehicle charging connection and charging equipment.
- Do not insert any objects in the vehicle charging connection or charging equipment.
- Always protect power outlets and plug connections against water, humidity and other fluids.

 Use only the factory-supplied charging equipment or the charging cable at the charging station.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

Applies to: Audi charging systems

Improperly installed power sockets can result in electric shock or fire when the high-voltage battery is charged via the vehicle charging connection.

- The home power outlet for Audi charging systems must be installed and commissioned by a qualified electrician. The electrician is responsible for full compliance with existing regulations and standards.
- Make sure that the domestic power outlet is earthed and protected from water.
- If Audi charging systems do not operate as described in the operating instructions, they must not be used. Please contact a qualified workshop.
- Audi charging systems are designed for use in private and semi-public areas (e.g. on private land or company car parks). In some countries (e.g. Italy and New Zealand), mode 2 charging (which includes charging with the Audi charging system) is prohibited in public areas. In some countries and regions (e.g. Abu Dhabi, Israel, Singapore and India), it is prohibited to charge vehicles at domestic power outlets. For more information, contact a qualified workshop.
- Audi charging systems should be used in properly earthed power grids. Operation in unearthed networks (e.g. IT networks) is only possible using Audi charging systems with deactivated protective earth conductor monitoring ⇒ page 131.
- The electrical installation can be loaded to maximum capacity when the high-voltage battery is charged via the domestic/industrial power outlet. We recommend that the electrical installations used for charging be checked regularly by an electrician.
- Whenever possible, disconnect Audi charging systems from the charging infrastructure during thunderstorms.

- Never immerse Audi charging systems or the connectors in water.
- Only clean Audi charging systems when the operating unit is fully disconnected from the electricity grid and from the vehicle. Use a dry cloth for cleaning.
- Audi charging systems are suitable for use only with Audi vehicles and vehicles manufactured by the Volkswagen Group. These devices are not approved for use with vehicles manufactured by other companies.

## (1)

#### **CAUTION**

- The high-voltage battery can be damaged if it is allowed to discharge completely.
  Charge the high-voltage battery within 2 months when the remaining electrical range shows 0 km. Charge the high-voltage battery immediately if the remaining electrical range shows 0 km and the vehicle will not be used for an indeterminate period.
  Even if the vehicle is not used, the charge level of the high-voltage battery will drop naturally over time. Before parking the vehicle, charge the high-voltage battery, if possible, completely to avoid deep discharge when the vehicle is out of service for a long time (over one year).
- Please ensure that you always carry suitable charging equipment for the country in which you are travelling. For more information, contact a qualified workshop.

## (i)

#### Note

- Only charging stations which meet the following standards (minimum requirement) and the standards applicable in your country can be used to charge the vehicle:
  - GB/T 18487.1 and GB/T 20234 (China)
  - IEC 61851 and IEC 62196 (Europe)
  - SAE J1772 (North America, Japan)
- If the charging station has a domestic or industrial connection, you can use your Audi charging system.

## i Note

Applies to: Audi charging systems

- For uninterrupted charging, it is recommended to charge the vehicle only at power outlets which are connected via a separately fused power circuit.
- To prevent overheating during use, do not expose Audi charging systems to direct sunlight for long periods of time. If the operating unit overheats, the charging cycle is automatically interrupted until the temperature drops again to within the normal range.

#### Charging

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive



Fig. 85 Front left side of vehicle: Opening high-voltage charging flap



**Fig. 86** Charging unit: Charging connection and charging indicator

#### Connecting the charging cable

The sequence of the following steps may vary when you charge your vehicle at a charging sta-

tion. Follow the instructions and operating tips provided by the charging station manufacturer.

Important: Transmission position P must be selected, the parking brake must be applied and vehicle status must be not ready.

- Take the charging cable out of the vehicle if necessary ⇒ page 129, Transport.
- Remove the protective caps on the charging cable if necessary.
- Connect the charging cable to the power supply first or take it out of the charging station.
- Unwind the charging cable completely.
- Unlock the vehicle.
- To open the charging flap, press the right side of the flap ⇒ Fig. 85.
- Plug the charging connector into the vehicle charging connection.
- Check whether the charging option ① shown (immediate charging/timer-based charging) is the one you wish to use for the charging cycle.

## Starting charging automatically (immediate charging)

If a time delay has not been activated for charging, the charging cycle will begin immediately. The charging station may have to be enabled. Follow the instructions and operating tips provided by the charging station manufacturer.

## Charging with a timer (timer-based charging)

Timer-based charging allows you to start and finish the charging cycle according to a pre-configured timer.

 To charge via timer, switch on the timer and timer-based charging before you leave the vehicle ⇒ page 126.

### While the vehicle is being charged

The charging indicator on the charging unit 1 pulsates in green during the charging cycle. For the meaning of the colours on the charging indicator please refer to  $\Rightarrow$  page 125.

The charging connector is locked during charging and cannot be removed.

The charge level and range of the high-voltage battery is displayed in the instrument cluster when you open the driver's door with the vehicle's ignition switched off; the remaining charging time is displayed additionally when charging is in progress.

#### Ending the charging procedure

You can interrupt the charging cycle at any time.

- Unlock the vehicle.
- Unplug the charging connector. If the charging connector is not unplugged within 30 seconds, it will be locked again automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed if appropriate.
- Close the charging flap.
- Disconnect the charging cable from the power supply if necessary or secure it to the charging station again.
- Put the protective caps back onto the charging cable
- If you are transporting the charging cable in the vehicle, stow it safely ⇒ page 129.

If it is not possible to disconnect the charging connector from the vehicle, you will need to release it manually  $\Rightarrow$  page 127.

If it is not possible to unplug the charging connector from the charging station, please authenticate yourself at the charging station again and attempt to unplug the connector. If it is still not possible to unplug the charging connector from the charging station, please contact the operator of the charging station.

## ↑ WARNING

- Do not unplug the charging cable from the charging socket or the vehicle charging connection while the vehicle is being charged.
   Terminate the charging cycle before you unplug the charging cable from the socket risk of damage to the connector contacts due to spark generation.
- If the charging unit is damaged, you must not use it to charge the vehicle – risk of injury!
- If the charging unit is damaged, or if the charging flap cannot be closed or is missing, drive immediately to a workshop and have this rectified - risk of injury!

## (!)

#### CAUTION

The charging flap and the electronic components behind it can be damaged if you drive with the charging unit open. Before you start a journey, please check that the charging flap is properly closed.

## (i)

#### Note

- If you hear a noise when plugging in the charging connector, this may be because the parking brake is being applied.
- Use a small brush and a solvent-free de-icer spray to remove ice and snow from the charging unit.
- There may be some television or radio interference in the vehicle's on-board systems while the vehicle is being charged.

### Charging indicator

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

An LED on the charging unit ① ⇒ page 124, Fig. 86 indicates the charging status. The LED indicator logic is described in the following table.

LED on charging unit	Meaning
	Vehicle charging system in standby mode. A timer may be active
off	but charging has not yet started.
	Charging cycle has been interrupted.

LED on charging unit		Meaning	
pulsating		The high-voltage battery is being charged.	
green	flashing	Timer is active but charging has not yet started.	
	lit	High-voltage battery charge cycle finished.	
lit yellow		When using the Audi charging system, please ensure that the mains connector is plugged into the power outlet $\Rightarrow$ page 130. Charging cable connected but no mains power detected. Have the power supply or mains checked. Check the LED indicators on the operating unit when using the Audi charging system $\Rightarrow$ table on page 131. Obtain professional assistance if necessary.	
	flashing	The vehicle is not secured against rolling away. Check that transmission position P is selected and that the parking brake is applied. If the LED continues to flash, obtain professional assistance.	
red lit		Charging connector may not be properly locked in vehicle charging connection. Check that the charging connector is plugged in correctly. Unplug the charging connector and plug it into the charging connection again or try using a different charging station. If the LED remains lit, there is a malfunction in the vehicle charging system or power source. Obtain professional assistance if necessary.  The outside temperature is too low or too high.	
		The outside temperature is too tow or too mgm.	

#### Setting timers

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

#### Introduction

You can specify the departure time by which you wish your vehicle to be fully charged. Once a timer is switched on, it is triggered either once or regularly at the times set. In addition, you can specify that your vehicle is to be heated or cooled to the temperature selected on the air conditioner. Several timers can be switched on simultaneously.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Charging & efficiency > Charging.

### Configuring the timer

- ► To set a timer, select > in the line for the desired timer.
- ► If the timer is to be triggered only once, select **Individual timer**. If the timer is to be triggered regularly, select **Repeat timer**.
- ► If required, enter a preferred charging time, for instance if you wish to use an off-peak rate.

- ➤ To activate an additional timer for air conditioning, select ○.
- Select Next and follow the instructions in the menu.

## Switching on the timer and timer-based charging

The charging cycle will only follow the timer settings if you switch on the timer and timer-based charging.

- ▶ To switch on a timer, select ○.
- ► To switch on timer-based charging, select s<sup>a</sup> until **Timer charging mode** is displayed.

If the departure time set on the timer is too short, the battery may not be sufficiently charged.



#### Note

On some charging stations it is not possible to use the charging timer.

#### Manual release

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

In the event of a fault, you can release the charging connector manually.

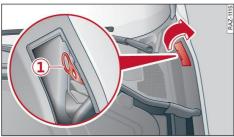


Fig. 87 Motor compartment: Manual release

#### Releasing the charging flap manually

If you are not able to open the charging flap, a fault may have occurred, in which case you will need to have the charging flap released manually.

- ► To release the charging flap manually, you should seek professional assistance.
- ► Then drive carefully to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

#### Releasing the charging connector manually

If you cannot remove the charging connector from the vehicle charging connection, a fault may have occurred. The vehicle charging connector will have to be released manually.

Important: Transmission position P must be selected and the vehicle must be unlocked.

- ► Finish the charging cycle ⇒ page 125, Ending the charging procedure.
- ▶ Open the bonnet.
- ► Open the cover in the motor compartment ⇒ Fig. 87.
- ► Release the yellow ring ① from its holder and carefully pull the ring 

  ① [].
- ▶ Unplug the charging connector.
- ► After the manual release procedure, secure the ring in its holder again and close the cover.
- ► Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

If the charging connector cannot be removed after the manual release procedure, you should obtain professional assistance.

## 1

#### CAUTION

Stop pulling the ring when you feel resistance (the release mechanism is not audible). Otherwise, you could damage the manual release mechanism.

#### **Driver messages**

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

If the indicator lamp ights up, the range is low or very low. Charge the high-voltage battery.

# AC charging system: fault. Please contact workshop

This message appears if there is a fault in the charging system. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

# Charging system incompatible. Please check charging system

This message appears if the charging system is incompatible. Only use Audi charging systems intended for use with your vehicle.

## Charging system: fault

This message appears if there is a fault in the charging infrastructure for your vehicle or in the charging station. Use a different charging station. If the message does not disappear, contact a qualified workshop.

## Charging equipment

#### Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The following charging cables may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

- Charging cable for public charging stations with AC power
- Audi e-tron charging system (compact)

#### Notes on using the charging equipment

Please note the following information for safe handling of the charging equipment:

- Protect the equipment so that it cannot be run over, dropped, pulled, bent or crushed.
- Do not immerse the charging equipment in water; keep it protected against snow or ice.
- When you remove the charging cable from the vehicle and from the power supply, pull only the connectors, not the cable.
- Put the protective caps back on after using the charging cable.
- Use the Audi charging system only in an electricity grid with a mains frequency of 50 Hz/ 60 Hz.
- Use and store the Audi charging system only when the relative humidity is between 5 % and 95 % (non-condensing).
- The Audi charging system is protected against dust and water jets (IP55).

The warnings attached to the charging equipment may vary in different countries:

Symbol	Meaning		
-25	Use and store the Audi charging system at temperatures between -30 °C and +50 °C.		
-30	Use and store the Audi charging system at temperatures between -30 °C and +50 °C.		
	Use and store the Audi charging system at altitudes of max. 4000 m above mean sea level.		
<u></u> ≤5000m	Use and store the Audi charging system at altitudes of max. 5000 m above mean sea level.		
(FE)	The Audi charging system is equipped with an unswitched protective earth conductor.		
	The Audi charging system is equipped with a switched protective		

earth conductor.

Symbol	Meaning		
<b>⊗</b>	Do not use the Audi charging system in unearthed power networks (e.g. IT networks). Use the Audi charging system only in earthed power grids.		
	Surfaces can become very hot if exposed to direct sunlight.		
<u></u>			
<b>全</b>	Improper use may result in electric shocks.		
<b>\$</b>			
	Please refer to the associated operating instructions and read the		
	safety instructions.		
Z	Please follow the waste disposal rules.		
	Do not use extension cables or cable reels.		
=><	Do not use travel adapters.		
	Do not use multiple outlet power sockets.		
**************************************	Do not use charging cables if the connector leads or electronics have been damaged.		
Ø	Use the Audi charging system in single-phase networks.		

### Purpose of use for Audi charging systems

Charging device for charging mode 2 for charging vehicles with a high-voltage battery which complies with the generally applicable standards and regulations for electric vehicles.

#### **Transport**

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive



Fig. 88 Transport bag

Always stow the charging equipment safely in the vehicle prior to transport.

- ▶ Open the boot lid ⇒ page 45.
- Stow the charging equipment in the transport bag.
- ► Always position the bag on the left side of the luggage compartment ⇒ page 86.
- ► Attach one of the hooks to the fastening ring adjacent to the loading sill.
- ► Attach the other hook to the fastening ring behind the rear seat bench.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

Unsecured, improperly secured or incorrectly positioned vehicle charging equipment can become dislodged and injure the vehicle occupants during braking or turning manoeuvres or in the event of an accident.

 Transport the charging equipment only in the transport bag in the luggage compartment and never transport it unsecured or in the passenger compartment.



#### CAUTION

Always lift or carry the Audi charging system as a unit and never by the cables.

## Charging cable (mode 3) for public charging stations with AC power

Applies to: vehicles with charging cable for public charging stations with AC power



**Fig. 89** Charging cable for public charging stations with AC power (example)

You can use this charging cable to charge your vehicle at public charging stations with AC power if they do not have an integrated charging cable. Please note the procedure for charging ⇒ page 124.



#### **CAUTION**

Do not use the charging cable as an extension cable for the Audi charging system. This will cause a charging cycle malfunction.

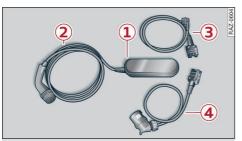


#### Note

- Charging with the charging cable may not be possible at charging stations which have a higher current rating than the cable rating. Please note the information and notices at the charging station.
- Many of the electrical installations in Norway are designed based on different technical rules than those commonly used in Europe. You must only use a charging cable with a cross-section of 5 x 6 mm². Please note the specifications on the charging cable. Before embarking on a trip to Norway, check whether the charging cable on your vehicle is suitable for these types of charging station.

#### Audi e-tron charging system (compact)

Applies to: vehicles with Audi e-tron charging system (compact)



**Fig. 90** Audi e-tron charging system (compact): Components (example)

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 122, Important safety notes.

You can use the Audi e-tron charging system (compact) to charge the vehicle at a domestic or industrial power outlet. The following accessories may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

- 1 Operating unit
- 2 Vehicle cable with vehicle charging connector
- 3 Mains cable with mains connector for domestic power outlets
- 4 Mains cable with mains connector for industrial power outlets

The vehicle cable is permanently connected to the operating unit. The mains cable is plugged into the top end of the operating unit and can be changed  $\Rightarrow$  page 136.

#### Overview of operating unit

(5)	(*) ON/OFF button, charging capacity and LED		
6	Status LED:		
	☐ Electricity grid/domestic		
	connection		
	🖨 Car		
	Control console		
7	9	Reset	

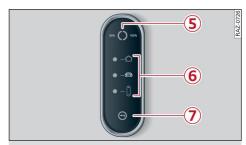


Fig. 91 Audi e-tron charging system (compact): Operating unit

#### Charging

Please note the correct procedure for charging ⇒ page 124.

Important: The correct mains plug must be fitted ⇒ page 136.

- Connect the mains plug to the power outlet.
- Plug the vehicle charging connector into the vehicle charging connection.
- The charging cycle starts automatically.
- After the charging cycle, unlock the vehicle and unplug the vehicle charging connector from the vehicle charging connection.

#### Limiting the charging current

The operating unit automatically detects the voltage and the available amp rating. In the settings you can specify whether you want to charge at reduced or full capacity. The last setting is saved and can be called up again for the next charging cycle. If several items of electrical equipment are connected to the same circuit, the charging capacity can be reduced when charging at a domestic power outlet. In this way you can protect the electrical installation from overheating.

Before each charging cycle, you should check whether the last charging capacity setting is desired for the current charging cycle.

 To activate the charging capacity limitation, press the (\*) button (\$\sigma\) \Rightarrow Fig. 91 for at least two seconds. The status LEDs  $\bigcirc$ ,  $\rightleftharpoons$  and  $\bigcirc$  will flash once in green when the charging capacity limitation has been successfully activated. The setting (50 % or 100 %) will be displayed on the left or right of the (•) button.

## Activating/deactivating protective earth (PE) conductor monitoring

Please read the safety information on PE conductor monitoring  $\Rightarrow \triangle$ .

If the PE conductor monitor has interrupted the charging cycle and the LED on the operating unit  $\textcircled{s} \Rightarrow Fig.~91$  and the two status LEDs h and h are lit in red, you should deactivate PE conductor monitoring as follows:

- To deactivate PE conductor monitoring, press buttons (•) (§) and (•) (7) ⇒ Fig. 91 simultaneously for six seconds. The status LED (§) will flash in white while you are doing so. Release the buttons again for one second.
- Press both buttons (\*) and ⊙ again for six seconds. Deactivation will take place automatically after a brief interval. The LED on the operating unit (5) will pulsate in green and the two status LEDs △ and ⋈ will light up in yellow.
- To activate PE conductor monitoring, press and hold buttons (•) and ⊙ until the status LEDs ⋈ and □ go out. The reset will occur automatically after a brief interval.

### Status and fault indicators on the operating unit

_	and indicator	Meaning	Remedy
lamps			
() L	Lit in green	The charging unit is ready to	Start the charging cycle ⇒ page 124.
0 0	Off	charge but not yet charging.	
0 🖨 0	Off		
0 0	Off		
⊙ (	Off		
() F	Pulsating in	The vehicle is being charged	
g	green	with PE conductor monitoring	
0 0	Off	activated.	
0 🖨 0	Off		
0 0	Off		
9 (	Off		
() F	Pulsating in	The mains plug has overhea-	The fault will be cleared automatically
g	green	ted. Possible cause: the multi-	once the mains connector has cooled
<u> </u>	Lit in yellow	phase socket has been connec-	down. The vehicle will be charged with re-
0 🖨 0	Off	ted to a single-phase system.	duced power until the connector has
0 0 0	Off	The vehicle will be charged with reduced power.	cooled down. If the fault persists, you should have the electricity grid/domestic
9 0	Off	with reduced power.	connection checked by an electrician.
() F	Pulsating in	The vehicle is being charged	For unearthed networks (e.g. IT net-
g	green	with PE conductor monitoring	works) only: no remedial measures re-
<u> </u>	Lit in yellow	deactivated.	quired, the vehicle will be charged in the
🖨 ι	Lit in yellow		correct way for the electricity grid.
0 0 0	Off		For earthed networks only: Activate PE conductor monitoring ⇒ page 131.
⊙ (	Off		conductor monitoring ~ page 131.

	nd indicator	Meaning	Remedy
lamps			
gr ○ △ 0· ○ ⊜ 0·	off it in yellow	The operating unit has over- heated. The vehicle will be charged with reduced power.	The fault will be cleared automatically once the operating unit has cooled down. Do not expose the operating unit to direct sunlight for long periods of time. The vehicle will be charged with reduced power until the operating unit has cooled down. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
○	ff ff	The charger is connected to the vehicle. The high-voltage battery is charged and the charging cycle was completed successfully, or the vehicle does not need to be charged.	
○		The mains plug has overheated. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	The fault will be cleared automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed once the mains connector has cooled down. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership and have the electricity grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician.
O △ 0· O ⊜ 0·	off it in yellow	The operating unit has over- heated. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	The fault will be cleared automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed once the operating unit has cooled down. Do not expose the operating unit to direct sunlight for long periods of time. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
○		The charging infrastructure of the electricity grid/domestic connection is restricted. Possi- ble cause: low voltage or poor mains frequency. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	The fault will be cleared automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed once the electricity grid/domestic connection has stabilised. If the fault persists, you should have the electricity grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician.
○	lashing in yel- ow	A fault has occurred in the vehicle charging system. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	The fault will be cleared automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed once the vehicle charging system has stabilised. If the fault persists, you should have the vehicle checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.

Warning and indicator	Meaning	Remedy
lamps	ricannig	Remedy
<ul> <li>Lit in red</li> <li>○ ☐ Off</li> <li>○ ➡ Off</li> <li>⑤ ♣ Flashing in ye low</li> <li>⑤ Off</li> </ul>	The mains or vehicle cable is defective. Possible cause: mismatch in coding resistance of mains or vehicle cable. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Have the mains or vehicle cable replaced by a qualified workshop or Audi dealer- ship.
() Lit in red () ☐ Off () ☐ Lit in red () ☐ Off () Off () Off	A fault has occurred in the vehicle charging system. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Stop the vehicle charging cycle and remove the vehicle cable from the vehicle charging connection. Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. Restart the charging cycle $\Rightarrow$ page 124. If the fault persists, you should have the vehicle checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
() Lit in red  (o) ☐ Flashing in red () ☐ Off () ☐ Off (o) Off	There has been a voltage surge in the charging infrastructure of the electricity grid/domestic connection. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the electricity grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician.
Unit in red	A technical fault has occurred in the operating unit. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
<ul> <li>C) Lit in red</li> <li>C) ○ Off</li> <li>C) ➡ Off</li> <li>I) Flashing in red</li> <li>⊙ Off</li> </ul>	A technical fault has occurred in the operating unit (self-test failed). The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
Lit in red  Off  Off	The charging infrastructure of the electricity grid/domestic connection is inadequate: the protective earth conductor is disconnected or not installed. The PE conductor monitoring system has interrupted the charging cycle.	For unearthed networks (e.g. IT networks) only: If necessary, charge the vehicle with protective earth conductor monitoring deactivated $\Rightarrow$ page 131.  For earthed networks only: Have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership and have the electricity grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician. Do not use the electricity grid/domestic connection until the fault has been rectified.

	_	and indicator	Meaning	Remedy
lam	ps			
()		Lit in red	The indicator lamp on the re-	Have the operating unit replaced by a
	$\bigcirc$	Lit in red	set button is defective. The	qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
		Lit in red	charging cycle has been inter-	
		Lit in red	rupted.	
9		Off		
()		Lit in red	The operating unit has detec-	Press the ⊙ button for at least 2 sec-
	$\bigcirc$	Lit in red	ted a fault in the electric cur-	onds. If the fault persists, you should
	$ ag{1} $	Lit in red	rent. The charging cycle has	have the operating unit checked by a
		Lit in red	been interrupted.	qualified workshop or Audi dealership and have the electricity grid/domestic
9		Flashing in red		connection checked by an electrician.
()		Lit in red	The charging infrastructure is	Disconnect the charging unit from the
•	$\bigcirc$	Flashing in red	wired incorrectly. The charging	mains. Have the electricity grid/domestic
•		Flashing in red	cycle has been interrupted.	connection checked by an electrician.
•		Flashing in red		
9		Off		
()		Lit in red	A technical fault has occurred	Disconnect the charging unit from the
	$\bigcirc$	Lit in red	in the operating unit. Possible	mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds.
		Lit in red	relay circuit error. The charg-	If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified
		Lit in red	ing cycle has been interrup-	workshop or Audi dealership and have the
9		Lit in red	ted.	electricity grid/domestic connection
				checked by an electrician.
()		Flashing in red	A serious fault has occurred in	Have the operating unit replaced by a
0	$\bigcirc$	Off	the operating unit. The charg-	qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
0	$ ag{1} $	Off	ing cycle has been interrup-	
		Lit in red	teu.	
9		Off		
()		Off	The indicator lamp in the	Have the operating unit replaced by a
	$\bigcirc$	Lit in red	on/off button of the operating	qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
		Lit in red	unit is defective. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	
		Lit in red	cycle has been interrupted.	
0		Lit in red		

### Technical data

	8V4.971.675.AK 8V4.971.675.AM 8V4.971.675.BA		8V4.971.675.BB	8V4.971.675.AS
Power output	3.6 kW	7.2 kW	9.6 kW	11 kW
Rated current	16 A 1-phase	16 A 2-phase: 8V4.971.675.AP 32 A 1-phase:	40 A 1-phase	16 A 3-phase
		8V4.971.675.AN, 8V4.971.675.AR		
Rated voltage	100 V - 240 V: 8V4.971.675.AK, 8V4.971.675.AM		120 V / 240 V	100 V - 240 V / 400 V
	120 V / 240 V: 8V4.971.675.BA	100 V - 240 V: 8V4.971.675.AN, 8V4.971.675.AR		
Mains frequency	50 Hz/60 Hz	50 Hz/60 Hz	50 Hz/60 Hz	50 Hz/60 Hz
Overvoltage category (IEC 60664)	II	II	II	II
Rated short-time with- stand current (EN 61439-1)	<10 kA eff.	<10 kA eff.	<10 kA eff.	<10 kA eff.
Mains connector types	CEE 230 V/16 A, 1p; CEE 230 V/32 A, 1p; CEE 400 V/16 A, 3p; CEE 400 V/32 A, 3p; NEMA 6-30; NEMA 6-50; NEMA 14-30; NEMA 14-50; NEMA 5-15; YP-41; TYP B; TYP E/F; TYP G; TYP I; TYP J; TYP K; TYP L; TYP M; TYP N			
Integrated residual current device	AC: 30 mA; DC: 6 mA: 8V4.971.675.AK, 8V4.971.675.AM	AC: 30 mA; DC: 6 mA	AC: 20 mA; DC: 56 mA	AC: 30 mA; DC: 6 mA
	AC: 20 mA; DC: 56 mA: 8V4.971.675.BA			
Vehicle charging con- nector	Type 1: 8V4.971.675.AM, 8V4.971.675.BA	Type 1: 8V4.971.675.AR	Type 1	Type 2
	Type 2: 8V4.971.675.AK	Type 2: 8V4.971.675.AN, 8V4.971.675.AP		
Protection class	I	I	I	I
IP degree of protection	55	55	55	55

	8V4.971.675.AK 8V4.971.675.AM 8V4.971.675.BA		8V4.971.675.BB	8V4.971.675.AS
Weight of operating unit	2.4 - 3.5 kg			
Dimensions of operat- ing unit (height x width x depth)		ı x 72 mm		

#### WARNING

The use of the Audi e-tron charging system (compact) without PE conductor monitoring activated can cause short-circuits, electric shocks, explosions and fires or burns. The Audi e-tron charging system (compact) should be used in earthed power grids. Deactivate PE conductor monitoring only in unearthed networks (e.g. IT networks). Activate PE conductor monitoring in earthed power grids.

#### (i) Note

When the power supply is connected or restored, the operating unit performs a self-test routine. All the LEDs will light up in green for two seconds if the self-test routine is successful.

#### Changing/attaching the cable

Applies to: vehicles with Audi charging system

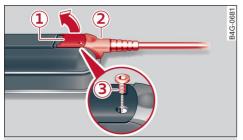


Fig. 92 Operating unit: Releasing/securing the cable

#### Requirements:

- ► The high-voltage battery must have finished charging  $\Rightarrow$  page 125.
- ► The vehicle charging connector must be unplugged from the vehicle charging connection.

▶ The mains plug must be removed from the power outlet.

#### Releasing the cable

- ▶ If necessary, remove the screw (3) using the screwdriver supplied.
- ► Lift the lever (1) all the way up.
- ▶ Pull the connector ② out until the first point of resistance.
- ► Close the lever (1) until it is resting on the connector (2).
- ▶ Pull the connector (2) all the way out.

#### Securing the cable

- ► Lift the lever (1) slightly.
- ▶ Push the connector (2) into the operating unit until the first point of resistance.
- ► Lift the lever (1) all the way up.
- ▶ Push the connector (2) all the way into the operating unit.
- ► Close the lever (1).
- ► Secure the screw (3) using the screwdriver supplied.



#### WARNING

- Please note the warnings for charging ⇒ ▲ in Charging on page 125.
- Always remove the mains cable from the power outlet before changing a cable.
- Change the cable in dry environments only.
- The Audi charging system must always be used complete with the mains cable, operating unit and vehicle cable. In some countries, the total length of the mains cable, operating unit and vehicle cable are limited, e.g. to 7.5 m in Israel. Audi recommends that you only use cables approved by Audi.

## (i)

#### Note

The mains cable with mains connector for industrial power outlets and the operating unit of the Audi charging system are specially matched. Changing the mains cable to a different type of connector can reduce the charging capacity of the entire system. Factors influencing the charging capacity here are the limited power transmission (electrical capacity) per phase and the number of phases available.

#### Clip wall mount

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive and clip wall



Fig. 93 Clip wall mount: Hooking in Audi charging system

#### Hooking in the charging system

- ► Hook the operating unit into the retainers on the clip wall mount, first at the bottom, then at the top.
- ► Press the operating unit back in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 93 so that it engages.
- Wind the length of cable you don't need around the charging connector mounting 1 when you are not charging the high-voltage battery.
- ▶ Plug the mains cable into the power outlet ②.
- After charging, you can hook the vehicle charging connector into the charging connector mounting 1.

#### Unlocking/locking the Audi charging system

► Use the enclosed key to unlock/lock the Audi charging system as required (locked: ④, unlocked: ⑤).

#### Removing the Audi charging system

- ► Unplug the mains cable connector from the power outlet ②.
- ► Unwind the cable from the vehicle charging connector (1).
- ► To release the operating unit from the holder, press the locking mechanism (3) upwards.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

Please observe the safety information in the fitting instructions for the clip wall mount.

## Towing a trailer

# Driving the vehicle with a trailer or caravan

#### General notes

If the car is supplied with a factory-fitted towing bracket it will already have the necessary technical modifications and meet the statutory requirements. When towing a trailer or caravan, always observe the statutory requirements and follow the manufacturer's instructions for operation and driving.

Towing a trailer or caravan affects the energy consumption, performance and wear of the vehicle. It also requires a higher degree of concentration on the part of the driver.

If a towing bracket is to be fitted after the car is purchased, this must be done according to the instructions of the towing bracket manufacturer ⇒ page 144.



#### WARNING

Never carry passengers in a trailer – danger to life!

#### Points to check before towing

#### Trailer weights

Never exceed the maximum permitted trailer weights ⇒ page 321.

If you do not load the trailer up to the maximum permitted trailer weight, you can then climb correspondingly steeper gradients.

The maximum trailer weights listed are only applicable for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level. With increasing altitude the engine power and therefore the car's climbing ability are impaired because of the reduced air density, so the maximum trailer weight has to be reduced accordingly. The weight of the car and trailer must be reduced by about 10 % for every further 1000 m (or part thereof). This figure refers to the combined weight of the (loaded) vehicle and (loaded) trailer.

#### Draw bar weight

The vertical load exerted by the trailer draw bar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed the maximum weight specification.

In the interests of road safety, Audi recommends that you always use the maximum draw bar weight without exceeding it. You can achieve this, for example, by distributing the trailer load correctly. If the draw bar weight is too low, the trailer's handling will be affected.

If the maximum permitted draw bar weight cannot be obtained, e.g. when using small or light trailers, statutory regulations require that the draw bar weight must be at least 4 % of the actual trailer weight (for single-axle trailers or twin-axle trailers with an axle spacing of less than 1.0 m).

You can determine the draw bar weight e.g. using a weighing machine, bathroom scales or a public weighing station.

You can find the maximum draw bar weight for your vehicle in the registration documents or on ⇒ page 321.

#### Distributing the load

The vehicle's handling can be impaired if the load is poorly distributed. Load the trailer according to the following criteria as far as possible:

- Objects should preferably be stowed in the luggage compartment. The vehicle load should be as heavy as possible and the trailer load as light as possible.
- Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are as near to the axle as possible.
- Objects must be secured to prevent them from sliding about.
- Where possible, operate the trailer with the maximum permitted draw bar weight.

#### Stabiliser

Swaying and pitching can be reduced by attaching an extra stabiliser to the trailer. Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a stabiliser. The stabiliser can be purchased and installed at a qualified workshop.

Clean and grease the ball joint before using a trailer without a stabiliser.

#### Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer or caravan places a heavier load on the engine and cooling system. Please make sure that there is enough coolant in the cooling system.

#### **Tyres**

Check the tyre pressures on your car, and adjust for "full load" conditions (refer to the sticker listing the tyre pressures)  $\Rightarrow$  page 281. It may also be necessary to adjust the tyre pressures on the trailer according to the recommendations of the trailer manufacturer.

At low outside temperatures, both the towing vehicle and the trailer should be fitted with winter tyres.

#### **Exterior mirrors**

Check whether you can see enough of the road behind the trailer with the standard exterior mirrors. If this is not the case you should have additional mirrors fitted. Adjust the mirrors to give sufficient vision to the rear.

#### **Exterior lights**

Before starting a journey, check all the trailer lights with the trailer hitched up.

The headlight range control automatically adjusts the range of the headlight beam.

If the indicator lamp & flashes, the turn signals are on in towing mode. If a turn signal bulb on the trailer or vehicle fails in towing mode, the indicator lamp does not flash twice as fast to indicate the bulb failure.

#### Power supply

When you switch off the ignition, the power supply to the trailer is not interrupted as long as the energy management system does not intervene.

#### Towing bracket

Check that the coupling meets the relevant country-specific regulations and is not worn.

#### Trailer brake

If your trailer has an overrun brake, it must be correctly adjusted and function correctly.

#### **CAUTION**

Retrofitted parts, in particular attachments fitted to the ball joint of the towing bracket, can cause damage. If any damage occurs, you should have the equipment checked by a qualified workshop.

## (i)

#### Note

- Use wheel chocks when parking on a gradient if the trailer is carrying a load.
- Audi recommends having the car serviced between the normal inspection intervals if it is used frequently for towing a trailer.
- Avoid towing a trailer or caravan while running the vehicle in.

### Trailer stabilisation system<sup>1)</sup>

Applies to: vehicles with towing bracket and trailer stabilisation system

The trailer stabilisation system, which is integrated in the electronic stabilisation control (ESC), helps to reduce the risk of the trailer skidding at speeds over approx. 65 km/h. Please refer to the description of the ESC ⇒ page 118 for information on how the system works. Please also refer to the notes on  $\Rightarrow$  page 138 and  $\Rightarrow$  page 140 to ensure that the trailer stabilisation system is functional.

### WARNING

- The ESC and trailer stabilisation system cannot defy the laws of physics. Always bear this in mind, especially when the trailer is light.
- It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road and traffic conditions. Do not let the trailer stabilisation system



3Y0012720AE

Not available on vehicles for some markets.

tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.

- The trailer stabilisation system is not always able to detect if the trailer is swaying and may therefore not intervene. In this case apply the vehicle's brakes and avoid unnecessary steering input.
- A trailer can still "jack-knife" on slippery roads with little grip, even if the towing vehicle is equipped with the trailer stabilisation system.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity may even tip over before they start to sway sideways.
- Try to avoid towing a loaded trailer with an unladen vehicle. If this cannot be avoided, drive extra slowly to allow for the unbalanced weight distribution.
- If you are not towing a trailer, but the trailer socket is being used (e.g. for an illuminated bicycle rack), the trailer stabilisation system may be activated automatically in extreme driving conditions.



#### Note

The functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.

#### Driving with a trailer or caravan

Driving with a trailer always requires extra care.

#### Speed

Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. If the trailer has a stabiliser, you can drive up to 100 km/h. Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

The stability of the car and trailer is reduced with increasing speed. For this reason it is advisable not to drive at the maximum permissible top speed in unfavourable road, weather or wind conditions. This applies especially on a downhill gradient.

#### Gradient

When driving down the start of a gradient, the trailer may begin to sway sooner than it would on a level road. If the trailer starts to sway even slightly, you can stabilise it by immediately applying the brakes firmly. Never try to stop the swaying by accelerating further.

Conventional power unit: Shift to a lower gear before the gradient in order to take advantage of the engine braking effect  $\Rightarrow \triangle$ .

Plug-in hybrid drive: Reduce your speed and use the recuperation braking effect  $\Rightarrow$  page 105 to take the load off the brakes  $\Rightarrow \land$ .

#### **Braking**

When using a trailer with an overrun brake, apply the brakes gently at first and then firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking.

#### Coolant temperature

Keep an eye on the coolant temperature gauge ⇒ page 16, especially in hot weather and when climbing long hills. Remember to shift to a higher gear in good time.

#### Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)

The ESC – in particular in conjunction with the trailer stabilisation system ⇒ page 139 – makes it easier to stabilise a trailer if it starts to skid or sway. You should therefore keep the ESC switched on at all times.



#### WARNING

Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat and will considerably reduce the effectiveness of the brakes. It will increase the braking distance and could cause the brake system to fail.

#### Rear carrier systems

When using rear carrier systems (e.g. bicycle racks) on the towing bracket, it is important not to exceed the maximum load.

The total weight of the rear carrier system and its load must not exceed 75 kg for this vehicle.

However, it is also important to observe the maximum permissible load for the rear carrier system.

The greater the distance from the towing bracket, the smaller the maximum permissible load on the rear carrier system. For this reason, you should secure heavy objects as near as possible to the towing bracket.

Note the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the rear carrier system.

Please make sure that the rear carrier system is approved for use on your vehicle.



#### WARNING

The use of an unsuitable rear carrier system could cause severe damage to the towing bracket. The towing bracket could then break and cause an accident.



#### Note

Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a rear carrier system.

## Removable towing bracket

#### Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket



Fig. 94 Luggage compartment: Stowing the towing bracket

Special care is required when fitting and removing the towing bracket.

The removable ball joint attachment for the towing bracket is stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

The ball joint can be fitted and removed by hand.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

Never use tools of any kind when fitting and removing the ball joint. This could damage the mechanism which locks the ball joint in place and impair its safety – risk of accident!

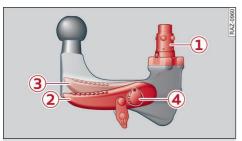
## (i)

#### Note

- Do not attempt to modify or repair the ball joint or other towing bracket components.
- Should you have any difficulties when using the towing bracket, or suspect that it is not fitted properly, contact a qualified workshop.
- Before setting off, always check that the ball joint is secured properly ⇒ page 143.
- Never disengage the ball joint with the caravan / trailer still hitched or with a bicycle rack or similar accessory still attached.
- It is advisable to remove the ball joint when you are not towing a trailer. Check whether the plug is properly inserted in the mounting fixture.
- The ball joint must be removed if you intend to clean the car with a steam cleaning attachment. Make sure that the plug is properly inserted in the mounting fixture.
- For installation and removal of the ball joint Audi recommends using the gloves provided for this purpose.

#### Fitting the ball joint (step 1)

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket



**Fig. 95** Removable towing bracket: Ball joint with spring in "ready" position



**Fig. 96** Removable towing bracket: Setting the spring mechanism to the "ready" position

## Make sure the ball joint is clean and undamaged

# The ball joint can only be installed if the internal spring mechanism is in the "ready" position

► Check whether the operating lever is in the "ready" position (2).

## Setting the spring mechanism to the "ready" position (if required)

If the operating lever is in the top position (3), it must be moved to the "ready" position.

► Insert the key ④ in the lock and turn it until the eye on the key cap is facing upwards. Ensure that the key remains in the same position while bringing the operating lever into the "ready" position; otherwise it will not be possible to move the operating lever. ► Hold the neck of the ball joint with your left hand. Press the locking pin ⑤ all the way in with your right hand and, at the same time, push the operating lever forcibly downwards ⑥ until it locks in position ⇒ ♠.

Continued  $\Rightarrow$  page 142, Fitting the ball joint (step 2).

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- It is important to keep the mounting fixture clean. Otherwise the ball joint may fail to engage securely (accident risk).
- If it is not possible to set the spring mechanism to the "ready" position as described above, please contact a qualified workshop and, for safety reasons, do not use the ball joint.

#### Fitting the ball joint (step 2)

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket



Fig. 97 Area below rear bumper: Pulling out plug



Fig. 98 Area below rear bumper: Inserting ball joint

- ► Remove the plug from the mounting fixture ⇒ *Fig.* 97.

- ▶ With the spring mechanism in the ready position, insert the ball joint into the mounting fixture ⇒ Fig. 98 and push it upwards in the direction indicated (arrow) ⇒ ⚠. The spring mechanism should then engage automatically with an audible click.
- ► Lock the ball joint by turning the key ④

  ⇒ page 142, Fig. 95 downwards.
- ► Remove the key.
- ▶ Press the cover cap onto the lock.

Continued  $\Rightarrow$  page 143, Fitting the ball joint (step 3).

## $\Lambda$

### WARNING

To avoid injury, keep your hands away from the operating lever when inserting the ball joint in the mounting fixture.

#### Fitting the ball joint (step 3)

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket

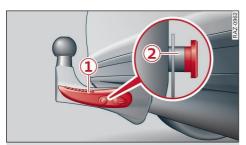


Fig. 99 Removable towing bracket: Safety check



Fig. 100 Rear bumper: Socket and eye for safety cable

- Check that the operating lever 1 is in the top position and that it cannot be moved downwards.
- ► Check that the green marking on the locking pin ② for the operating lever is visible. If you

- attempt to press in the locking pin, you should feel strong resistance from the spring.
- Check that the ball joint is locked and the key is removed.
- Make sure that the ball joint fits tightly in the mounting fixture (try moving it about to check).
- ► Swivel the socket (3) downwards.
- ► Hitch up the trailer or the rear carrier system to the towing bracket.
- ▶ Plug in the connector of the trailer or rear carrier system at the socket.
- When you hitch a trailer up to your vehicle, hook the safety cable into the eye (4) on the towing bracket.



#### WARNING

To avoid accidents, the towing bracket must not be used if any one of the requirements listed above is not met. If this is the case, the ball joint must be fitted again properly ⇒ page 142. Please contact a qualified workshop in the event of a technical fault.



#### Note

The eye (4) on the towing bracket is intended only for securing the safety cable of the trailer.

#### Removing the ball joint

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket

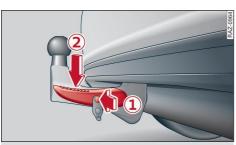


Fig. 101 Removable towing bracket: Removing the ball joint



Fig. 102 Area below rear bumper: Fitting the plug

Before you remove the ball joint, fit the grease cap back on.

- ▶ Insert the key ④ ⇒ page 142, Fig. 95 in the lock and turn it until the eye on the key cap is facing upwards. Ensure that the key remains horizontal while releasing the spring mechanism; otherwise it will not be possible to move the operating lever.
- ► Hold the neck of the ball joint with your left hand. Press the locking pin ① all the way in with your right hand and, at the same time, push the operating lever ② downwards until it locks in position.
- ► Pull the ball joint down and out of the mounting fixture.
- ▶ Insert the plug into the mounting fixture  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 102,  $\Rightarrow$   $\bigwedge$ .
- ➤ Stow the ball joint attachment in clean condition under the floor panel in the luggage compartment ⇒ page 141, Fig. 94. Secure the ball joint with the belt.

## ♠ WARNING

Make sure that the plug is properly fitted in the mounting fixture for the towing bracket. Otherwise the ball joint may fail to engage securely the next time it is attached if dirt has accumulated in the mounting fixture.

#### Installation dimensions and retrofitting

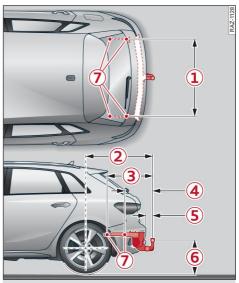


Fig. 103 Towing bracket: Installation dimensions and points

The towing bracket is bolted to the body at the securing points 7.

Installation dimensions (mm)	
1047	<b>4</b> 347
2 A3 Saloon: 1039	<b>(5)</b> 65 (min.)
2 A3 Sportback: 887	
<b>3</b> 567	<b>6</b> 350 - 420

The values given for the distance between the rear vehicle overhang and the centre of the ball on the towing bracket ② are nominal values without tolerances. The dimensions may vary depending on the suspension combination fitted.

The distance between the road surface and the centre of the ball on the towing bracket (6) applies to the loading condition in the type

approval according to UN-R55 (ECE). This dimension must not be smaller or larger than the value specified. The dimension may vary on vehicles categorised as M1G in the type approval.

Please contact a qualified workshop to find out whether your vehicle can be retrofitted with a towing bracket.

Your qualified workshop will have all the details on retrofitting a towing bracket.

#### WARNING

- If a towing bracket is retrofitted, the installation should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- A towing bracket that is not fitted properly constitutes an accident risk.
- For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.

#### CAUTION

- If the connector socket is not fitted correctly, this could cause damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Particularly in high outside temperatures, it is not possible to drive up long steep gradients without a suitable cooling system. there is a risk of damaging the engine.

## **Driver assist systems**

### General notes

#### Safety precautions

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- As the driver, you always have full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. The assistance systems cannot replace the full concentration of the driver. Always devote your full attention to the road and the traffic situation, and be prepared to intervene at any time.
- Only use the assistance systems in situations where it is safe to do so. Always adjust your driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres - risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
- The assistance systems are only able to react as intended when the sensors and cameras function without restrictions. Please observe the notes on the sensors and cameras ⇒ page 147.



#### i Note

- Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations, particularly with regard to the driver's responsibilities, as well as the permitted driving speeds, parking positions, position of the wheels, distance between vehicles, forming a lane for emergency vehicles, etc. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- You can cancel the steering/braking input from the system by firmly applying the brakes yourself, pressing the accelerator firmly, turning the steering wheel or deactivating the assistance system in question.
- Always check the current settings of the assistance systems before setting off. The settings might have been altered by someone else.

#### System limitations

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- The assistance systems cannot overcome the laws of physics; in some situations it may not be possible to prevent a collision.
- It is possible that the warnings, notifications or warning lamps may not be displayed or activated in time/at the appropriate time, e.g. if a vehicle is approaching very quickly.
- The corrective steering/braking input from the assistance systems may not be sufficient in some cases, or there may be no input from the systems at all. Be prepared to assume control at all times.



#### Note

- The technology which enables the systems to detect the vehicle's surroundings is subject to certain limitations; as a result, the systems may not warn the driver or intervene in time/at the appropriate time. In addition, it is possible that the assistance systems may misinterpret driving manoeuvres and give a warning to the driver as a result.
- Non-standard road conditions, such off-road terrain, unsealed or gravelly roads, or roads with heavy cambers or deep ruts, may prevent the system from functioning as expected.
- The systems may not function as expected in unpredictable traffic situations such as in turning lanes, at blind exits, in roadwork areas, in case of restricted vision at steep hill crests or valleys, at intersections, at toll gates or in city traffic.
- The ability of the systems to detect the vehicle's surroundings can be affected, for example, by vehicles travelling in front, rain, snow, heavy road spray or adverse light.
- In towing mode, some assistance systems may be restricted, unavailable or not react as usual. Please refer to the notes on towing a trailer ⇒ page 138.
- The function that detects the driver's hands on the steering wheel may be limited if you

- are wearing gloves. The steering assistance systems may prompt you to take over the steering more frequently as a result.
- Equipment or accessories fitted on the steering wheel may restrict the function of the steering assistance systems. In addition, the frequency with which the steering assist systems prompt you to take over the steering may differ.

## Sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings

#### Areas covered by sensors and cameras

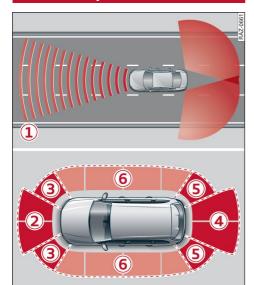


Fig. 104 Areas covered by sensors

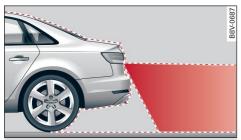


Fig. 105 Areas covered by reversing camera

The assistance systems evaluate the data from different sensors and cameras installed in the vehicle. Do not use the assistance systems if the area around the sensors and cameras or the underbody has been damaged. This can impair the function of the sensors and cameras or cause malfunctions. Have the systems checked by a qualified workshop.

#### Radar sensors

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the area in front of and behind the vehicle can be detected ⇒ Fig. 104 (1).

The radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle.

#### Ultrasonic sensors

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, ultrasonic sensors may be used to depict various areas on the MMI  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 104.

The range of the areas displayed depends on the position of the ultrasonic sensors:

- 2 Approx. 1.20 metres
- (3) Approx. 0.90 metres
- 4 Approx. 1.60 metres
- (5) Approx. 0.90 metres
- 6 Approx. 0.90 metres

The side area (6) is detected and analysed as the vehicle is moving past. When you switch the ignition off and on again or open the door, or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while, the ambient surroundings may have changed. In this case, that area will be displayed in black until the area has been scanned and evaluated.

#### Cameras

Only use the camera image on the display to assist you if the picture is clear and discernible. Please also note that the view on the display is enlarged and distorted. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different on the display, or may be depicted inaccurately.

The reversing camera is only able to detect the area shown in red  $\Rightarrow$  *Fig. 105*. Only this area is shown on the centre display  $\Rightarrow$   $\triangle$ .

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

## (!) CAUTION

- Some objects may disappear from the sensors' field of vision as the vehicle approaches, even if they were originally detected by the system.
- In some cases, the sensors and cameras may only have a limited capacity to detect or display certain objects:
  - Objects positioned above the area covered by the sensors and cameras, such as the bumpers of parked cars, partially opened garage doors or suspended objects
  - Low obstacles
  - Narrow objects, such as chains, trees, posts or fences
  - Protruding objects, such as trailer draw hars
  - Objects with certain surfaces and structures, such as fabrics

## (i) Note

- The sensors and cameras and their surrounding area must never be covered as this can impair the function of the systems that depend on them. Please ensure that the sensors and cameras are clean and kept free of snow, ice and any other deposits. Do not use accessories or apply stickers, etc. within a sensor's or camera's range of vision.
- When replacing a factory-fitted front number plate holder, the new holder must be of the same size and material as the original one. On vehicles without a factory-fitted

- front number plate holder, a holder must not be fitted in the front area, as this can impair the function of the vehicle's systems.
- Poor light or visibility (for instance when entering a tunnel), or glare from reflecting objects, etc. may restrict the function of the sensors and cameras.
- External ultrasonic sources, such as from other vehicles, may interfere with the sensors.
- The areas covered by the sensors ⇒ Fig. 104 and cameras ⇒ Fig. 105 are examples and do not represent the range to scale.

#### Positions of sensors and cameras



Fig. 106 Front area: Sensors and cameras

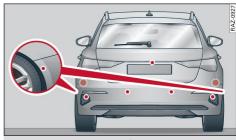


Fig. 107 Rear area: Sensors and cameras

#### Front area

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be fitted:

- Camera behind the windscreen
- Surround view cameras on the exterior mirrors
- Surround view camera at the front in the radiator grille
- Ultrasonic sensors at the front and sides of the vehicle

- Radar sensor at the front in the centre of the radiator grille

#### Rear area

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be fitted:

- Reversing camera in the boot lid
- Radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle
- Ultrasonic sensors at the rear and sides of the vehicle



- The positions of some sensors may differ slightly depending on the vehicle's equipment.
- Some of the sensors are installed underneath parts of the vehicle and cannot be seen from outside.

# Driver information

# Speed warning function

#### Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

The speed warning function can help the driver keep below a pre-set maximum speed. To do this, a warning threshold can be set on the MMI.

As soon as the speed goes slightly above the set value, the speed warning system informs the driver via a message in the instrument cluster and a warning tone. The message disappears as soon as the speed drops back below the stored highest speed.

You are recommended to store this speed limit warning if you wish to be reminded of a particular speed limit. This could be when driving in countries with general speed limits, or if you need to keep below a particular speed when winter tyres are fitted, etc.

## (i) Note

- Whether or not you use the speed warning function, it is vital to check the road speed with the speedometer and to observe the statutory speed limits for the country in which you are driving.
- On vehicles for some markets, the speed warning function warns you when you reach a factory-set speed.

#### Setting speed limit warning

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Driver assist > Speed warning.

#### **Driver messages**

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function



The set speed has been exceeded.

# Camera-based traffic sign recognition

#### Description

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

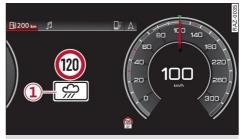
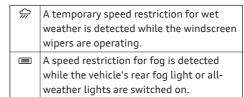


Fig. 108 Instrument cluster: Traffic sign recognition

The traffic sign recognition system displays traffic signs detected by the front camera in the instrument cluster and on the head-up display\*. Data from the navigation system are also factored into the information displayed. By interpreting the data, the system is able to display the speed limit even on roads without speed limit signs. Up to three traffic signs can be displayed simultaneously in the instrument cluster. The status line shows the speed limit which currently applies. You can choose not to show the information on the head-up display\* ⇒ page 29.

In cases where the system is able to detect particular types of restrictions (1), these are displayed under the following conditions:





A speed restriction applying at certain times of day has been detected and corresponds to the time displayed in the instrument cluster.



The vehicle is towing a trailer and the Automatic trailer recognition option is activated on the MMI. In this case, traffic signs applying to vehicles towing trailers are displayeda).

a) Applies to factory-fitted towing brackets only

#### Restrictions

The traffic sign recognition system is not available in all countries. It is also subject to certain inherent restrictions and may be partially or completely unavailable in the following situations:

- If visibility is impaired by snow, rain, fog or heavy road spray.
- In dazzling light, e.g. from the sun or oncoming traffic.
- At high speeds.
- If the camera's range of vision ⇒ page 147 is impaired, e.g. by dirt or stickers. Notes on cleaning ⇒ page 286
- If the traffic signs are partially or completely obscured, e.g. by trees, snow, mud or other vehicles.
- If traffic signs deviate from their standard appearance.
- If traffic signs are damaged or bent.
- If matrix traffic signs are mounted on overhead gantries.
- If traffic signs or routes have changed and the navigation data are out of date.
- If the system detects a speed sticker on a slowmoving vehicle (such as a heavy goods vehicle).

#### WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- Under adverse conditions, the traffic sign recognition system may misinterpret or fail to detect traffic signs. It is therefore possi-

ble that the speed limit display may occasionally be unavailable or even incorrect.



- The traffic sign recognition system does not adjust the speed of your vehicle to the speed limits.
- The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. For example, if 50 is displayed on the instrument cluster, this may signify mph or km/h, depending on the country.

#### Operation

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

#### Calling up the traffic sign recognition

▶ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > Traffic signs.

### Setting the traffic sign based speed warning

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Driver assist > Speed warning.

You can then set a warning threshold. During any period in which you exceed the warning threshold, the speed limit currently detected will be shown on the display with an exclamation mark and will flash briefly.

#### Settings related to towing a trailer<sup>1)</sup>

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Driver assist > Speed warning > Trailer.

#### Displaying signs for trailers

Important: The automatic trailer recognition must be activated.

You can display speed limits which apply specifically to vehicles towing a trailer.

#### Setting the maximum speed for a trailer

You can set the maximum speed permitted for your type of trailer. If you do not enter a value or enter a value greater than the legal speed limit,

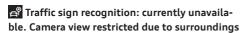


Applies to factory-fitted towing brackets only

the system will show the maximum national speed limit for vehicles towing a trailer.

#### **Driver messages**

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition



The camera view is obstructed. Clean the windscreen.

# Traffic sign recognition: currently restricted.

This driver message appears if the navigation system lacks data, for example on newly-built roads. The limited functionality may temporarily cause fewer speed limits to be displayed (which increases the possibility of an error). If this message remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

#### No traffic sign recognised

No relevant navigation data are available in the area, and no speed limit has been detected.

#### Fault. See owner's manual

The function of the system is impaired; the system will be deactivated. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

# Function currently unavailable. See owner's manual

If the driver message appears on vehicles without camera-based traffic sign recognition, the traffic light information is currently not available; refer to  $\Rightarrow$  page 153.

## Traffic light information

#### Description

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

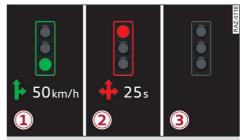


Fig. 109 Instrument cluster: Traffic light information display

The traffic light information function tells you the speed at which you need to travel to cross the next traffic light on green ①, or how long you will be waiting at the next light if it is still red ②. The traffic light information is shown in the instrument cluster and head-up display\* as soon as traffic light data are being received. A grey traffic light symbol ③ may be displayed if the vehicle is in an area with traffic light information but no traffic light signal is being received.

#### General notes

The traffic light information function is subject to certain inherent restrictions and may be partially or completely unavailable in the following situations:

- If the maximum speed limit is exceeded
- If the speed falls below a certain threshold
- If the next traffic light is less than 30 metres away
- If the anticipated waiting time at a red light is less than four seconds
- If no traffic light data are available
- If emergency or public transport vehicles override the regular traffic light cycle
- If traffic lights are under construction or are being serviced
- In the event of warnings from the camerabased traffic sign recognition\*
- If the camera-based traffic sign recognition\* malfunctions or is unavailable
- If the data connection is interrupted

- If the transmission of data is deactivated in the privacy settings
- If the licence has expired

In these cases, it may not be possible to select the menu item and it may be greyed out

### $\wedge$

#### WARNING

- Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings and the distance to other vehicles, even when you are using the traffic light information. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.
- It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. Never allow the information displayed to lead you to disregard traffic regulations or take risks.
- Whether or not you use the traffic light information, it is vital to check the road speed with the speedometer and to stay within the maximum speed limit.
- The traffic light information system does not adjust the speed of your vehicle to the recommended speed in the display.
- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146.



#### i) Note

- At the time of printing, the traffic light information function is planned for introduction in only a small number of towns.
- The availability of the traffic light information is limited.
- The functions depend on how up-to-date the navigation data\* and traffic sign recognition\* data are.
- If incorrect values are supplied by the camera-based traffic sign recognition\* or if the map material on the navigation system\* is out of date, this can cause the data in the display to be missing or implausible.
- Some traffic lights can react to different traffic situations. In this case, the traffic light information display may change abruptly.

- The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- The measurement units and language settings shown in the display are based on the MMI system settings ⇒ page 247.

#### How to use

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

#### Switching the traffic light information on/off

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select
 CAR > Driver assist > Traffic light information.

#### Calling up the traffic light information

► On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > **Traffic signs**.



#### Note

If a different tab or function is selected in the instrument cluster, the traffic light information is displayed in the instrument cluster status line.

#### **Driver messages**

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

#### Fault. See owner's manual

The system configuration may be missing due to a network fault. Restart the system by switching the ignition off and locking the vehicle. Wait a few minutes until the vehicle has shut down completely and then switch the ignition on again.

# Function currently unavailable. See owner's manual

The system is currently out of operation. Check whether any of the following items apply and rectify the cause as necessary:

- The traffic light information is deactivated.
- Data transmission is deactivated.
- The vehicle does not have traffic sign recognition.
- There is no valid licence.

- No traffic light data are available at the current location.

### Rest recommendation

#### Description

Applies to: vehicles with rest recommendation

Within the system limitations, the rest recommendation function can give a warning when the driver needs to take a break.

At the beginning of a trip, the system monitors the driver's general steering style. Using this as a reference, the system continuously compares the current steering input at speeds of between 60 and 200 km/h. If the analysis of the steering movements shows a reduction in attentiveness from the driver, the system recommends a break by showing a message on the instrument cluster and sounding a tone.

#### System limitations

The system may misinterpret the steering input in certain driving situations, such as the following:

- On twisty roads
- On poor road surfaces
- In poor weather
- During performance driving
- When the driver's attention is distracted
- When lane guidance\* is activated

#### Resetting the system

The system is automatically reset in the following situations:

- When you switch off the ignition
- When you release the driver's seat belt and open the driver's door
- When you drive slower than 60 km/h for a while. If you subsequently increase your speed again, the system will re-evaluate the driving stvle.



#### / WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.

- Never drive when you are tired. As a driver you are always responsible for ensuring that you are fit to drive.
- On long journeys, make sure to take adeguate breaks at regular intervals.
- The system cannot always tell if you need a break.
- In certain situations, the system may misinterpret driving manoeuvres and inappropriately recommend a break.
- No acute warning is given if the driver falls into a microsleep.

#### Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with rest recommendation

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Driver assist > Rest recommendation.



#### Note

If you switch off the system, it will be switched on again the next time you switch on the ignition.

#### Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with rest recommendation

## Rest recommended

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears in the instrument cluster, take a break soon.

The message may be displayed again once if necessary.

## Lap timer

#### Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

You can use the lap timer to record and evaluate lap times. The lap timer can be operated using the multi-function steering wheel  $\Rightarrow$  page 15.

#### Calling up the lap timer

▶ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > \begin{aligned}
\begin{aligned

Information is also provided in the head-up display\*.



### WARNING

Please direct your full attention to the road at all times. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, you should only use the lap timer functions in a manner that allows you to maintain control of the vehicle in all situations - accident risk!



#### Note

You can call up information from the onboard computer while the stopwatch of the lap timer is running.

#### Lap times

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

Important: Call up the lap timer first.

#### Recording lap times

- ► To start the lap timer manually, select **Start lap**1 from the menu.
- ➤ To start the lap timer automatically when you drive off, select **Start lap 1 by driving off** or **Start by driving off** from the menu.
- To time another lap after completing a lap, select New lap from the menu. The next lap time starts running immediately.

When you finish a lap, the lap time is compared with the best lap and the difference is indicated by a "-" or "+".

# Interrupting the lap timer (pause) and displaying split times

- ► To pause the lap timer , select **Pause** from the menu.
- ➤ To start the lap timer again, select **Resume** from the menu.
- ➤ To display a split time, select **Split time** from the menu. The split time appears in the instrument cluster for approximately ten seconds. The current lap time continues running in the meantime.

#### Cancelling lap times

The timing of the current lap is cancelled. The lap time is deleted and is not included in the statistics.

► Select Cancel lap from the menu.

#### Resetting the lap timer

► Select **Reset lap times** from the menu.



#### Note

- Up to 99 lap times can be recorded.
- If you interrupt the lap timer to take a break, you can resume recording later on, even if you switched off the ignition in the meantime
- Recorded lap times cannot be deleted individually from the overall results.
- The data recorded in the lap timer remain stored after the ignition is switched off.

#### Lap statistics

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

#### Displaying the lap statistics

The number of laps so far ♠, the fastest lap "+", the slowest lap "-" and the average time "Ø" can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

- ► On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > \begin{align\*} □ button > Lap statistics.
- ➤ To show the individual lap times, scroll the left thumbwheel up/down.
- ► To return to the lap time already started, select: 

  button > Lap times.

#### Resetting the lap statistics

Important: The lap statistics menu must be displayed.

➤ To reset the lap statistics, press the left thumbwheel until the message No lap times have been recorded yet. appears.



#### Note

The lap times for the last 30 laps are shown in the lap statistics. The fastest and slowest lap times from up to 99 timed laps are also shown.

#### **Driver assistance**

# Speed regulation systems

#### Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

The speed regulation systems consist of the cruise control system and the speed limiter.

The cruise control system helps the driver to maintain a speed of approx. 20 km/h and above. The system regulates to the desired speed by braking and accelerating.

The speed limiter helps the driver to avoid exceeding a speed of approx. 30 km/h and above. The system limits the speed even if the accelerator is pressed.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- Always direct your full attention to the road, even when you are using the speed regulation systems. It is always the driver who is responsible for the preset speed and for keeping a safe distance to the other vehicles on the road.
- For safety reasons, the speed regulation systems must not be used in city traffic, stopand-go traffic, on roads with a lot of bends or in difficult or slippery driving conditions (such as ice, fog, loose grit or gravel, heavy rain, etc.) risk of accident!
- When you take a turn-off, drive along a motorway exit lane or pass through roadwork sections, please temporarily switch off the speed regulation systems.
- Only accelerate quickly or use the kick-down feature when the visibility and weather conditions are suitable, and when the road and traffic conditions allow you do so safely.
- Do not resume the programmed cruising speed unless it is suitable for the traffic conditions - this can cause accidents.

## (!)

#### **CAUTION**

 Conventional power unit: Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and select a lower gear. In this way you will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes.

 Plug-in hybrid drive: Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and use the recuperation braking effect ⇒ page 105. This will reduce the load on the brakes.



#### Note

The brake lights come on when the system brakes the vehicle.

#### Switching the system on

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems



Fig. 110 Operating lever: Switching the system on

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- ► Pull the lever towards you to position 1 to switch the system on.
- ► To switch between the cruise control system/ adaptive cruise assist\* and the speed limiter, press button (B) on the operating lever.

The indicator lamp or Low and the corresponding message will appear in the instrument cluster.



#### WARNING

The speed regulation systems may be switched off automatically if a fault occurs in the brake system (e.g. if the brakes overheat) while they are activated.



#### Note

The preset cruising speed remains stored when you switch between the systems.

#### Activating the preset speed/selecting it in advance

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

You can select the preset speed in advance when the vehicle is stationary or activate it when the vehicle is moving.

Important: The system must be switched on.

- ► To select the preset speed in advance when the vehicle is stationary, press the operating lever towards  $(+)/(-) \Rightarrow page 156$ , Fig. 110.
- ► To activate the preset speed, pull the lever towards you to position (1) while the vehicle is
- ► To use the speed at which the vehicle is currently travelling as the preset speed, press button (A) on the operating lever.

The indicator lamp or LIM is displayed in the instrument cluster to indicate the activated preset speed.

Information is also provided in the head-up display\*.

#### Changing the preset speed

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

Important: The system must be switched on.

- ▶ To increase or reduce the preset speed in small steps, briefly push the lever one level upwards or downwards to position  $(+)/(-) \Rightarrow page 156$ , Fig. 110.
- ► To increase or reduce the preset speed in larger steps, briefly push the lever two levels upwards or downwards to position (+)/(-).

### Overriding/deactivating the preset speed

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

You can override or deactivate the preset speed. If you deactivate the system, the preset speed remains stored and you can use it again later.

Important: The system must be switched on and the stored preset speed must be activated.

#### Overriding

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

- ► To override the preset speed temporarily, press the accelerator.
- ► To revert to the preset speed, take your foot off the accelerator.

The cruise control system will be deactivated if you exceed the preset speed for a long time. The indicator lamp in will come on, but the preset speed will remain stored.

Applies to: vehicles with speed limiter

► To override the preset speed temporarily, press the accelerator past the point of resistance (kick-down feature).

The indicator lamp IM flashes for as long as the preset speed is exceeded. The stored preset speed is reactivated as soon as your speed drops below the preset speed.

#### Deactivating

- ▶ To deactivate the preset speed, push the operating lever to position (2) (click stop not engaged) *⇒ page 156, Fig. 110*, or:
- ► Applies to vehicles with cruise control system: Press the brake pedal.

The indicator lamp 7 / LIM will come on, but the preset speed will remain stored.



#### 

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator, as this could override the regulating function and prevent the system from making brake applications.

#### Switching the system off

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

The preset speed is deleted if you switch the system off.

Important: The system must be switched on.

▶ Press the operating lever to position (2) (click stop engaged) to switch the system off ⇒ page 156, Fig. 110. Or:

► Switch off the ignition.

#### **Driver messages**

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

# Cruise control system: currently unavailable.

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, the cruise control system has been deactivated. There is a temporary fault, e.g. overheating brakes. Switch the cruise control system on again later.

# Speed limiter: currently unavailable. See

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, the speed limiter has been deactivated. There is a temporary fault, e.g. overheating brakes. Switch the speed limiter on again later.

## Efficiency assist

#### Description

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

The efficiency assist can help the driver to anticipate the driving route and adopt an economical driving style. Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the system can access data from the navigation system, from the camera behind the windscreen and from the radar sensors.

When you take your foot off the accelerator, the efficiency assist controls the overrun mode with recuperation and coasting phases, depending on the situation.

#### Adjusting the efficiency assist

The efficiency assist functions can be adjusted individually. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Economy tips  $\Rightarrow$  page 19.
- Recuperation  $\Rightarrow$  page 105.
- Predictive messages ⇒ page 159.
- Predictive control ⇒ page 168.

#### **Event symbols**

The following symbols may appear depending on the equipment fitted. The efficiency assist displays each symbol to indicate the event to which it is currently reacting.

Some symbols only appear when **Predictive messages** is activated and some only appear when the **Predictive control** and the adaptive cruise assist\* are activated.

Symbol	Description
	Slow down
*	(predictive messages only)
<u></u>	Speed limit ahead
<u> </u>	(example)
111	Corner or Exit ahead
1:1	
ال_	Intersection ahead
<u> -0€</u>	Roundabout ahead
7	Roundabout anead
. %	Gradient
	(predictive messages only)
	Vehicle ahead
=	(predictive messages only)
	(predictive control only) When the
	warning/indicator lamp lights up in
₹.	green and red, this indicates a differ-
	ence between the speed limit and the
	set speed.



#### WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- In certain situations, the recuperation function can brake the vehicle in anticipation of the route or traffic ahead; however the recuperation braking effect is limited. Always be ready to apply the brakes risk of accident!



#### Note

- The functions depend on how up-to-date the navigation data\* and traffic sign recognition\* data are.
- The system only responds to traffic signs specifying a speed limit.

- The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. For example, if 50 is displayed on the instrument cluster, this may signify mph or km/h, depending on the country.
- Certain functions are not available when you leave the road area mapped on the navigation system.

#### Predictive messages

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

The symbol appears in the instrument cluster display when the efficiency assist is recommending you to take your foot off the accelerator.

Further symbols appear in the driver assist display to indicate which type of event the efficiency assist is responding to ⇒ page 158, Event symbols.

#### Requirements

- The cruise control system\* or the adaptive cruise assist\* must not be regulating the speed.
- The speed is at least 30 km/h.
- The remaining route is long enough for the system to react to the event.
- Automatic gearbox: The automatic gearbox is not in transmission position S.

#### Switching messages on/off

You can switch the system on/off. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > (Charging & efficiency) > Efficiency assist > Predictive messages.

## WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using the efficiency assist. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.

#### (i) Note

- The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- If a route has been entered in the navigation system\*, that route will be used as reference for the tips given. If no route has been entered, the system uses an assumed route plan to predict the situation ahead.
- The type of information displayed can vary depending on the transmission position (on vehicles with automatic gearbox) and on the driving mode currently selected in Audi drive select\*.
- More messages are shown in the Audi drive select efficiency\* mode.

## Adaptive cruise assist

#### How it works

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the adaptive cruise assist may perform the following functions:

The adaptive cruise assist function assists the driver by controlling the road speed and maintaining a set distance to the vehicle in front within certain limits imposed by the system. When it detects a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise assist can accelerate and brake within certain system limitations. When there is no traffic in front. the adaptive cruise assist works just like a normal cruise control system by maintaining a constant speed. When you draw closer to a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise assist matches your speed to that vehicle by automatically applying the brakes, and then maintains a constant distance (which you can adjust in the settings). As soon as it detects no more vehicles in front, the adaptive cruise assist accelerates back up to the cruising speed.

The additional optional lane guidance feature provides steering assistance to help keep the vehicle in the lane. You can select whether the

adaptive cruise assist provides assistance in lane guidance ⇒ page 164, Switching lane guidance on/off.

On vehicles with automatic gearbox, the system can brake down to a standstill in **traffic jams and stop-and-go traffic**, and move off again automatically under certain conditions.

Applies to vehicles with efficiency assist: The **pre-dictive control** system can adjust the speed in response to events ⇒ *page 164*.

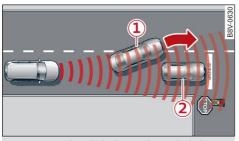
### $\wedge$

#### WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.

#### Restrictions

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



**Fig. 111** Example: Vehicle changing lane and vehicle stationary

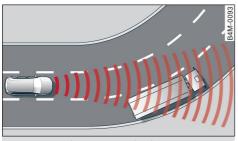


Fig. 112 Example: Driving into a bend

In some driving situations, the adaptive cruise assist functions are restricted and you may need to intervene by, for example, braking the vehicle yourself:

 If a vehicle (1), which has already been detected by the adaptive cruise assist, turns off or

- changes lane and another stationary vehicle ② is located in front of that vehicle, the system cannot always react to the stationary vehicle.
- When driving into a bend ⇒ Fig. 112 and driving out of a bend, the system may react to a vehicle travelling in the next lane and therefore brake the vehicle. You can override this by accelerating briefly.
- The system operates on the basis of information gathered from various sensors and cameras. Vehicles cannot be detected until they are within range and inside the sensors' field of vision ⇒ page 147, Fig. 104.
- In tight bends, a vehicle driving ahead which has already been detected by the adaptive cruise control may no longer be recognised, and the system may accelerate unexpectedly as a result.
- The system will not react to stationary vehicles in the same lane if the system assumes that you can easily steer to avoid the stationary vehicle.
- The system cannot react to stationary obstacles, such as the end of a traffic jam, particularly at high speeds.
- The ability of the system to detect vehicles in front is limited when they are too close, travelling out of line, or moving into your lane.
- Vehicles that are not clearly discernible, e.g. a motorcycle or cyclist travelling in front of you and vehicles with high ground clearance or a protruding load, are often identified late or are not detected at all.
- The system does not react to pedestrians, animals or crossing or oncoming traffic.



#### WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.

#### Display overview

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 113 Instrument cluster: Display on speedometer

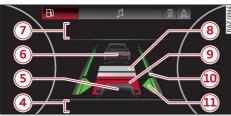


Fig. 114 Instrument cluster: Display showing driver assist system

Warning/indicator lamps on the speedometer (1) - (3) and driver messages indicate the driving situation and settings. More detailed system information is shown on the **Driver assist** display (4) - (1). The displays depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

#### Display on speedometer

The display on the speedometer is not available in all layouts\*.

- Marker for set speed
- (2) Current speed
- (3) Available speed range of the adaptive cruise assist (example)

#### Driver assist display

The symbols are only shown when the Driver assist display is called up on the on-board computer  $\Rightarrow$  page 18.

- Driver messages and settings
- (5) Own vehicle
- 6 Vehicle detected in front
- 7 Driver messages and settings
- (8) Specified distance set

- (9) The distance bars are coloured in red from the bottom up as soon as the actual distance is shorter than the set distance.
- Availability of lane departure warning
- (1) Availability of lane guidance of adaptive cruise assist

#### Indicator lamps

- = The speed/distance regulating function is active. No vehicle has been detected in front. The set cruising speed is being maintained.
- The speed/distance regulating function is active. A vehicle in front has been detected. The system is regulating the speed to maintain a constant distance to the vehicle in front, and will accelerate and brake the vehicle automatically.
- The speed/distance regulating function is active but the vehicle is not ready to drive off. A vehicle in front has been detected. Your vehicle is stationary and will not be set in motion again automatically.
- The speed/distance regulating function is active but the vehicle is not ready to drive off. No vehicle has been detected in front. Your vehicle is stationary and will not be set in motion again automatically.
- The system alone is not able to brake the vehicle sufficiently to maintain a safe distance to the vehicle in front. You must intervene ⇒ page 168, Driver intervention prompt.
- Lane guidance is active.
- Lane guidance is switched on but not active.
- The system limits have been reached. Take over the steering.
- / This warning/indicator lamp appears when you are being warned to take over the steering. Always leave your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times *⇒* page 164.

#### WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.

#### Operating adaptive cruise assist

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 115 Control lever: Operating adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 116 Control lever: Setting a new speed

#### Switching on

➤ To switch the adaptive cruise assist on, pull the lever towards you to position ① until it engages.

# Setting the speed and activating the regulating function

When you switch on the system, you can set your current speed as the cruising speed and activate the cruise control:

- Press the SET button ②. The set speed will be indicated by a marking on the speedometer ① ⇒ page 161, Fig. 113 and displayed in the instrument cluster ⇒ Λ.
- ► Automatic gearbox: You should also keep the brake pedal depressed to store the speed if the vehicle is stationary.
- Manual gearbox: You should keep the brake pedal depressed while the gearbox is in neutral or the clutch pedal is depressed to store the speed if the vehicle is stationary.

You can set any speed between 30 km/h and the maximum of the available speed range  $3^{1)}$   $\Rightarrow$  page 161, Fig. 113.

# Interrupting the regulating function temporarily

The regulating function can be interrupted at any time.

- While driving or when stationary: Push the lever away from you in the direction of the arrow.
   Or:
- ▶ While driving: Press the brake pedal.

The indicator lamp 🛔 will go out.

#### Resuming the regulating function

Once a speed has been set, it can be called up again after the regulating function has been paused.

- ➤ To resume the regulating function while you are driving, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.
- Automatic gearbox: To reactivate the regulating function when the vehicle is stationary, press the brake pedal and pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.
- Manual gearbox: To reactivate the regulating function when the vehicle is stationary, press the clutch and brake pedals and pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.

#### Setting a new speed

- ► Briefly push the lever towards (+)/(-) to increase or reduce the set speed in small steps.
- ► To increase or reduce the set speed quickly, hold the lever towards ﴿/(-) until the marking on the speedometer (1) ⇒ page 161, Fig. 113 reaches the desired cruising speed.

Applies to vehicles with efficiency assist: The **predictive control** system can adjust the set speed automatically in response to events ⇒ *page 164*.

#### Pre-selecting a speed

You can pre-select the speed, even when the adaptive cruise assist is inactive, by moving the lever in the appropriate direction  $\bigcirc$  . To

<sup>1)</sup> Depends on country and engine type

activate the pre-selected speed, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.

#### Switching off

You can switch off the adaptive cruise assist if you will not be using it for a longer period of time.

► Push the lever away from you to position ① until it engages.

The indicator lamp and the set speed will disappear.

#### Vehicles with manual gearbox

The cruise control is available from the first to the sixth gear (when driven in normal engine speed range).

- ➤ You have to change gears in the normal way while driving. The regulating function will remain activated when you change gear or press the clutch pedal. You do **not** need to press the accelerator after selecting a gear and releasing the clutch. The system accelerates the vehicle automatically as appropriate.
- ► In congested traffic<sup>1)</sup>, you will need to operate the clutch and accelerator in the normal way when driving off from a standstill. As soon as you have released the clutch and the vehicle is moving slowly, the system will take over control.

The regulating function may be switched off automatically if you change gears incorrectly or use the clutch pedal improperly.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- The adaptive cruise assist serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking, steering, driving off and controlling the vehicle's speed and distance to other cars.

- Only switch on the adaptive cruise assist in situations where it is safe to do so. Always adjust your driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- When you take a turn-off or drive along a motorway exit lane or through road works, please temporarily switch off the adaptive cruise assist. This is to ensure that the vehicle does not accelerate to the cruising speed in such situations.
- If you press the SET button ② at a speed of less than 30 km/h, the vehicle will automatically apply the minimum speed setting. If no vehicles have been detected in front, the vehicle will automatically accelerate up to this speed.



#### Note

- Always leave your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- If the speed limiter\* is selected after the ignition is switched on, the adaptive cruise assist must have been selected beforehand.
   Press the LIM\* button (3) to select the adaptive cruise assist.
- The speed setting is cleared for safety reasons when you switch off the ignition or the adaptive cruise assist.
- The ESC and traction control system (ASR) are automatically activated when the adaptive cruise assist is switched on.
- The system is switched off/cannot be switched on when the maximum possible road gradient for safe operation has been exceeded.
- If you operate the turn signal to overtake and the adaptive cruise assist concludes that you are intending to make an overtaking manoeuvre, the adaptive cruise assist accelerates before you change lane and reduces the distance to the vehicle ahead.

<sup>8</sup>Y0012720AE

#### Switching lane guidance on/off

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist and lane guidance



Fig. 117 Turn signal lever: Button for lane guidance and lane departure warning

The lane guidance function can be switched on and off. Within certain system limits, it helps the driver to keep the vehicle largely in the centre of the lane.

# Activating/deactivating lane guidance availability

► To activate/deactivate the lane guidance availability, press the button on the turn signal lever ⇒ Fig. 117.

The lane guidance assists the driver by making steering inputs only if the adaptive cruise assist is controlling the vehicle's speed/distance and the availability is switched on.

## Display overview and limits of the lane quidance

The indicator lamps and the arrows (1) in the driver assist display ⇒ page 161, Fig. 114 indicate whether the lane quidance is available.

- Lane guidance is active.
- This warning lamp appears if the system limits have been reached (e.g. if the steering power of the system is insufficient in tight bends). Take over the steering.
- If valights up in white, lane guidance is switched on but not active. This may happen if the following system limits or events occur:
- The system cannot detect the necessary lane markings (e.g. in road works or due to snow, dirt, rain or glare).
- The traffic lane is too narrow or too wide.

- The bend is too tight.
- You have taken your hands off the steering wheel.
- The vision at a hill crest/valley is insufficient.
- The turn signal was activated.

### Take over steering prompt

If no steering activity is detected or the system has reached its limits, the take over steering prompt warns you of this by issuing acoustic and visual signals, e.g. or . Take over the steering and keep your hands on the steering wheel so that you are ready to steer at all times. The system may no longer be active after a short time and may only be available again later.

If the driver does not take over the steering, the adaptive cruise assist will be stopped and, if necessary, the emergency assist will be activated on vehicles which have this function  $\Rightarrow$  page 179.

## $| \Lambda$

#### WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.



#### Note

- Always leave your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- Audi recommends that you use the lane quidance on major roads only.

#### Predictive control

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist and efficiency assist



Fig. 118 Audi virtual cockpit plus: Speedometer with predictive control display

When the predictive control is active, the efficiency assist function adapts the cruising speed setting (1) for the adaptive cruise assist to recognised speed limits and the road layout ahead. When there are no longer any events detected by the system, the adaptive cruise assist accelerates back up to the cruising speed last set by the driver. When the adaptive cruise assist is switched on initially after the ignition has been switched on, the availability of the predictive control is indicated by a driver message.

Symbols indicate which events the predictive control is reacting to ⇒ page 158, Event symbols.

#### Requirements

- The predictive control function must be switched on in the MMI  $\Rightarrow$  page 168.
- The regulating function of the adaptive cruise assist must be on  $\Rightarrow$  page 162.
- The system can only react to speed limits of 30 km/h and higher.

#### Display on speedometer

The display may vary depending on the vehicle equipment and is not available in all layouts\*.

- (1) Marking indicating set speed (i.e. the cruising speed set by the driver or by the predictive control).
- (2) Red band showing difference between speed limit and set speed.
- (3) Grey band showing planned reduction in set speed based on road layout ahead.

#### Overriding the regulating function

The driver can override the road layout response of the predictive control at any time by pressing the accelerator or brake pedal. In addition, the operating lever ⇒ page 162, Fig. 116 can be used to change the speed limit control response.

The predictive control is deactivated if the driver makes a significant change to the speed limit control response. The adaptive cruise control system regulates the speed to match the manually set value.

#### **Driver messages**

If and a driver message with Predictive control are displayed in the event of a fault, some or all of the efficiency assist functions are unavailable.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ page 148 and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

#### WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using the predictive control. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.
- The system does not give way to priority traffic and does not stop at traffic lights risk of accident!
- The speed at which the system drives the vehicle through a corner may not correspond to your own driving style or ambient conditions. To avoid a risk of accident, apply the brakes manually as necessary, and reduce the speed setting in Adaptation to route ahead.



#### (i) Note

- When using the predictive control, the actual road speed may be above or below the maximum speed limit. As the driver you are always responsible for keeping within the speed limit.
- The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- The marking (1) ⇒ page 161 is adjusted to the set speed when a speed limit is detected

- even when the adaptive cruise assist is not regulating the speed.
- When the vehicle is coasting, the actual road speed may occasionally exceed or fall below the set speed.
- The system's control response depends on the driving program set for the adaptive cruise assist/the Audi drive select\* mode selected.
- When you switch on the ignition and subsequently drive onto a motorway with no speed limit, the system initially regulates the speed to 130 km/h<sup>1)</sup>. After this, the last speed set by the driver is applied.
- The system will only regulate the speed at motorway junctions or on slip roads if these are part of the route set in the route guidance.
- If incorrect values are supplied by the camera-based traffic sign recognition\* or if the map material on the navigation system is out of date, this can cause failures or implausibilities in the control response.
- While route guidance is active on the navigation system, the control uses the navigation route as a reference. Implausibilities in the control response can occur when route guidance is inactive or if you leave the route.

#### Setting the distance

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 119 Control lever: Setting the distance

Setting the distance changes the gap between your vehicle and the one ahead. The higher the speed, the higher the distance.

- ► To display the current distance setting, briefly press the rocker switch.
- ➤ To increase or reduce the distance by one level, briefly press the rocker switch again towards (+)/(-).

The newly set distance will be displayed briefly, e.g. indicator lamp . In the **Driver assist** display, a graphic will be shown instead of the indicator lamps ⇒ page 161, Fig. 114. The display provides the same information as the warning/indicator lamps.

When you draw closer to a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise assist matches your speed to that vehicle by applying the brakes, and then maintains a constant distance (which you can adjust in the settings). If the vehicle in front accelerates, the adaptive cruise assist will also accelerate up to the target speed you have specified.

The following distances can be set:

Sym- bol	Meaning
	Time-based distance of approx. 1 second. This setting is equivalent to a distance of 28 metres at a speed of 100 km/h.
	Time-based distance of approx. 1.3 seconds. This setting is equivalent to a distance of 36 metres at a speed of 100 km/h.
	Time-based distance of approx. 1.8 seconds. This setting corresponds to the general recommendations of automobile clubs, traffic authorities, etc. At a speed of 100 km/h, this is equivalent to a distance of 50 metres.
	Time-based distance of approx. 2.4 seconds. This setting is equivalent to a distance of 67 metres at a speed of 100 km/h.
	Time-based distance of approx. 3.6 seconds. This setting is equivalent to a distance of 100 metres at a speed of 100 km/h.

<sup>1)</sup> Depending on country

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.

## (i)

#### Note

- When setting the distance, the driver is responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- The actual distance maintained by the adaptive cruise control may be longer or shorter, depending on the traffic situation and the driving style of the driver in front.

#### Overriding the regulating function

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 120 Control lever: Reducing the distance

Important: The adaptive cruise assist must be switched on.

#### Overriding the regulating function

You can override the regulating function completely, e.g. to accelerate faster or overtake another vehicle.

- ➤ To accelerate manually, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow and hold it in this position or press the accelerator.
- ► To reactivate the regulating function, release the lever or take your foot off the accelerator.

If you are in the **Driver assist** display, the driver message **Overridden** will appear.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator, as this could override the regulating function. The system might not apply the brakes and therefore not regulate the vehicle's speed.

#### **Driving in congested traffic**

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Applies to: vehicles with safe start monitor

Fig. 121 Instrument cluster: Safe start monitor

#### Stopping with the adaptive cruise assist

The adaptive cruise assist also helps you when driving in congested traffic. If a vehicle in front stops, the adaptive cruise control applies the brakes (within the system limits) and holds the vehicle at a standstill.

#### Driving off with the adaptive cruise assist<sup>1)</sup>

Applies to vehicles with automatic gearbox:

If you have been stopped for a few seconds or more, the message will disappear and your vehicle will no longer move off automatically for safety reasons.

<sup>3</sup>Y0012720AE

Not available on vehicles for some markets.

- You can extend the Ready to drive off period by pulling the lever towards you briefly in the direction of the arrow ⇒ page 167, Fig. 120.
- ► To set the vehicle in motion again manually, tap the accelerator with your foot.

#### Driving off with the adaptive cruise assist1)

Applies to vehicles with manual gearbox:

As long as is displayed, the regulating function is active.

► In congested traffic, you will need to operate the clutch and accelerator in the normal way when driving off from a standstill. As soon as you have released the clutch fully and the vehicle is moving slowly, the adaptive cruise assist will take over again.

#### Safe start monitor

Applies to: vehicles with safe start monitor and automatic gearbox

The vehicle may start moving even if it detects certain obstacles while doing so  $\Rightarrow$   $\bigwedge$ . The warning lamp draws your attention to the danger if an obstruction is detected.

If you are in the **Driver assist** display, this is also illustrated ① ⇒ Fig. 121 along with the driver message **Warning!**. In addition, a tone will sound. Your vehicle will then set off more slowly. This can happen in certain situations, even if there appears to be no obstacle.

► If necessary, press the brake pedal to slow down.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- Automatic gearbox: If the Ready to drive off<sup>1)</sup> message appears, your vehicle will start moving even if there is an obstacle between your car and the vehicle in front. Always make sure that there are no obstacles

between your vehicle and the vehicle in front - risk of accident!



#### Note

For safety reasons, the adaptive cruise assist is active only if

- the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- all the doors and the bonnet are closed,
- your vehicle has not been stopped for too long.

#### **Driver intervention prompt**

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 122 Instrument cluster: Driver intervention prompt

You are prompted to intervene manually if the adaptive cruise assist alone is not able to brake the vehicle sufficiently to maintain a safe distance to the vehicle in front. The warning lamp and the driver message **Distance!** draw your attention to the danger. In addition, a tone will sound.

The illustration 1 is only shown when the **Driver** assist display is called up on the on-board computer  $\Rightarrow$  page 18.



### WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.

#### Adjusting adaptive cruise assist settings

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

You can adjust the system individually. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle

<sup>1)</sup> Not available on vehicles for some markets.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Driver assist > Adaptive cruise assist.

#### Available settings:

Applies to: vehicles without Audi drive select

**Driving program** – Depending on the selected driving program and the distance setting, the handling characteristics will range from **dynamic** to **moderate**.

#### Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The handling characteristics are adjusted according to the distance setting and the Audi drive select mode  $\Rightarrow$  page 116.

Store last distance – The last distance is stored after the ignition is switched off. If the distance is not stored, distance (time-based distance of approx. 1.8 seconds) is automatically selected as the default setting.

Predictive control > Use speed limit - The regulation of the cruising speed according to speed limits ahead can be switched On or Off. The optional control setting With tolerance can also be applied. In this case, the actual speed can be above or below the set speed briefly for increased efficiency. This may result in a delay in observing the speed limit.

Predictive control > Adaptation to route ahead – The function for adapting to the route ahead can be switched Off or adjusted individually from Slow to Fast. This setting affects the handling characteristics of the predictive control, e.g. how fast the vehicle will drive through corners.

## (i)

#### Note

The Audi drive select mode **efficiency\*** also affects the response of the adaptive cruise assist. It may no longer be possible to set the **Driving program**.

#### **Driver messages**

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 123 Instrument cluster: Overtake prevention

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the functions of the adaptive cruise assist are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors  $\Rightarrow$  page 148 and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

#### Overtake prevention<sup>1)</sup>

This driver message and the graphic ① of a vehicle detected in the next lane appear when the adaptive cruise assist adjusts the speed to prevent you from overtaking on the right/left¹). The symbols are only shown when the **Driver assist** display is called up on the on-board computer ⇒ page 18.

#### R Please take control!

This message appears, for instance, if the vehicle rolls backwards when driving away on a slight gradient, even though the systems are active. Press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling back or colliding with an object behind.

## Distance warning

#### Description

Applies to: vehicles with distance warning



Fig. 124 Instrument cluster showing current distance



Fig. 125 Instrument cluster showing distance warning

#### How it works

This function measures the distance to the vehicle in front in time units at speeds above approximately 65 km/h. The warning lamp draws your attention to the danger if the vehicle goes continuously below the warning threshold.

#### Driver assist display

The symbols are only shown when the **Driver assist** display is called up in the on-board computer ⇒ page 18 and the adaptive cruise assist\* is not controlling the vehicle's speed/distance.

- 1 Vehicle detected in front
- 2 You can estimate the distance to an obstacle by referring to the markings. Each marking is equivalent to approx. one second.
- Warning threshold setting. The display is coloured from the bottom up, depending on the setting.
- The actual distance is shorter than the set distance and your attention is drawn to the danger.

#### Adjusting distance warning settings

The system can be switched on/off on the MMI and you can set an individual threshold for the distance warning. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select
 CAR > Driver assist > Distance warning.

#### **Driver messages**

If Long or Long is displayed in the event of a fault, the distance warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors  $\Rightarrow$  page 148 and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.



#### WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.



#### Note

- As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- The distance may be below the warning threshold for a short time when overtaking or approaching another vehicle quickly from behind. In this case, no warning will be given. A warning is only given if the distance is below the threshold for an extended period of time.

## Lane departure warning

#### How it works

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

The lane departure warning detects lane markings within certain limits imposed by the system. If you approach one of the detected lane markings, the system can warn you that the vehicle

might be about to cross one of the markings by correcting the steering. The steering wheel may vibrate as well.

The system operates at speeds between approx. 65 km/h and  $250 \text{ km/h}^{1)}$ .

### **↑** WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.

#### Description

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning



Fig. 126 Turn signal lever: Button for lane guidance and lane departure warning



Fig. 127 Instrument cluster: Display showing driver assist system

## Switching lane departure warning on/off

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Driver assist > Lane departure warning. Or:
- ▶ Press and hold the button on the turn signal lever ⇒ Fig. 126 until the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes on or off.

#### Display and warning

- White lines: The lane departure warning system is switched on but not ready to give warnings.
- ② Green line: The lane departure warning system is ready to give warnings on the corresponding side.
- (3) Corrective steering inputs are indicated by the symbol . If the lane departure warning system has to intervene for a long time, a message will appear asking the driver to drive in the middle of the lane. The steering wheel may also vibrate to warn you if the detected lane demarcations are crossed.

The lane departure warning system is ready to give warnings when it detects a demarcation on at least one side of the lane in which you are driving.

When the indicator lamp / lights up, the lane departure warning system is not ready to give warnings. This may happen if the following system limits or events occur:

- The system cannot detect the necessary lane markings (e.g. in road works or due to snow, dirt, rain or glare).
- The current speed is below the threshold necessary to activate the system.
- The traffic lane is too narrow or too wide.
- The bend is too tight.
- You have taken your hands off the steering wheel.
- The vision at a hill crest/valley is insufficient.

#### Take over steering prompt

If the lane departure warning is triggered repeatedly and no steering activity is detected, you will be warned by acoustic and visual signals, e.g. , to take over the steering. Take over the steering.



and keep your hands on the steering wheel so that you are ready to steer at all times. The system may no longer be ready to warn after a short time and may only be available again later.

If the driver does not take over the steering, the side assist will no longer be ready to give warnings and the emergency assist will be activated if necessary on vehicles which have this function  $\Rightarrow$  page 179.

#### Response when turn signals are on

Applies to vehicles without side assist: The system does not warn you if you operate the turn signal before crossing a lane demarcation. In this case, it assumes that you intend to change lanes.

Applies to vehicles with side assist: If you operate the turn signal while the lane departure warning is active, the steering will be corrected noticeably just before you cross the lane demarcation if the side assist detects vehicles approaching quickly or travelling at about the same speed as your own vehicle and judges the situation to be critical. This intervention is intended to keep the vehicle in the lane.

### / WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- The system initiates a corrective steering input to warn the driver that the vehicle is about to leave the lane. As the driver you are always responsible for staying in your own
- In certain situations, e.g. during heavy braking, the system may not correct the steering. Be prepared to assume control at all times.



#### Note

- If the lane departure warning is switched off, it will be automatically activated again the next time you switch on the ignition 1).
- Always leave your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As

- the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- The steering will not be corrected and the steering wheel will not vibrate if the system detects a situation where it is clear that an overtaking manoeuvre is intended.

#### Adjusting lane departure warning settings

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

The lane departure warning can be adjusted to your individual settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Driver assist > Lane departure warning.

Available settings:

The system can be switched on/off.

 Vibration warning - The additional warning through steering wheel vibration can be switched on/off.



#### Note

If the lane departure warning is switched off, it will be automatically activated again the next time you switch on the ignition $^{1)}$ .

#### **Driver messages**

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

If or low is displayed in the event of a fault, the lane departure warning function and the lane guidance function of the adaptive cruise assist are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or the camera may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the camera ⇒ page 148 and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

<sup>1)</sup> Varies depending on country and model

## Audi pre sense

#### Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

The Audi pre sense functions can take action to protect the vehicle occupants and other road users in certain situations within the system limits. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, various Audi pre sense systems may be fitted:

- The Audi pre sense basic system can react in unstable driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle oversteers/understeers), or in the event of emergency/preventative braking.
- The Audi pre sense front system can detect an impending frontal collision and can react by giving warnings, applying the brakes and activating protective functions for the safety of the occupants.
- The Audi pre sense rear system monitors the traffic travelling behind the vehicle and can react to an impending rear-end collision.
- The swerve assist system can help you to steer around an obstacle in critical situations where you take sudden evasive action.
- The turn-off assist system can detect oncoming vehicles in the opposite lane when you are turning off and can react by applying the brakes if they are identified as critical.

#### Audi pre sense protective functions

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Depending on the vehicle's speed and equipment, the following functions may be activated in certain situations:

- Visual and acoustic warnings.
- Activation of hazard warning lights<sup>1)</sup>.
- Reversible seat belt tensioners.
- Automatic closing of windows and panorama sun roof.
- Additional protective functions provided by the individual systems.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.

## (i)

#### Note

- Only some of the protective functions may be activated depending on the hazard situation and the Audi drive select\* mode selected. Some functions may be modified or skipped.
- Audi pre sense may also be restricted or unavailable in situations such as the following:
  - If the occupants are not wearing seat belts.
  - After the ignition is switched on while the indicator lamp is lit.
  - If the vehicle is reversing.
  - If there is a fault in the airbag control unit.
  - The functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.

#### Audi pre sense basic

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense basic

Audi pre sense basic is activated automatically at speeds above approx. 30 km/h. In unstable driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle oversteers/ understeers) or in the event of emergency/ preventative braking, Audi pre sense basic can activate protective functions  $\Rightarrow$  page 173, Audi pre sense protective functions.

The driver message **Audi pre sense** draws your attention to danger.



#### WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.

<sup>3</sup>Y0012720A

<sup>1)</sup> Not available on vehicles for some markets.

#### Audi pre sense front

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense front

In certain situations, Audi pre sense front can give a warning if there is a danger of a frontal collision, and can apply the brakes firmly if necessary. The system uses the data from the front radar sensor and is active at speeds above approx. 5 km/h.

#### **Driving situations**

The system can react to certain events, depending on how quickly the vehicle is travelling.

The system can react to the following events up to a speed of approx 85 km/h:

- You approach a stationary vehicle.
- A pedestrian<sup>1)</sup> or cyclist<sup>1)</sup> is moving in your lane.<sup>2)</sup>

The system can react to the following events up to a speed of approx 250 km/h:

- A vehicle ahead brakes significantly.
- You approach a much slower vehicle from behind.
- You approach a stationary vehicle.
- You approach a stopped vehicle (the system is only capable of reacting if it previously detected that this vehicle was moving in the same direction as you).

#### Advance warning

**Audi pre sense** will appear in the instrument cluster and a tone will sound to warn you of any dangers detected by the system.

#### Brake jolt

In the event of an impending collision with another vehicle, an acute warning may also be given in the form of a brake jolt. In addition, your attention is drawn to the danger in the instrument cluster display. You may need to take evasive action or brake hard to avoid a collision.

#### Automatic brake pressure increase

If you do not brake hard enough in the event of an impending collision, the brake pressure may be increased automatically in certain situations.

#### Automatic braking

If you do not respond to the acute warning, the system can, subject to general system limitations, apply the brakes heavily in order to take the impact out of a potential collision.

If the vehicle has been braked to a standstill, Please take control! will appear in the instrument cluster and you must take control of the vehicle

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- The protection provided by Audi pre sense is still subject to the prevailing physical limits.
   It is a driver assist function and cannot prevent a collision in every situation. The driver must always intervene personally. As the driver you are always responsible for braking in good time. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving this can cause accidents.
- Among other things, Audi pre sense front does not react to stationary/stopped or diagonally crossing pedestrians/cyclists, groups of people, animals, crossing and oncoming traffic or objects such as poles, fences and railbound vehicles.
- Audi pre sense may be restricted or unavailable in corners or after dark.
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres - risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
- If the brakes are applied automatically when towing a trailer, the behaviour of the trailer under braking may be different than usual.

Not available on vehicles for some markets.

<sup>2)</sup> The speed range may vary from country to country.



#### Note

Certain functions of the system may not be available when the ESC is restricted or switched off  $\Rightarrow$  page 119 or when a fault has occurred.

#### Audi pre sense rear

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense rear

Audi pre sense rear uses the data from the radar sensors fitted at the rear corners of the vehicle to calculate the probability of a collision with the vehicle behind, within certain system limits.

The protective functions of the Audi pre sense system may be activated if it detects a collision risk from the vehicle behind.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- Audi pre sense rear does not react to people, animals, intersecting traffic or objects that are not recognised as vehicles.



#### Note

- The functions of the Audi pre sense rear system are deactivated if towing mode is detected. If the towing bracket is not factoryfitted the functions may not be switched off automatically.
- The functions of the Audi pre sense rear system may be deactivated if a fault develops in the side assist.

#### Swerve assist

Applies to: vehicles with swerve assist

The swerve assist can help you to steer around an obstacle in critical situations where you take sudden evasive action. If you take action to avoid an obstacle following an acute warning, the swerve assist will help you by applying a small amount of steering torque to correct your steering angle while you are steering actively. The swerve assist

is available at speeds of between approximately 40 km/h and 150 km/h.



#### WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- The swerve assist does not react to people, animals, intersecting traffic or objects that are not recognised as vehicles.



#### Note

- The functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred
- You will be alerted on the instrument cluster display when the system intervenes.

#### Turn-off assist

Applies to: vehicles with turn-off assist

When you start to take a turn-off to the left<sup>1)</sup>, the turn-off assist can prevent a collision with an oncoming vehicle by applying the brakes and keeping the vehicle in the lane you are in. This function is only available when you operate the turn signals and are driving at less than approximately 15 km/h.



#### WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- The turn-off assist does not react to people, animals, intersecting traffic or objects that are not recognised as vehicles.



#### Note

- The functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
- You will be alerted on the instrument cluster display when the system intervenes.

#### Adjusting Audi pre sense settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

You can switch Audi pre sense and the associated systems on/off or change the settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Driver assist > Audi pre sense.

#### Setting the advance warning

You can set the warning time for the advance warning <sup>1)</sup> (early/medium/late) or switch the advance warning off.

Start by setting the advance warning to **early**. If you then find that the system warns you earlier than desired, you can set the advance warning to **medium**. The advance warning should only be set to **late** in exceptional cases.

## (i) Note

- If the Audi pre sense system is switched off, it will be automatically activated again the next time you switch on the ignition<sup>1)</sup>.
- Switch off Audi pre sense on private roads and if the vehicle is being towed away or loaded onto a car transporter, train or ferry, etc. This prevents the Audi pre sense system from taking action in an inappropriate situation.

#### **Driver messages**

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

If (is is displayed in the event of a fault, the functions of the Audi pre sense system are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Stop the vehicle, switch the ignition off and clean the area in front of the sensors  $\Rightarrow$  page 148.

If the message is still displayed when you switch the ignition back on, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

#### Side assist

#### Description

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

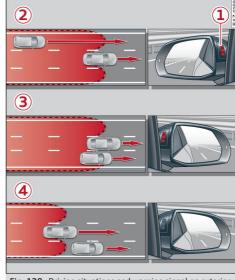


Fig. 128 Driving situations and warning signal on exterior mirror

#### How it works

The side assist function monitors the blind spot and the traffic behind your vehicle and helps you when changing lane. If the system detects an approaching object which it judges to be critical, the warning signal ① lights up on the exterior mirror on the corresponding side of the vehicle.

#### **Driving situations**

The side assist function is active at speeds above approx. 15 km/h and can detect situations such as the following:

2 Your vehicle is being overtaken by another vehicle. The faster this vehicle approaches from behind, the earlier the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.

<sup>1)</sup> Depending on country

- 3 There are vehicles travelling at a similar speed in the next lane. The warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror by the time the detected object is in your blind spot.
- You are overtaking another vehicle slowly. If the speed differential between the two vehicles is not greater than 15 km/h, the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.

#### Information mode

As long as you have not activated a turn signal, the system informs you of objects which it judges to be critical by activating the warning signal on the corresponding exterior mirror. The intensity of the warning signal in this information mode is kept relatively low, so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front.

#### Warning mode

As soon as you activate a turn signal, the system warns you of objects which it judges to be critical by flashing the warning signal on the corresponding exterior mirror.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the warning signal may flash to warn you of objects which the system judges to be critical even if you have not activated a turn signal. This will happen if any of the driver assist systems detect that you are in danger of leaving your lane. The system may initiate a corrective steering input as an additional warning  $\Rightarrow$  page 170, Lane departure warning.

#### System limitations

The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle ⇒ page 148, Fig. 107. The sensors are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle. In certain situations it is possible that the system may react to vehicles in your own lane or two lanes away, or to objects at the edge of the lane. The warning signal then lights up even though there are no vehicles in the critical area. Such situations may include:

- When driving at the edge of your own lane

- When driving in narrow lanes
- When driving through a corner
- If there are high barriers next to the lane

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- The warning signal may not light up in time if other vehicles are approaching very quickly, or if you are overtaking other vehicles quickly.



#### Note

- The warning signals on the exterior mirrors may not be properly visible if tinted foil is affixed to the side windows on the driver's or passenger's side.
- The system is not available in towing mode.
   If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the system may not be switched off automatically. This function must not be used when towing a trailer.
- The area covered by the sensors ⇒ Fig. 128
  is an example and does not represent the
  range of the sensors to scale.

#### Adjusting the side assist settings

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

The side assist can be adjusted to your individual settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Driver assist > Side assist.

#### Available settings:

The system can be switched on and off. If the system is switched on, the warning signals on the exterior mirrors light up briefly every time the ignition is switched on.

Brightness – Always adjust the brightness with the side assist function switched on so that you can monitor the selected setting in the warning signals on the exterior mirrors. Adjust the brightness of the warning signal so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front. Because the display brightness is automatically adjusted in accordance with the ambient light level, it is possible that the display may already have been automatically adjusted to the lowest or highest setting.

#### **Driver messages**

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle  $\Rightarrow$  page 148, Fig. 107 and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

## Exit warning system

#### Description

Applies to: vehicles with exit warning system

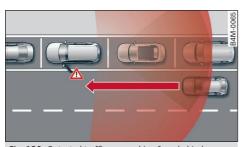


Fig. 129 Detected traffic approaching from behind

#### How it works

The exit warning system can recognise traffic approaching from behind (within certain system limitations) and warn you as you get out of the vehicle  $\Rightarrow$  *Fig. 129*. The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle.

#### Display and warnings

If a door is opened when the vehicle is stationary, the warning lamp ① in the exterior mirror ⇒ page 176, Fig. 128 flashes on the corresponding side of the vehicle and a warning signal is given if another road user in a critical situation is detected. The warning signals will light up if a road user judged by the system to be critical approaches when the door is already open.

The driver messages for the exit warning system are identical to the messages for the side assist ⇒ page 178.

#### Switching exit warning system on/off

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select
 CAR > Driver assist > Exit warning system.

The exit warning lights are activated while the settings are being adjusted.

#### WARNING

- Always watch the road and the area surrounding the vehicle. The exit warning system cannot replace the full concentration of the occupants. The vehicle occupants are always responsible for their own safety and the safety of other road users when opening the doors and leaving the vehicle.
- The exit warning does not react to people and cannot warn you of all approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone.
- The warning signal may not light up in time if other vehicles are approaching very quickly.
- The exit warning does not react to stationary objects or persons.
- The exit warning does not react if the vehicle is so far into a parking space that it is hidden by the vehicles in front and behind.



#### Note

 The exit warning system can remain available for approximately three minutes after unlocking the vehicle and opening the door or after switching off the ignition.

- The system is not available in towing mode.
   If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the system may not be switched off automatically. This function must not be used when towing a trailer.
- The brightness of the exit warning lights cannot be adjusted.
- The area covered by the sensors ⇒ Fig. 129
   is an example and does not represent the
   range of the sensors to scale.

### **Emergency assist**

### Description

Applies to: vehicles with emergency assist

### How it works

The emergency assist can detect if the driver is inactive within certain system limits. The system warns the driver in such cases and, if necessary, takes over operation of the vehicle to bring it automatically to a standstill in the same traffic lane.

The emergency assist is available automatically, irrespective of speed, when the adaptive cruise assist\* with lane guidance is active. If the adaptive cruise assist\* has been switched on but is not active, the emergency assist is only available if the vehicle is travelling at more than approx.

65 km/h and the lane departure warning is ready to give warnings.

If any of the requirements for the adaptive cruise assist or lane departure warning are no longer met, the functionality of the system may be restricted or it may be deactivated automatically.

### Functions of the emergency assist

Phased measures can be taken. The vehicle can be controlled within certain system limits. The measures which can be taken depend on the hazard situation and the equipment fitted in your vehicle:

- Visual and acoustic warnings

This function is not available on all models or export versions.

- Vehicle guidance
- Gradual reduction in vehicle speed
- Infotainment volume reduction
- Seat belt jolt
- Brake jolt
- Hazard warning lights are activated 1).
- Audi pre sense protective functions are activated ⇒ page 173.
- The brakes are applied and the vehicle is brought to a standstill
- The vehicle's horn sounds repeatedly

As soon as the vehicle is stationary, the parking brake is applied, transmission position P is selected, the doors are unlocked and the interior lights are switched on. A few seconds after the vehicle has stopped, an emergency call<sup>1)</sup> will be placed if necessary.

### Display

If / is displayed, for instance, the emergency assist is active.

### Overriding the emergency assist

You can override the emergency assist as follows:

- Move the steering wheel. Or:
- Press the brake pedal. Or:
- Press the accelerator firmly. Or:
- Switch the emergency assist off on the MMI.

When the vehicle is stationary, the emergency assist can be cancelled by moving out of transmission position P or by releasing the parking brake  $\Rightarrow page\ 112$ .

### Switching the emergency assist on/off

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select
 CAR > Driver assist > Emergency assist.

If the emergency assist is switched off, it will be automatically activated again the next time you switch on the ignition<sup>1)</sup>.

### **Driver messages**

If  $\bigotimes$ ,  $\bigotimes$  or  $\bowtie$  is displayed in the event of a fault, the emergency assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors  $\Rightarrow$  page 148 and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.



### WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- The emergency assist is a system which is designed to help (in an emergency only) by taking control of the vehicle and bringing it to a stop.



### (i) Note

Only some of the measures may be activated depending on the hazard situation detected. Some functions may be modified or skipped.

# Parking and manoeuvring

### Introduction

Depending on the equipment fitted on your vehicle, you may be provided with assistance by various parking aids when you are parking and manoeuvring the vehicle.

### Parking aids

The **rear parking aid** gives you an acoustic warning if there are any obstacles behind the car ⇒ page 181.

When you are parking, the **parking system plus** warns you acoustically and visually about obstacles detected in front of, behind and beside\* the vehicle  $\Rightarrow$  page 182.

The **reversing camera** uses the centre display to show a picture of the area behind the vehicle captured by the camera. Orientation lines in the image from the reversing camera assist you when parking and manoeuvring ⇒ page 184.

The **surround view cameras** are an extension of the reversing camera; they provide various views of the area around the vehicle to help you when parking and manoeuvring ⇒ *page 184*.

The **rear cross-traffic assist** can warn you about traffic approaching from either side while you are reversing or leaving a parking space ⇒ page 188.

### Assisted parking

The **park assist** helps you to find suitable parking spaces and to manoeuvre the vehicle into and out of them. The park assist takes over the steering when parking in open-air parking spaces. The driver must still accelerate, brake and change gears as necessary. The driver must always keep an eye on the area around the vehicle and monitor the parking manoeuvre ⇒ page 189.

### Settings

The parking aid functions can be adjusted individually. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Rear volume ⇒ page 181
- Automatic activation ⇒ page 182

- Front/rear volume ⇒ page 183
- Entertainment fader ⇒ page 183
- Trailer view ⇒ page 185
- View ⇒ page 187
- Rear cross-traffic assist ⇒ page 188



### WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.



### Note

To familiarise yourself with the systems, Audi recommends that you practise parking in a quiet location or a car park. The weather and light conditions should be good.

### Rear parking aid

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking aid

#### How it works

The rear parking aid is an acoustic parking system. When the rear sensors (in the rear bumper) detect an obstacle, you are alerted by acoustic signals (beeps). The system is activated automatically when the engine is running and reverse gear is selected.

### Acoustic warnings

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach an obstacle which has been detected in the vehicle's path. A warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle. Stop reversing immediately  $\Rightarrow$  1.

### Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume as desired. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Parking aid.

Available settings:

Rear volume - Volume for the rear zone.

Entertainment fader - The volume of the current audio or video source is reduced when the parking aid is activated.

You will hear a short tone\* each time you adjust the volume.



### WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- Sensors have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.



### **CAUTION**

Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.



- The volume of the warning beeps will be reduced after a few seconds until it is muted if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (but not if the obstacle is closer than 0.30 m). If the tone is muted and the obstacle is closer than before, the tone will sound again. If the tone is muted and the obstacle is further away than before, no tone will sound. Please watch the area surrounding the vehicle when driving off.
- A distance warning will NOT be given if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

## Parking system plus

### Activating/deactivating

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus



Fig. 130 Centre console: Button for parking aid

#### How it works

The parking system plus will help you when parking and manoeuvring the vehicle by providing warnings about any obstacles detected. If an obstacle is detected by the ultrasonic sensors on the vehicle ⇒ page 148, you are informed of this by acoustic and visual warnings.

### Activating/deactivating

Important: The vehicle must be travelling at under 10 km/h.

▶ Press the P<sub>M</sub> button in the centre console.

### Automatic activation

▶ The system is activated automatically when the engine is running and reverse gear is selected.

The parking aid is switched on automatically when the vehicle approaches an obstacle at under 10 km/h if Automatic activation is selected. on the MMI. The acoustic signals are not emitted until the obstacle is well within range of the sensors.

► Applies to MMI: To activate/deactivate automatic activation, select the following from the home screen: CAR > Parking aid > Activate automatically.

### Automatic deactivation

The distance indicator for the parking system plus is deactivated automatically when you drive forwards at over approx. 10 km/h.



### WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.



### **CAUTION**

Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.



### Note

- If the parking aid is switched off, it is only reactivated automatically if one of the following conditions has been met:
- The vehicle is driven faster than 10 km/h.
- The ignition has been switched off and on again.
- The parking brake has been applied and released again.
- Automatic gearbox: Transmission position P has been selected and then another position has been selected.

### Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

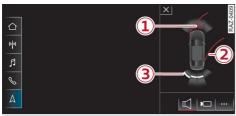


Fig. 131 Centre display: Distance indicator

When the sensors detect an obstacle, you will be alerted by acoustic signals (beeps) and a visual display.

### Visual warnings

The visual warnings on the centre display help you to see the critical area around the vehicle and to estimate the distance to an obstacle.

Red segments 1 represent objects detected within the path of travel. The red lines 2 indicate the anticipated path of travel, depending on

the steering wheel angle. A white segment ③ indicates an obstacle that has been detected outside the path of travel. The closer the vehicle gets to the obstacle, the closer the segments move towards the vehicle in the graphic. At the latest when the penultimate segment is highlighted the vehicle has reached the danger (collision) zone. Obstacles within the danger (collision) zone are shown in red, even if they are beyond the path of travel. Stop moving immediately.

### Acoustic warnings

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach an obstacle which has been detected in the vehicle's path. A warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle. A continuous warning tone will also sound if there is an obstacle less than approx. 0.20 m from the side\* of the vehicle; in this case, you should not drive forward or reverse any further  $\Rightarrow$  (1).

► To switch off the acoustic signals for the parking manoeuvre, press ☐ in the centre display. The acoustic signals will be reactivated automatically the next time the parking aid is activated

### Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume as desired. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Parking aid. Or:
- ► Press on the centre display with the parking aid activated.

Available settings:

Front volume - Volume for the front and side\* zones.

Rear volume - Volume for the rear zone.

**Entertainment fader** - The volume of the current audio or video source is reduced when the parking aid is activated.

### Fault warnings

If Mappears, the sensor in the corresponding area or the loudspeaker is faulty. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

If or law is displayed in the event of a fault. the parking system functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ page 148 and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.



### / WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.



### CAUTION

- Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.
- Applies to vehicles with park assist: In short parking spaces, the parking aid warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.20 m away from the obstacle. Stop moving immediately!



### Note

- The segments in the side zone\* are detected and evaluated as the vehicle moves past. When you switch the ignition off and on again or open the door, or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while, the ambient surroundings may have changed. In this

- case, the side zone\* will be displayed in black until it has been scanned and evaluated.
- The volume of the warning beeps will be reduced after a few seconds until it is muted if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (but not if the obstacle is closer than 0.30 m). If the tone is muted and the obstacle is closer than before, the tone will sound again. If the tone is muted and the obstacle is further away than before, no tone will sound. Please watch the area surrounding the vehicle when driving off.
- There is no rear or side\* distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

### Reversing camera/ surround view cameras

### Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera/surround view cameras

Depending on the equipment fitted on the vehicle, a reversing camera or multiple surround view cameras may be available.

The **reversing camera** assists you by displaying orientation lines when you are parking or manoeuvring the vehicle.

The **surround view cameras** additionally provide a wide range of views showing the area around the vehicle; these can be selected as preferred.



#### WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.

### Activating/deactivating

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera/surround view



Fig. 132 Centre console: Button for parking aid

### Activating/deactivating

- ▶ Press the P<sup>™</sup> button in the centre console. Or:
- ▶ Press ► on the centre display when the distance indicator is shown ⇒ page 183, Fig. 131.

The system can be activated at low speeds, for example when manoeuvring.

### Automatic activation

The system is activated automatically when the engine is running and reverse gear is selected.

#### Automatic deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically as soon as the vehicle exceeds a certain speed when driving forwards.



### WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.

#### Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera/surround view cameras



Fig. 133 Centre display: Approaching a parking space



Applies to: vehicles with trailer view Fig. 134 Centre display: Trailer view

### Visual orientation lines

- ① The orange orientation lines represent the path of the vehicle ⇒ ①. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines are pointing towards the parking space.
- 2 You can estimate the distance to an obstacle by referring to the horizontal blue markings. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 1 m.
- 3 You can see the rear bumper at the bottom of the display.
- You should stop reversing, at the latest, when the red orientation line is bordering on an obstacle.

#### Trailer view

Applies to: vehicles with trailer view

The trailer view  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 134 helps you to position the vehicle in front of a trailer.

- Applies to vehicles with surround view cameras:
   Switch to the Rear view ⇒ page 186, Fig. 135.

You can now position your vehicle in front of the trailer. The orange orientation line ⑤ ⇒ Fig. 134 indicates the anticipated path of the tow-bar. You can use the blue markings ⑥ to estimate the distance to the trailer hitch. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 0.3 m. The width of the blue markings indicates the maximum angle to which the steering wheel can be turned.

### Symbols

Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras

If ♠/♠/ is displayed and the corresponding display area is not available, the camera will not

### Parking and manoeuvring

be available on the corresponding side. The exterior mirrors may have been retracted electrically or one of the doors or the boot lid may be open.

If  $\slash\hspace{-0.6em}$  appears, a system fault has occurred and the corresponding display area is not available. The camera in this area has malfunctioned.

If a symbol remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

## WARNING

- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

## CAUTION

 The orange orientation lines ① show the path of the rear end of the vehicle if you were to reverse using the current steering

- angle. Please note that the front end of the vehicle swings out further than the rear. Please make sure you keep a sufficient distance between the vehicle and any obstacles to make sure that the exterior mirror or edge of the vehicle do not collide with the obstacles.
- Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims
- Only use the views from the camera at the rear of the vehicle when the boot lid is completely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.

## i

### Note

There is no rear or side\* distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. The proximity graphic will switch over to towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

### How to use the surround view cameras

Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras



Fig. 135 Centre display: Surround view cameras

On vehicles with surround view cameras, you can choose from a selection of different views.

### In some countries the gesture is made in the opposite direction. The order of the views may differ. However, the symbols used to identify the views are the same.

### Selecting views

- ➤ To display the whole selection bar, tap on the current view ① or swipe the edge of the selection bar from left to right¹).
- ► To select a view, press ① ⑦ on the centre display or tap on an area on either side of the vehicle<sup>2</sup>).

<sup>2)</sup> Important: The area around the vehicle (camera) must be selected and visible in the side view.

### Settings for the side of the display

The overhead view is shown on the side of the display. You can switch between graphic and camera.

► Select : > View on the centre display with the parking aid activated.

	Symbol/designa- tion	Description
1	Corner view (front) or Display selection bar	This view makes it easier to leave narrow parking spaces and to drive out of exits and intersections where your view is restricted. It displays an almost 180° panoramic view of the area in front of the vehicle.
2	Front view	This view helps you make the most of the space in front of the vehicle when manoeuvring.
3	Overhead view	This view helps you to manoeuvre and position the vehicle precisely. The overhead view is composed from the camera pictures. A graphical image of the vehicle is superimposed on the display by the system $\Rightarrow \triangle$ .
4	Rear view	This view helps you make the most of the space behind the vehicle when manoeuvring. The image from the reversing camera is displayed.
(5)	Corner view (rear)	This view can be helpful when driving out of narrow parking spaces or out of an exit onto an obscured road. It displays an almost 180° panoramic view of the area behind the vehicle.
6	Front tyres	This view helps you to monitor the steering angle and the distance from the front tyres to the kerb while you are parking the vehicle.
7	Rear tyres	This view helps you to monitor the distance from the rear wheels to the kerb while you are parking the vehicle.
8	Steering wheel angle	The red lines show the anticipated path of the vehicle using the current steering angle $\Rightarrow$ ①.

### / WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- The overhead view display is generated using the individual camera images. A graphical image of the vehicle is superimposed on the display by the system. Objects and obstacles above the camera are not displayed.

### !) CAUTION

- Only use the views from the camera at the rear of the vehicle when the boot lid is completely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.
- Please note that the front end of the vehicle swings out further than the rear. Please

make sure you keep a sufficient distance between the vehicle and any obstacles to make sure that the exterior mirror or edge of the vehicle do not collide with the obstacles.

## (i) Note

- Depending on the gear selected, the system will switch automatically between the suitable views (Front view or Rear view). If you change the view manually, the system will temporarily stop switching between views automatically.
- Corner view (front) is displayed the first time you activate the system while in a forward gear.

### Rear cross-traffic assist

### Description

Applies to: vehicles with rear cross-traffic assist



**Fig. 136** Areas covered by sensors for rear cross-traffic assist



Fig. 137 Centre display: Rear cross-traffic assist display

### How it works

The rear cross-traffic assist uses the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle to monitor the area behind and to the side of the vehicle. The system can detect moving objects, such as cars, as they approach the vehicle  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 136. When driving out of a parking space, you are assisted by an MMI display and various warnings.

### **Important**

- The parking aid must be switched on
   ⇒ page 181.
- The vehicle must not be reversing faster than approx. 10 km/h.

### Displays, warnings and braking

Display: The arrows ① only appear when the parking aid is activated. For vehicles with surround view cameras, the camera view must be set to Rear view or Corner view (rear). The arrows indicate the direction from which the intersecting traffic is approaching.

- Acoustic warnings: A tone may sound continuously as an additional signal when you are reversing.
- Automatic brake jolt: If the driver does not react to a warning, a short sharp application of the brakes may also warn against a potential collision with an approaching object.

The warning tone and the automatic brake jolt only occur while you are reversing.

### Switching on and off

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select
   CAR > Parking aid > Rear cross-traffic assist.
   Or:
- Select .... > Rear cross-traffic assist on the centre display with the parking aid activated.

### **Driver messages**

If ♣, ♣ or ≫ is displayed in the event of a fault, the rear cross-traffic assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

### WARNING

- The rear cross-traffic assist does not react to people and cannot warn you of all approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone.
- The system cannot react if objects are approaching very quickly.
- The rear cross-traffic assist does not react if the vehicle is parked parallel to the roadside or is so far into a parking space that it is hidden by the surrounding vehicles.

## (i)

### i) Note

- After an automatic brake jolt, no further brake jolt will occur for the next few seconds
- The functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
- If the rear cross-traffic assist gives an acoustic warning signal, the parking aid may no longer be able to warn you audibly of obstacles it has detected.
- The system is not available if towing mode is detected. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be switched off automatically. This function must not be used when towing a trailer.
- The area covered by the sensors ⇒ Fig. 136 is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.

### Assisted parking

### How it works

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

If your vehicle is equipped with the park assist, the system will help you to find suitable parking spaces. To do this, parking spaces are measured using ultrasonic sensors fitted on the sides of the vehicle.

The system provides assistance with parking while the driver monitors the area around the vehicle with the help of the parking aids, cameras\* and direct vision. The vehicle steers itself.

### $\Lambda$

### WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.

### **Parking options**

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

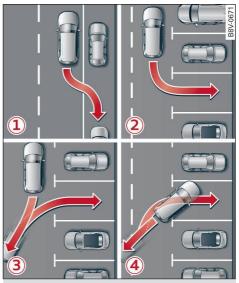


Fig. 138 Overview of parking options

### Options for driving into a parking space

- (1) Reversing into parallel parking spaces.
- Reversing into perpendicular parking spaces.
- 3 Driving forwards into perpendicular parking spaces if you have already driven past them.
- 4 Driving forwards into perpendicular parking spaces if you have already positioned the front of the vehicle in the space.

### Options for driving out of a parking space

1 Driving out of parallel parking spaces.



### Note

You can approach a perpendicular parking space forwards and then activate the system. However, for this purpose the front of the vehicle must already be in the space (4) so that the sensors can measure the space.

### Finding a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with park assist



Fig. 139 Centre console: Button for park assist



Fig. 140 Centre display: Parking space search activated

### Activating the parking space search function

- ► To activate the parking space search function, press the P⊕ button in the centre console, or:
- ► To activate the parking space search function while the parking aid is switched on, press P⊕ on the centre display.

The centre display will show the vehicle looking for a parking space  $\Rightarrow$  *Fig.* 140.

### Looking for a parking space

- Drive slowly forwards past the line of parked cars. For the best parking result, you should maintain a distance of approx. 1 metre to the row of parked cars.
- ► The vehicle first looks for a parking space on the same side of the road. To look for a space on the other side of the road, activate the turn signal for that side or press on the corresponding side next to the vehicle on the centre display.

### Selecting a parking space

When the system finds a parking space which might be long/wide enough for your vehicle, this

space is displayed. The system automatically suggests an option for driving into the space (1).

If there are different options for driving into the space, you can choose one of them manually. Press on one of the suggested options ① on the centre display.

### Starting the parking manoeuvre

A P will appear in the intended parking space 3 on the centre display as soon as the vehicle reaches the correct position. Arrows or symbols on the roof of the vehicle 2 indicate the action required, e.g. braking or change of direction.

- ► Position the vehicle as parallel as possible to the line of parked cars or to the kerb.
- ► Check that the parking space is suitable for your vehicle 

  !!
- ► Start the assisted parking manoeuvre ⇒ page 192.

### Manoeuvring area

The vehicle may swing out during the parking manoeuvre ⇒ ⚠. A driver message may appear if there are obstacles within the manoeuvring area which may impede the parking procedure or constitute a risk (e.g. on the other side of the road). Try driving further forwards and closer to the row of parked cars, as appropriate.

### WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

## 1

### **CAUTION**

 Even parking spaces which the system has identified as being suitable may not have

- been detected correctly. It is the driver's responsibility to decide whether a parking space shown in the display is suitable for the vehicle.
- Certain conditions in and around the parking space (e.g. objects such as trees, posts or road surfaces such as loose gravel, snow or ice) can cause unexpected results when parking.

### i) Note

- You can activate the parking space search function after you have already driven past a parking space (as long as you were driving slowly enough). To do so, press **P**⊕.
- The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) must not be switched off during the parking manoeuvre. If the ESC intervenes, the parking manoeuvre is interrupted.
- You can approach a perpendicular parking space forwards and then activate the system. However, for this purpose the front of the vehicle must already be in the space (4) ⇒ page 189, Fig. 138 so that the sensors can measure the space.
- The park assist systems cannot be used to park the vehicle if a trailer is attached or an electrical connector is plugged into the trailer socket.
- The system is not available when certain other assist systems are switched on.
- If there are suitable parking spaces on both sides of the road (for instance on a one-way street), you can change the direction of the turn signals or press on the corresponding side on the centre display to park on the other side of the road, even if you have already activated the park assist.
- Assisted parking cannot be used in combination with the parking systems to park the vehicle on tight bends.

### Park assist

### How it works

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

Once a parking space has been found, the park assist helps you to drive the vehicle into and out of the space. The park assist steers the vehicle while the driver operates the accelerator and brake pedal and monitors the area around the vehicle. The park assist can be stopped at any time.

### **WARNING**

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
- Do not use the function if the vehicle cannot move freely (e.g. if it is on the jack).
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.



### CAUTION

- Do not use the park assist if you are transporting objects which project beyond the vehicle, if snow chains are fitted or if the parking space is on a slope.
- In certain situations, the park assist will guide the vehicle onto or across the kerb, for instance if other vehicles are parked on the kerb. You should always be ready to take over the steering wheel in order to prevent damage to the tyres and/or wheel rims; alternatively, you can abort the parking manoeuvre.
- When parking the vehicle in a space where there is no kerb. maintain a distance of at least 50 cm to walls and buildings to avoid any damage to the vehicle.



### Note

Always observe the relevant country-specific regulations when using the park assist.

### Using the park assist to park the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

Important: A suitable parking space must have been found and selected ⇒ page 189. The vehicle must be stationary to begin with.

Arrows and symbols on the roof of the vehicle (2) ⇒ page 190, Fig. 140 on the centre display indicate the action required, e.g. braking or change of direction. The park assist automatically steers the vehicle into the parking space while the driver operates the pedals.

- ► After you have been stationary for a moment, check that the direction of travel of your vehicle matches the direction given by the park assist.
- ► Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- ▶ Watch the road. When the road is clear, press the accelerator carefully  $\Rightarrow \bigwedge$ . The maximum manoeuvring speed is approx. 7 km/h.
- ► Follow the instructions on the centre display and the warning tones until the parking manoeuvre is complete.

### / WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- The park assist serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
- The steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injury may result if a person reaches between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.



### Note

You can cancel the direction of travel given by the system before parking by shifting between forwards and reverse gear. The system will then calculate the further path and steering directions for the manoeuvre based on the position of the vehicle.

### Using the park assist to leave a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

If the vehicle is parked parallel to the roadside, you can use the park assist to drive out of the parking space.

Arrows and symbols on the roof of the vehicle (2) ⇒ page 190, Fig. 140 on the centre display indicate the action required, e.g. braking or change of direction. The park assist automatically steers the vehicle out of the parking space while the driver operates the pedals.

- ▶ Start the engine.
- ▶ Press the P⊕ button in the centre console.
- ► Wait until a message appears on the centre display requesting you to specify the direction in which you wish to leave the space: this is needed to start the manoeuvre.
- ► Activate the corresponding turn signal or press on the corresponding side next to the vehicle on the centre display.
- ► Check that the direction of travel of your vehicle matches the direction given by the park assist.
- ► Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- ▶ Watch the road. When the road is clear, press the accelerator carefully  $\Rightarrow \bigwedge$ . The maximum manoeuvring speed is 5 km/h.
- ► Follow the instructions on the display and the acoustic warning tones until the manoeuvre is complete.
- ▶ The procedure is complete when no more manoeuvring is necessary and the specified steering angle is sufficient to drive out of the space. Take over the steering  $\Rightarrow$  1.



### WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.
- The park assist serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
- The steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injury may result if a person reaches

between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.

1

### CAUTION

Take over the steering as soon as you are requested to do so after the system has completed the last manoeuvre, so that the steering wheel remains at the specified angle and is not turned back to the central position.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

### Stopping the park assist

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

The park assist is stopped automatically in the following situations:

- If you switch off the system.
- If you intervene in the steering.
- If the speed becomes too high.
- If the time limit is exceeded.
- If an obstacle is detected.
- If the ESC intervenes.

Take full control of the vehicle and complete the parking manoeuvre manually. Or:

- In some situations you can resume the parking manoeuvre. Press the P

   ⊕ button in the centre console.
- To continue unparking with the park assist, switch the engine off/on. Press the ₱⊕ button.



### WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 146 ff.

### **Driver messages**

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors  $\Rightarrow$  page 148 and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

### **Telephone**

### Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can use a wide range of telephone functions in your vehicle conveniently via the MMI.

The following options may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

- Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth
- Using two telephones
- Using the Audi phone box

### $\wedge$

### WARNING

- According to health organisations, mobile phones may interfere with the function of pacemakers. A minimum distance of 20 cm between the mobile phone aerial and the pacemaker should therefore be maintained.
  - Do not carry a mobile phone in your breast pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  - If you suspect interference, switch the mobile phone off immediately.
- The speech dialogue system\* ⇒ page 30 must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice changes in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!
- Switch off your mobile phones in all areas where there may be a risk of explosion. Remember that these areas may not always be adequately marked. Such places are filling stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles and other places where fumes, chemicals (e.g. from leaking propane or fuel vapours in vehicles or buildings) or large quantities of dust particles (e.g. from flour, wood or metal) could accumulate in the air. This warning also applies to all other places where you would normally switch off the vehicle.
- Today's driving conditions require the full attention of drivers. Please always note the information in the chapter ⇒ page 23, Notes on traffic safety.

## (1)

### CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇒ page 205.



### Note

- The maximum range of the Bluetooth connection is limited to the interior of the vehicle.
- You can find a selection of supported Bluetooth devices in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

### Setting up

### Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile phone during the connection procedure. The mobile phone you would like to connect must not be connected actively to any other Bluetooth device. The MMI must not be connected to more than one mobile phone.

- ► Switch on the Bluetooth function and discoverability on both the MMI system ⇒ page 248 and the mobile phone.
- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE**.
- ► Follow the instructions given by the system. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown after a few seconds.
- ► Press on the desired mobile phone in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
- ► To update the list, press 🗘.

A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be created.

- ► Confirm the PIN on your mobile phone.
- ► Follow the instructions given by the system.
- ► Please note any system queries on the MMI and your mobile phone.

### After connecting successfully

The contacts on the mobile phone are automatically loaded into the MMI. This may take several

minutes, depending on how many contacts are stored on the mobile phone.

Depending on the mobile phone and the type of connection, you can use the following functions:

### Handsfree operation

Important: Your mobile phone must be connected to the MMI via the Bluetooth Hands Free Profile (HFP).

The handsfree system is available for use. Your phone calls will be made via the aerial of your mobile phone.

### Sending and receiving text messages

Refer to  $\Rightarrow$  page 202.



### Note

- Please note any system queries on your mobile phone or the MMI, e.g. whether the phone should connect automatically in the future. On some mobile phones, you may need to confirm the download of your contacts and allow access to your messages separately.
- You can also search for the MMI system via the Bluetooth device search function on your mobile phone.
- Bluetooth devices only have to be bonded once. Any devices that have already been bonded to the MMI system are connected automatically when the Bluetooth function is switched on, the devices are within range of the car and the ignition is on. The mobile phone last connected is given priority.
- You can adjust further settings for connected mobile phones in the Connected devices menu ⇒ page 248.
- The Bluetooth connection between the system and the mobile phone is automatically terminated when you leave the car. Depending on the mobile phone, telephone calls may be transferred automatically from the MMI to your mobile phone so that you can continue talking.

### Using two telephones

Applies to: vehicles with telephone and Audi phone box

You can connect two mobile phones simultaneously via Bluetooth HFP to the MMI system (e.g. your business and personal mobiles). You can then be reached inside the vehicle on both mobile phones.

Applies to mobile phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile: You can send and receive messages with both mobile phones ⇒ page 202.

### Connecting a second mobile phone

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI. The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile phone during the connection procedure. The mobile phone you would like to connect must not be connected actively to any other Bluetooth device.

- ► Switch on the Bluetooth function and discoverability on both the MMI system ⇒ page 248 and the mobile phone.
- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > □, or:
- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > Connected devices > Telephone 1/ Telephone 2 > New connection.
- ► Follow the instructions given by the system. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown after a few seconds.
- ► Press on the desired mobile phone in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
- ► To update the list, press 🗘.

A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be created.

- ► Confirm the PIN on your mobile phone.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system.
- ► Please note any system queries on the MMI and your mobile phone.

### After connecting successfully

Refer to  $\Rightarrow$  page 194, After connecting successfully.

### Switching between two mobile phones

Important: Telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected to the MMI.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > <sup>©</sup>.



### CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇒ page 205.

### Disconnecting a mobile phone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

► Use the Connected devices menu to disconnect a connected Bluetooth device ⇒ page 249.

# Using the Audi phone box

### General notes

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box/Audi phone box light

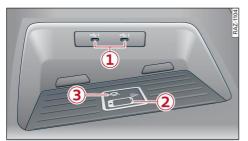


Fig. 141 Front centre console: Audi phone box with connections

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you can use the following functions with the Audi phone box:

- Making and receiving calls using the vehicle's external aerial
- Charging your mobile phone via USB input
- Wireless mobile phone charging
- Reminder signal

#### Restrictions

In some situations, the functions of the Audi phone box may be restricted or temporarily unavailable. This can happen in the following cases, for instance:

 More than one mobile phone is placed in the Audi phone box.

- The mobile phone is in a bag or a protective case.
- There are objects between the Audi phone box and the mobile phone.
- The mobile phone is not in the centre of the Audi phone box.



### WARNING

Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres - risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.

# Making and receiving calls using the external aerial

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

With the Audi phone box, you can use the vehicle's external aerial to make calls. Using the external aerial reduces radiation in the vehicle and also ensures better reception quality.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

► To make a phone call on your mobile phone via the vehicle's external aerial, place the mobile phone on the phone symbol ② ⇒ page 196, Fig. 141 in the centre of the Audi phone box with the display facing upwards.

# Charging the mobile phone via the USB input

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box/Audi phone box light

Your mobile phone can be charged in the Audi phone box using special USB adapters ⇒ page 237.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

► To charge your mobile phone via USB, connect it to the USB input ① ⇒ page 196, Fig. 141.



### Note

- USB adapters are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers.
- Audi recommends the use of Audi Genuine Accessories. Audi has tested these products for suitability, reliability and safety.

### Wireless mobile phone charging

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box/Audi phone box light

Your mobile phone can be charged wirelessly in the Audi phone box.

Important: The ignition must be switched on and your mobile phone must be Qi compatible.

- Make sure that the wireless charging function is switched on:
- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > General > Reminder signal and mobile phone charging.
- ► Activate the **Wireless mobile phone charging** function.
- To charge your mobile phone wirelessly, place it on the ∮ symbol ③ ⇒ page 196, Fig. 141 in the centre of the Audi phone box with the display facing upwards.

### **↑** WARNING

- The mobile phone may become hot while charging wirelessly. Consider the temperature of your mobile phone when removing it.
   Take the mobile phone out of the Audi phone box carefully.
- An alternating magnetic field is used for wireless charging. Always keep a minimum of 6 cm away from the charging plate of the Audi phone box. The limits for long-term exposure according to ICNIRP 1998 are kept to at this distance. Side effects such as irritation to sensory organs or functional issues with active implants (e.g. pacemakers, infusion pumps, neurostimulators) or passive implants (e.g. artificial joints) are therefore very unlikely. If you have implants, please consult a specialist doctor if you have any questions. Alternatively, you can switch the Audi phone box's wireless charging function on/off. You will still be able to charge your mobile phone using a cable.

## i Note

- The maximum charging capacity is 5 W.
- The charging time and temperature vary depending on the mobile phone being used.

### Reminder signal

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box/Audi phone box light

When the reminder signal function is switched on, you will be notified that your mobile phone is still in the Audi phone box when you are leaving the vehicle.

Important: A Qi compatible mobile phone must be in the Audi phone box, or your mobile phone must be connected to the Audi music interface via a USB adapter with the Audi Smartphone Interface active, or your iPhone must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth and be charging with a USB adapter via the Audi music interface.

 Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > General > Reminder signal and mobile phone charging.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following settings are available:

- Sound
- Off

### Spoken

This setting is activated at the factory.

# Notes on mobile phone: Reminder, charge level

If this function is switched on, notifications on the charging status of your mobile phone will be displayed. You will also be reminded not to forget your mobile phone when you leave the vehicle.

### Using the telephone

### Accessing telephone functions

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 142 Centre display: Selection menu

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE**.

Possible telephone functions:

1	Search	
2	Call list	198
3	Favourites	198
4	Contacts	199
(5)	Mailbox	199
6	Dial number	200
7	Switch phones	201

### Managing the call list

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 143 Centre display: Call list

### Calling up the call list via the MMI

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select TELEPHONE > Call list.

# Calling up the call list via the multi-function steering wheel

► On the instrument cluster, select the telephone tab > I button > Call list.

Possible symbols in the call list:

- Missed calls
- Numbers dialled
- (3) Received calls
- (4) Edit telephone numbers
- 5 Display business card . . . . . . . . . . 199
- 6 Number of interactions with a contact

If there has been more than one interaction with a contact or a number, the most recent action is displayed in the form of an arrow (1), (2) or (3).

Press and hold a contact or phone number from the list until the **Options** menu appears.

Depending on your vehicle equipment and your mobile phone, the following options may be available:

- Store as favourite ⇒ page 198.
- Send text message ⇒ page 202
- Send e-mail ⇒ page 202

#### Edit number

You can edit a phone number before making a call.

### Show history

Important: You must have had more than one interaction with a contact.

All interactions with a contact/number will be displayed.

### Managing favourites

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can store contacts for all connected mobile phones in the favourites list for quick access.

### Calling up favourites via the MMI

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Favourites**.

# Calling up favourites via the multi-function steering wheel

► On the instrument cluster, select the telephone tab > □ button > Favourites

### Storing a favourite

- ▶ Press  $\diamondsuit$   $\Rightarrow$  page 199 in the business card, or:
- Press Store as favourite ⇒ page 198 in the options menu.

### **Deleting favourites**

- ▶ Press ★ ⇒ page 199 in the business card, or:
- ► Select: Favourites >  $\mathcal{L}_{\equiv}$  > one or more favourites or Select all > Delete > (Done).



### Note

The favourites can only be edited on the MMI.

### Managing directories

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can manage up to four directories on the MMI.

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.

### Calling up the directory

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Contacts**.

The contacts will be displayed. You can change the sort order  $\Rightarrow$  page 201, **Sort order**.

### **Deleting imported contacts**

Important: You must have imported a contact ⇒ page 202.

► Select: Contacts > \$\mathscr{L}\_{\mathbb{m}}\$ > one or more contacts > Delete > (Done). The imported contacts will be deleted.

### **Directory options**

Press and hold a contact from the directory until the **Options** menu appears.

Depending on your vehicle equipment and your mobile phone, the following options may be available:

- Store as favourite ⇒ page 198.
- Send contact: You can select Text message or E-mail ⇒ page 202.
- Send text message ⇒ page 202
- Send e-mail ⇒ page 202

## i Note

- Please pay attention to any synchronisation requests on your mobile phone when downloading contacts.
- In certain cases, contacts from a mobile phone may not be transmitted in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with certain initial letters may not be displayed on the MMI system.
- Please note that only contacts from the mobile phone with an active connection are displayed.

- The contacts in the local MMI memory are visible at all times and are not protected against access by other users.
- When you switch the ignition on again after switching it off and leaving the car, the MMI system will load the mobile phone's directory if the phone is within range and Bluetooth is activated both on the phone and on the MMI system.
- You can only delete the contacts in the local MMI memory.

### Calling up a business card

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

The business card shows you a contact's details.

- ► To open the business card, press on a contact in the directory, or:
- ► In the call list, press (i) (5) ⇒ page 198, Fig. 143.

Possible options in the business card:

- ► To make a call: Press on a phone number.
- ▶ To store a favourite: Press ☆.
- ► To delete a favourite: Press ★.
- ► To send a text message: Press ...
- ► To start navigation: Press on an address.
- ▶ To send an e-mail: Press on an e-mail address.
- ► Send contact: You can select **Text message** or **E-mail** ⇒ page 202.

### Listening to voicemail messages

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select TELEPHONE > Mailbox

Important: No mailbox number must have been stored yet.

➤ To enter the mailbox number: Enter the number desired. Press OK.

Important: A mailbox number must already have been stored.

► To dial the mailbox number: Press Mailbox. The call will be started immediately.



### Note

This service must be set up and activated by your mobile network service provider.

### Dialling a number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, you may be able to dial a number in the following ways:

- Entering text via the MMI ⇒ page 27.
- Using the voice control function  $\Rightarrow$  page 30.

### Call options

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

To answer/end a call, press the ₱ button on the multi-function steering wheel. For information on how to use it, refer to ⇒ page 15 and ⇒ page 33.

Depending on your mobile phone, the following options may be available for an incoming call on the MMI:

- Answer
- Ignore
- Message

The Bluetooth connection is severed if you leave the vehicle during a phone call. Depending on the mobile phone, active calls may be transferred automatically from the MMI to your mobile phone.



### Note

Media playback or the radio is muted automatically during a call.

### During a telephone call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

The following options may be available during a call depending on your mobile phone and the type of connection:

- End call
- Mute

### Sending a tone sequence

Press **Numbers**. You can enter DTMF tones ("touch-tones"), which are then sent to the person you are speaking to.

#### Hold

To place the current call on hold. Press **Resume** to take the call again.

### Answering an incoming call

Depending on your mobile network service provider, one of the following options may be available:

- Answer: The current call will be placed on hold.
   You will then receive the incoming call.
- Replace: The current call will be replaced by the incoming call.

### Declining an incoming call

If you select **Ignore**, the incoming call will be declined.

### Conference

Important: There must be two callers on the line.

Up to five callers and one caller on hold can take part in a conference (depending on the mobile network service provider).

### Switching between calls

Important: There must be two callers on the line.

You can switch between two phone calls.

### Further call options

Press More.

The following options may be available depending on your mobile phone and the type of connection:

### Transfer call to mobile phone

To transfer the current call to your mobile phone/ Bluetooth headset\*.

### Retrieve call

To transfer the current call from your mobile phone back to the MMI.

#### Add call

You can start a new call. The current call will be placed on hold.

### Remove conference participants

If a conference is in progress, you can remove participants individually.

### Microph. input level

You can adjust the microphone input level by moving the slider.



### Note

The option Call waiting must be activated on your mobile phone for you to be made aware of incoming calls during a conversation.

### Dialling the emergency number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select TELEPHONE > Dial number > the emergency number for the specific country (e.g. 112) > Dial.



### / WARNING

- Since your telephone operates via radio waves, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely solely on your telephone when a vital communication (e.g. medical emergency) is involved.
- Always follow the directions of the emergency operators when making an emergency call and do not end the call before you are requested to do so.

### Settings

### Telephone settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select TELEPHONE > .

The following settings are available, depending on your mobile phone:

- Ignore with text message
- Edit mailbox number

### Switching between two mobile phones

Important: Telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected to the MMI.

Switch phones: The device name of the available mobile phone will be displayed. Press the button to switch the phone.

### Ring tone and volume settings

- Ring tone and message volume: You can adjust the volume by moving the slider.
- Ring tone: Select a ring tone from the list.
- Microphone input level: You can adjust the microphone input level by moving the slider.

### Serial number (IMEI) of data module

Applies to: vehicles with data module

The serial number (IMEI) will be displayed.

### **Directory settings**

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select TELEPHONE > Contacts > ①.

### Switching between two mobile phones

Important: telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected.

Switch phones: The device name of the available mobile phone will be displayed. Press the button to switch the phone.

The directory of the selected telephone will be displayed.

### Hide greyed out contacts

If this function is switched on, contacts for which no number has been stored are hidden.

### Sort order

You can sort contacts by surname or first name.

### **Download contacts**

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.

To update the contacts in the MMI, you can download the contacts from your mobile phone manually. Depending on the mobile phone you are using, the Bluetooth connection may have to be disconnected and re-established before you can update the contacts.

### Import/export contacts

Important: A USB mass storage device must be connected to the Audi music interface ⇒ page 237.

You can import or export contacts in the vCard format (.vcf) into or from the MMI.

- To import contacts from a storage device: Important: The USB mass storage device must contain contacts in vCard format. These must not be stored in subfolders. Select: Import contacts > Search for import data > USB device 1/USB device 2 > desired contacts or Select all > Start import.
- To export contacts to a storage device: Important: You must already have imported a contact. Select: Export contacts > Find export medium > USB device 1/USB device 2 > desired contacts or Select all > Start export.



- The imported contacts are stored in the local memory of the MMI system.
- There should be no files or directories on the storage medium other than the contacts you wish to import.
- It is not possible to export contacts which have been downloaded from a mobile phone.
- Apple devices or MTP devices (e.g. smartphones) are not recognised as USB storage devices.

### Messages

### Text messages

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important: A mobile phone with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP) must be connected to the MMI.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select

MESSAGES > (□) > Text message (telephone

1)/Text message (telephone 2)\*.

The following functions are available:

- New text message\*
- Inbox

- Sent
- Outbox\*
- Drafts\*
- Deleted

### User-defined\*

User-defined folders can be taken from your mobile phone.

### Message options

Press on a text message.

The following options may be available depending on your country:

- Read
- Reply
- Forward
- More

To switch between messages, press  $\langle$  or  $\rangle$ .

Press **More**. Depending on your mobile phone and the selected mailbox, the following options may be available:

- Call
- Forward
- Navigate to
- Extract numbers
- Resend

# Settings

Press 💿.

### Notification for new text messages

When a new text message is received, an envelope symbol ⊠ is displayed in the status bar of the MMI if this function is activated.



### Note

Depending on your mobile phone, it is possible that only newly received messages are shown.

### E-mail

Applies to: vehicles with telephone and e-mail

Important: A mobile phone with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP) must be connected to the MMI.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select MESSAGES > (□) > E-mail (telephone 1)/E-mail (telephone 2)\*.

The following functions are available:

- New e-mail
- Inbox
- Sent
- Outbox
- Drafts\*
- Deleted\*

#### User-defined\*

User-defined folders can be taken from your mobile phone.

### Message options

Press on an e-mail.

The following options may be available depending on your country:

- Read
- Reply
- Reply to all
- Forward
- More

To switch between messages, press  $\langle$  or  $\rangle$ .

Press **More**. Depending on your mobile phone and the selected mailbox, the following options may be available:

- Call
- Forward
- Extract e-mails
- Navigate to
- Extract numbers
- Display receiver
- Resend

### Settings

Press 💿.

### Notification for new e-mails

When a new e-mail is received, an envelope symbol  $\boxtimes$  is displayed in the status bar of the MMI if this function is activated.



### (I) CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇒ page 205.

## Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
<b>Connecting</b> the mobile phone to the MMI fails.	Check if the requirements for connecting a mobile phone have been met $\Rightarrow$ page 194, or: Check if you have accidentally declined the PIN for setting up the connection on your mobile phone. If necessary, repeat the connection procedure $\Rightarrow$ page 194.
After the mobile phone was connected <b>not all/none of the contacts</b> were loaded into the MMI.	Avoid using special characters in names.  Avoid using contact groups on your mobile phone.  Pay attention to any requests on your mobile phone when connecting via Bluetooth.
Some <b>telephone functions</b> are greyed out/not available.	The telephone functions will depend on the mobile network service provider and the mobile phone used.

### Telephone

Subject	Advice
Some <b>telephone functions</b> are greyed out/not available, even though the mobile phone supports them.	Check if the Bluetooth settings on your mobile phone are restricted or if individual Bluetooth settings are deactivated. This may be the case if the mobile phone belongs to a business organisation.
The <b>MESSAGES</b> menu is not available.	Check whether your mobile phone has the option Show messages and make sure that this option is activated.
Your mobile phone cannot be charged wirelessly or the charging procedure is interrupted.	Check that the Audi phone box's wireless charging function is switched on. Check that your mobile phone is Qi compatible. Check that your mobile phone is in the correct position in the Audi phone box $\Rightarrow$ page 196 and that there are no other objects in the Audi phone box.

### Audi connect

### General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

The following functions may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

- Audi connect infotainment
- Audi connect vehicle control services

### WARNING

- Only use Audi connect services and the Wi-Fi hotspot when the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely - risk of accident! Please see ⇒ page 23, Notes on traffic safety.
- Mobile devices, tablet and laptop computers and devices of a similar weight can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary. Like any loose object, they can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving. Please also observe the safety warnings in the chapter on ⇒ page 73.

### CAUTION

- With a small number of exceptions, the data connection costs for Audi connect infotainment services are included in the price of Audi connect infotainment during the licence period. Please note that costs can be incurred if certain services are used. This applies, for example, to online radio/podcasts, additional online data or Internet connections and services which use the Wi-Fi hotspot. These Internet connections and services require additional paid data plans, depending on the country you are in ⇒ page 209. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.
- In certain cases, the data connection for the Wi-Fi hotspot is established via the SIM card of your Wi-Fi device as a substitute. This depends on the configuration of your Wi-Fi device and operating system. Depending on your network provider, this may incur charges, especially if you are using the sys-

- tem abroad. We therefore strongly recommend that you use an unlimited data plan. For further information, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your Wi-Fi device.
- Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used, for example, to connect to the Internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the area covered by your mobile network service provider, some functions/services may not be able to send/receive data and may be restricted or unavailable.

### (i) Note

- The availability of the services depends on the licence period.
- Audi only enables you to access third party services via the MMI and accepts no responsibility for the content or availability of the services.
- The latest mobile phone standards are not available for use in all countries. For further information, please consult an Audi dealer or your mobile network service provider.
- The availability, scope, provider and price of the services offered can vary, as can the way in which the services are displayed on the screen. These variations depend on your country, model, model year, device and mobile phone contract.
- All services may be changed, activated/ deactivated, renamed or extended without further notice.

### Audi connect infotainment

### Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Audi connect infotainment services allow online information to be directly transmitted into the vehicle.

An Internet connection is required in order to use Audi connect infotainment. The Internet connection may be established via an embedded SIM card (eSIM) depending on the country and the equipment in the vehicle.



### WARNING

Please always observe the information  $\Rightarrow \land \land$  in General information on page 205.



### CAUTION

### **Embedded SIM card**

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and embedded SIM card

The data connection for the Audi connect infotainment services is established via an embedded SIM card (eSIM card) fitted in the vehicle. You can use Audi connect infotainment services right away.



### (1) CAUTION

Please always observe the information  $\Rightarrow$  ① in General information on page 205.

### Using the Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

You can connect up to eight Wi-Fi devices (such as smartphones) to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot. If the MMI is connected to the Internet ⇒ page 205, the connected Wi-Fi devices can also use the MMI's Internet connection.

Important: The ignition must be switched on. A data plan must be available  $\Rightarrow$  page 209.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > Connection settings > Wi-Fi.
   Switch on the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > Connection settings > Wi-Fi > Wi-Fi hotspot settings. The access codes for the Wi-Fi hotspot will be displayed. If necessary, activate the discoverability setting on the Wi-Fi hotspot.

- ► Switch your mobile device's Wi-Fi function on and connect it to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot using the access data displayed.
- Please note any system queries on your Wi-Fi device

Your device should now have been successfully connected to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot.



### WARNING

Please always observe the information  $\Rightarrow$   $\triangle$  in General information on page 205.



### CAUTION

Please always observe the information  $\Rightarrow$  ① in General information on page 205.

# Audi connect infotainment services

### Configuration

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Before you first use certain Audi connect infotainment services, it is necessary to configure them via your personal myAudi account at my.audi. com.



### Note

- A myAudi user must be logged in to use some of the Audi connect infotainment services
- Some Audi connect infotainment services must be activated via my.audi.com.
- Depending on the country, you can use the myAudi app or my.audi.com.
- Detailed information on configuration can be found on the Internet at my.audi.com.

### Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

The following services and more may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

#### Weather information

Applies to: MMI

▶ On the home screen, press **WEATHER**.

### To edit the settings: Select WEATHER > \text{\text{\text{\text{BL}}}}.

- ► To display the weather for a particular location, press on the location in the list.
- ► To display the weather for the current location, press on the location marked by the crosshairs.

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

► To display the weather at the destination, press on the location marked by the chequered flag 図

To add a location: Select WEATHER > !!! > In new town > a location.

To delete a location: Select WEATHER >  $\square$  >  $\angle$  > one or more locations or Select all > Delete.

#### Online news

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NEWS**.

#### Access to calendar

Important: The myAudi app must be installed and started on your mobile device. Access to the calendar must be permitted on your mobile device. You must be logged in to your myAudi account using your access data in the myAudi app and must have selected your vehicle. The Wi-Fi function must be activated on your mobile device and on the MMI and your mobile device must be connected to the MMI system's Wi-Fi hotspot ⇒ page 208, Wi-Fi.

You can have the calendar of your mobile device displayed on the MMI.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press CALENDAR.

### $\Lambda$

### WARNING

Please always observe the information  $\Rightarrow \triangle$  in General information on page 205.



### **CAUTION**

### **Functions on demand**

### Displaying purchased functions

Applies to: vehicles with functions on demand

With certain equipment versions in some countries you can purchase functions at any time (functions on demand) in the myAudi app using your myAudi account.

To display purchased functions in the vehicle, use one of the following methods:

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **PURCHASES**.



### Note

- It may also be possible to show equipment options fitted at the factory in the purchased functions display.
- The availability and functions of the myAudi app vary from country to country. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.
- At the time of print, functions on demand is planned for future introduction. Functions on demand may not be available for your vehicle.

### **Driver messages**

Applies to: vehicles with functions on demand

If a message is shown regarding a function that requires a licence, this may indicate that the function is unavailable. Check in the Purchases menu on the MMI to see if you have a licence for this function, or if the licence has expired. If necessary, you can purchase the function using functions on demand.

# Audi connect vehicle control services

#### Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

You can use the Audi connect vehicle control services, for example, to view data on your vehicle or to control vehicle functions remotely.

You can view and use the services available for your vehicle at my.audi.com or in the myAudi app.

Information on the services and the corresponding app were correct at the time of printing. The scope of the services depends on the country and the vehicle equipment. There may be changes during the service life of the vehicle.

### WARNING

- Please always observe the information ⇒ ∧ in General information on page 205.
- Driver messages, notifications and warning and indicator lamps that are lit up in the vehicle take precedent over the information from Audi connect services. Do not let the information from Audi connect services tempt you into taking any risks when driving. This could lead to a breakdown in road traffic resulting in a potential accident with serious injury.
- Applies to vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: Before using the Audi connect air conditioning functions, please ensure that your vehicle is properly parked and that the ignition is off.
- Applies to vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: Before using the functions for the high-voltage battery charging cycle, please ensure that your vehicle is properly parked and connected to a suitable power outlet, and that the ignition is off.



### (i) Note

- Whether you are able to call up certain types of data or operate functions remotely depends on the charge level of the vehicle's battery. These functions are therefore only available to a limited extent after the ignition has been switched off.
- The Internet connection for the Audi connect vehicle control services is established via an eSIM card. The costs for this are included in the price of the Audi connect vehicle control services. The mobile network, for example, must be available to use the services.

### Setting up

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

You can create a myAudi account by registering in the myAudi app or at my.audi.com, depending on the country you are in.

- ► Specify the key user ⇒ page 34.
- ► Install the myAudi app on your mobile device and log in with your access data.



### Note

Certain services require you to enter the 4digit PIN which you specified on registration.

### Settings

#### Wi-Fi

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > Connection settings > Wi-Fi.

The following functions may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

#### Wi-Fi

If this function is switched on, the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot is activated and Wi-Fi devices can be connected to the Wi-Fi hotspot.

### Wi-Fi hotspot settings

The Wi-Fi connection between the MMI and your Wi-Fi device is encrypted. You can change the following values as required:

- Access point (SSID): Name of the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- Password: A random initial password is set on the MMI at the factory. Audi recommends you to change the initial password. Follow general guidelines on password security and ensure your password is secure. You can seek advice on password security from trustworthy, up-to-date sources.

### Allow data connection via Wi-Fi

When this function is activated, mobile devices can use the Internet connection on the Wi-Fi hotspot. Data plans are required for this.



### WARNING

Please always observe the information  $\Rightarrow \triangle$  in General information on page 205.



### ! CAUTION

Please always observe the information  $\Rightarrow$  ① in General information on page 205.

### Data plans<sup>1)</sup>

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Data plans must be purchased for certain services ⇒ ① in General information on page 205.

## **Troubleshooting**

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

You can purchase data plans via my.audi.com.

## $\Lambda$

### **WARNING**

Please always observe the information  $\Rightarrow \land \land$  in General information on page 205.



### **CAUTION**

Please always observe the information  $\Rightarrow$  ① in General information on page 205.



### Note

- Depending on the country, you can use the myAudi app or my.audi.com.
- When selling your vehicle, you should delete the vehicle in the network provider's customer portal to prevent any further purchases at your expense.

Subject	Advice
Audi connect infotainment services: Some Audi connect infotainment services are greyed out/not available.	Before you first use some Audi connect infotainment services, it is necessary to activate/configure them via your personal myAudi account. Detailed information can be found on the Internet at my.audi.com.
<b>Wi-Fi hotspot</b> : No Wi-Fi connection is possible.	Check whether Wi-Fi is activated on the MMI ⇒ page 208.  Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it.

<sup>1)</sup> Not available in all markets.

### **Emergency call**

### Overview

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

Description of the in-vehicle emergency call system.

An emergency call is a combination of a voice call and a data transfer. Important information such as details about the vehicle and its position are transferred to the emergency switchboard using the vehicle's data transfer function.

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following functions are available:

The **emergency call** function allows you to organise assistance as quickly as possible in dangerous situations. Use this function whenever you need help  $\Rightarrow$  page 210.

- Audi connect emergency call (TPS emergency call). This eCall system uses third-party emergency switchboards.
- Statutory European emergency call (EU eCall).
   This eCall system is based on the 112 SOS number and uses public emergency switchboards.
- Statutory ERA-GLONASS emergency call

The **online roadside assistance call** function allows you to request assistance in the event of a breakdown or a minor accident  $\Rightarrow$  page 212.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the area covered by your mobile network service provider, some functions/services may not be able to send/receive data and may be restricted or unavailable.
- Applies to EU eCall or ERA-GLONASS: Not all public emergency switchboards can receive data transmitted by the vehicle.
- Applies to ERA-GLONASS: When an emergency call is active, all sources of noise (i.e. warning signals such as those given by the parking aid) may be muted.

## **Emergency call**

### Operation

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

The services are provided via a SIM card installed in the vehicle. Provision of these services requires that the mobile network of the SIM card be functioning and ready for use. The services provided by Audi are only available within the area covered by the mobile network service provider chosen by Audi.



### Note

- The emergency call function cannot be deactivated via the settings on the infotainment system.
- EU eCall is a public service of general interest and is provided free of charge.
- ERA-GLONASS is provided free of charge.
- The availability of the TPS emergency call is time-limited.
- The cost of TPS voice calls and data connections is included in the price of the services.

#### **Functions**

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

In the event of a serious accident, an eCall system is automatically activated via on-board sensors ⇒ page 211, Automatic emergency call. If the vehicle is equipped with the TPS emergency call system, but the TPS emergency call is not available, the EU eCall is triggered automatically.

The emergency call can also be triggered manually if needed. For instructions on how to activate the system manually, please refer to ⇒ page 211, Manual emergency call.

The TPS emergency call can be placed manually or automatically  $\Rightarrow$  page 211.

The ERA-GLONASS emergency call can be placed manually or automatically  $\Rightarrow$  page 211.

### Making an emergency call

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function



Fig. 144 Front headliner: Cover for emergency call button

### Manual emergency call

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- ▶ Lightly press the cover 1 to open it.
- Press the emergency call button until the LED ② flashes. The emergency call will be placed.
- ► If you press the emergency call button accidentally, press it again immediately until the LED lights up permanently. The emergency call will be cancelled.

### Automatic emergency call

In some circumstances, the vehicle's electronics will make an emergency call automatically if, for example, an airbag has been triggered. The LED in the emergency call button ② will flash. The emergency call will be made; the call cannot be cancelled.

### Meaning of LEDs

- Green The emergency call function is available.
- Red A fault has occurred in the emergency call function. Please contact a qualified workshop.
   Please note the driver messages regarding the availability of the emergency call function
   ⇒ page 211.
- Off The emergency call function is temporarily unavailable, e.g. if there is no network.

### Warnings

In the event of a critical emergency call system failure, the vehicle occupants receive a warning;

refer to ⇒ page 211, Meaning of LEDs and ⇒ page 211, Driver messages.

Applies to EU eCall: In the event of a critical system failure which would cause the on-board emergency call system to be out of action, the vehicle occupants receive the following warning ⇒ page 211, Meaning of LEDs and ⇒ page 211, Driver messages.



### Note

If the emergency call is dropped due to a poor connection, the system will re-connect automatically.

### **ERA-GLONASS** test mode

Applies to: vehicles with ERA-GLONASS emergency call function

The ERA-GLONASS test mode involves, among other things, a test emergency call to a test control centre.

The test mode can be started by pressing the micro-button with a pointed object. The micro-button is located behind the cover  $\bigcirc$   $\Rightarrow$  page 211, Fig. 144 in the corner next to the emergency call button.



### Note

The test mode must only be started by a qualified technician.

#### **Driver messages**

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

# Emergency call function: fault. Function partially available. Please contact workshop

You can make an emergency call if the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, but not all of the functions may be available. For example, you may not be able to make a voice call to the emergency call centre. However, it may be possible for the system to transfer data. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

# Emergency call function: fault. Function unavailable. Please contact workshop

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, you cannot make an emergency call.

Drive to a qualified workshop as soon as possible and have the fault rectified.

# Online roadside assistance call

### Description

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance call

A call to the online roadside assistance service<sup>1)</sup> is a combination of a voice call and a data transfer. Important information such as details about the vehicle and its position are transferred to the Audi call centre using the vehicle's data transfer function.

### Making an online roadside assistance call

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance call



Fig. 145 Front headliner: Online roadside assistance call button

### Making an online roadside assistance call

- Press button 3. The LED will light up in red and the online roadside assistance call will be placed.
- ► If you press button ③ accidentally, simply press it again.

#### Audi incident assistance

The vehicle electronics detect if a minor accident has occurred. You can then choose between an online roadside assistance call or an emergency call.



### Note

If the roadside assistance call is dropped due to a poor connection, the system will re-connect automatically.

# Information on data processing

### **EU eCall**

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function (EU eCall)

Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system must comply with the personal data protection rules contained in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (1) and Directive 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and Council and, in particular, must be necessary in order to protect the vital interests of the person affected as set out in Article 6 Paragraph 1 Subparagraph d of Regulation (EU) 2016/679.

The processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling eCall emergency calls made to the standard European SOS number 112.

### Data types and their recipients

The EU eCall system may only collect and process the following data: vehicle identification number, vehicle type (passenger car or light goods vehicle), type of vehicle power (petrol/diesel/CNG/electric/hydrogen), the last three locations of the vehicle and direction of travel, log file of automatic system activation and its time stamp. Further data: version and ID of log file, number of vehicle occupants, location credibility.

The recipients of data processed in association with the EU eCall are the relevant Public Safety Answering Points (PSAP) designated by the corresponding national authorities, under whose sovereignty they are situated, to answer and process eCalls made to the standard European SOS number 112.

The availability of the services offered depends on your country and is time-limited.

### Form of data processing

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that the data stored in the system memory are not accessible outside the system before an emergency call is placed.

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that it is not traceable and cannot be tracked continuously during normal operation.

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that the data are automatically and continuously erased from the internal system memory.

The vehicle location data are continuously overwritten in the internal system memory to ensure that not more than three current locations, which are required for normal system operation, are available

The activity log of the EU eCall system is stored only for as long as is necessary to fulfil the purpose of handling the eCall emergency call and, in any case, not more than 13 hours after the time at which the eCall emergency call was placed.

# Modalities for exercising data subject's rights

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Regulation (EU) 2016/679. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Regulation, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Contact address for queries about access rights:

#### **AUDI AG**

DSGVO-Anfrage Postfach 600108 14401 Potsdam GERMANY

## Information about thirdparty services and other services with added benefit

# TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance

Applies to: vehicles with EU eCall in conjunction with Audi connect emergency call (TPS emergency call) or online road-side assistance

For a description, please refer to  $\Rightarrow$  page 210 for operation,  $\Rightarrow$  page 210 for functions and  $\Rightarrow$  page 212 for online roadside assistance.

Any processing of personal data through the TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance systems must comply with the personal data protection rules contained in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (1) and Directive 2002/58/EC (2).

The fulfilment of the contract for TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance forms the legal basis for the use of the TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance and for the processing of data by the system/services.

The TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance systems may process personal data only by express consent of the data subject (the vehicle keeper).

For information on modalities for data processing through the TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance systems, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data, refer to:

- Modalities ⇒ page 213
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select:
   SETTINGS > General > Legal information >
   About Audi connect.

The keeper of a vehicle which is equipped with TPS emergency call system in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system instead of the TPS emergency call system. To deactivate/reactivate the TPS emergency call system, please contact an Audi dealership.



The deactivation/reactivation of the TPS emergency call system at an Audi dealership is subject to a fee.

### **Navigation**

# Calling up the navigation menu

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 146 Route guidance not started

The navigation system guides you directly to your destination, avoiding traffic obstructions and using alternative routes if desired.

#### Calling up the navigation menu

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press NAVIGATION.

The map is displayed after the navigation system is called up for the first time.

# Calling up the navigation menu via the multi-function steering wheel

- ► Applies to multi-function steering wheel: Select the navigation tab in the instrument cluster.
- ➤ To display the navigation menu when route guidance has been started, select the following in the instrument cluster: 

  button > Map.

The following functions are available on the MMI:

- ① Open the menu **Select destination** ⇒ page 217, Fig. 147.
- ② Open the intelligent search function 
  ⇒ page 216.

For further information on the map please refer to ⇒ page 220, How to use the map.

### $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

Driving on the road requires the full attention of the driver. Please always note the in-

- formation in the chapter  $\Rightarrow$  page 23, Notes on traffic safety.
- The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation. Always adhere to the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations. If the recommended route is in contradiction with the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations, these always take precedence risk of accident!



#### **CAUTION**

## (i)

#### Note

- Snow or other obstructions on the GPS aerial or trees or large buildings could affect
  the reception of the satellite signals and
  make positioning difficult. GPS reception
  and vehicle positioning can also be adversely affected by deactivation or a malfunction
  of several satellites.
- Road names can change; therefore the names stored on the MMI may be different from the actual names in exceptional cases.
- Applies to multi-function steering wheel: It may be necessary to use the centre display to operate certain functions.
- Applies to vehicles with Audi connect infotainment: Further services may be available depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment.
- Information is also provided in the head-up display.

### myAudi navigation

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

The MMI's navigation system works seamlessly together with the myAudi app.

Your destinations (favourites, last destinations) are synchronised via your myAudi account. All the important destinations can be displayed in the vehicle and the myAudi app.

So that the destinations are loaded automatically in the vehicle, Audi recommends logging on in the vehicle with a myAudi account ⇒ page 34.

myAudi navigation functions:

- You can send destinations and tours to the vehicle from the myAudi app ⇒ page 218.
- Active route guidance in the myAudi app can be continued on the MMI.
- Depending on the situation, it may be possible to continue an active MMI route guidance procedure in the myAudi app to navigate you to the destination after you leave the vehicle.

### **Entering a destination**

# Intelligent search for navigation destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can use the intelligent search function to enter navigation destination details in any order (e.g. Forest Road 20 London). You can search for special destinations, contacts, recent destinations or favourites in the same way to help you navigate to the desired destination.

#### Calling up the menu

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select NAVIGATION > ▶.

#### Intelligent search

- ► Enter one or more search terms in the entry field. Refer to ⇒ page 27, Text entry.
- Press the desired destination in the results list.
   The Details menu will be displayed.
- Press Start. The route guidance function is activated and the map is displayed ⇒ page 219, Fig. 149.

#### Online points of interest

► To find a special destination: Enter the name of the special destination.

- ► Select: the symbol for a special destination category (e.g. ¶) > a special destination, or:
- ► To display all categories and search for a special destination, select: ···· > a category (e.g. Restaurant) > a special destination.

#### Changing the search area

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > ▶.
- ► To change the search area, press ♠/९०/ས️ repeatedly until the desired search area is selected.

#### Internet search<sup>1)</sup>

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Internet search

You can use the results from a search engine provider to find a navigation destination.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇒ page 205, Audi connect.

- ► Enter one or more search terms in the entry field.
- ► The search engine provider displays suggestions ② to narrow the search.
- ▶ Press on any suitable suggestions until the desired destination is shown in the results list. If necessary, swipe upwards/downwards with one finger until the suggestions ② or destinations ③ appear.
- ▶ Press on the desired destination . The **Details** menu will be displayed.
- ► Press Start.

The route guidance function is activated and the map is displayed  $\Rightarrow$  page 219, Fig. 149.

<sup>1)</sup> Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

#### i) Note

- The terms suggested by the MMI depend on the destinations to which you have recently
- The navigation system always searches for the fastest route. You may be able to have alternative routes displayed ⇒ page 221.
- If the destination cannot be found, it may not be stored in the navigation database. Check the spelling of the term you searched for or check the search area  $\Rightarrow$  page 216.
- Whether the level of congestion is taken into account when the route is being calculated depends on your traffic avoidance settings ⇒ page 227.
- The distances to special destinations are shown as the crow flies from your current location. The actual driving distance between your current position and the special destination is updated automatically. However, the list of special destinations is not sorted again.

### Selecting a destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 147 Menu: Selecting a destination

#### Calling up the menu

Applies to: MMI

- ▶ On the home screen, press NAVIGATION.
- ▶ When the map is displayed, press 🖽 🕦 ⇒ page 215, Fig. 146.

The following functions are available  $\Rightarrow$  *Fig. 147*:

1 Last destinations	217
2 Favourites	217
3 Contacts	218
(4) Received destinations and tours	218

#### Loading the last destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The destinations and tours you have most recently used can be loaded directly as the new navigation destination.

As soon as you start route guidance, the destination is automatically stored in your most recent destinations. The destinations you have recently used are indicated by the \(\text{\mathbb{O}}\) symbol.

If you are using myAudi navigation, your recent destinations will be synchronised with your myAudi account ⇒ page 215.

#### Calling up the last destination

- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select NAVIGATION > ( ) > Last destinations > a destingtion > Start.
- ► Applies to multi-function steering wheel: On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab > \bullet button > Last destinations > a destination.

#### Delete last destinations

▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select NAVIGATION > (B) > Last destinations > /= > one or more entries or Select all > Delete > (Done).



#### Note

The last tour will be deleted automatically from the list of recent destinations if you start route guidance to a new destination after cancelling the tour.

#### Using a favourite as the destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can call up frequently required destinations in your favourites. The home address/business address option is a quick and easy way of starting route guidance.

Important: At least one favourite must have already been stored  $\Rightarrow$  page 221.

▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select NAVIGATION > ( ) > Favourites > a destination > Start.

► Applies to multi-function steering wheel: On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab > Improvement by the button > Favourites > a destination.

#### Selecting a contact as a destination

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and navigation system

You can navigate directly to your contacts.

Important: An address must be available for a contact.

- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select NAVIGATION > (문) > Contacts > a contact.
- ▶ Press on an address belonging to the contact.
- Press on a suggested address. The **Details** menu will be displayed.
- ▶ Press Start.



- If a directory contact is greyed out, no address has yet been added for the contact.
- Navigation to geographical coordinates for a contact is not possible.

### Loading received destinations and tours

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect infotainment

You can search for destinations or tours in the myAudi app and send them to the vehicle.

Important: The MMI and the mobile device must be connected to the Internet ⇒ page 205, Audi connect and you must have installed the myAudi app on your mobile device.

- Send a destination/a tour to the vehicle from the myAudi app.
- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select NAVIGATION > (晉) > Received destinations and tours.
- Make sure that you are logged in to the vehicle and the myAudi app with the same myAudi account. The received destinations and tours will be loaded automatically.
- ► To navigate to a destination: Press a destina-
- ► To delete destinations: Select \$\mathscr{L}\_{\beta}\$ > one or more entries or Select all > Delete > (Done).

#### **Destination details**

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 148 Details

When you select a destination, the details are displayed. The route guidance is not activated at this point.

The functions available depend on the vehicle's equipment and the destination selected.

- Map preview: To enlarge the map preview, press on the map.
- **2 Route criteria**: Refer to ⇒ page 227.
- More: Additional functions.
- Weather: Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇒ page 205, Audi connect. Also refer to ⇒ page 206.
- (5) Applies to: MMI and telephone

**Call**: Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI ⇒ page 194. The call is made directly to the phone number which is stored for the destination.

- Start: To start navigating to the destination shown immediately. The map will be displayed ⇒ page 220, How to use the map.
- Park: Press Park to search for a car park at the destination. You can use the car park directly as the destination or stopover.
- Betails: Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet 

  page 205, Audi connect.
- Display showing distance/driving time to destination
- Weather at destination: Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇒ page 205, Audi connect.

#### Using a destination from the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

A location on the map can be set as a destination.

#### Calling up the map

Applies to: MMI

- ► On the home screen, press NAVIGATION.
- ▶ Press △ to show the map (if necessary).

#### Setting a convenient map scale

► Select: 戶/戶 > a scale.

#### Marking a destination

 Press on a location on the map and hold it until a marking or the address of the selected destination is shown.

# Using map content (e.g. special destination) as a destination

Important: Map content must be displayed ⇒ page 226.

▶ Press on a location on the map (e.g. 🚻).

#### Setting the destination

► Select: 🔁 > Start.

The route guidance function is activated and the map is displayed ⇒ page 219, Fig. 149.

#### Stopovers and tour plan

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can enter further destinations while route quidance is active.

#### Entering a stopover

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

▶ Enter a destination ⇒ page 216.

#### Displaying stopovers/tour plan

All destinations are listed in the tour plan.

► On the map legend menu, press 🏻 ⇒ page 219, Fig. 149.

#### **Editing stopovers**

► On the map legend menu, press Page 219, Fig. 149.

- ► To add a stopover: Select Add destination > a destination > Add.
- ► To move a stopover: Press 

  =. Touch the 

  symbol and move the entry to the desired position.

  Press Done.
- ► To delete a stopover: Select  $\mathscr{L}_{\equiv}$  > one or more entries or Select all > Delete > (Done).

### Stopping route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Important: The route guidance function must be active and the map must be displayed.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: Press 🕅 ⇒ page 219, Fig. 149.
- ► Applies to multi-function steering wheel: On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab > button > Stop route guidance.

### Map

#### Map functions

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 149 Active route guidance



Fig. 150 Marked object on map

#### Calling up the map

Applies to: MMI

- ▶ On the home screen, press NAVIGATION.
- ▶ Press △ to show the map (if necessary).

The following list gives an overview of the information displayed on the map. Press on a function (e.g. Alternative routes) to display further options.

- 1 Select a destination ⇒ page 217
- ② Enter a destination via the intelligent search function ⇒ page 216
- (3) Stop route guidance ⇒ page 219
- (4) Current route
- S Request spoken cue
- 6 Alternative routes ⇒ page 221
- ⑦ Display active destinations/stopovers/tour plan ⇒ page 219. The distance to the destination including the estimated time of arrival is displayed.
- 8 Online traffic information ⇒ page 224
- Altitude
- Display of the maximum speed limit<sup>1)</sup> in towns, on motorways, dual carriageways and other major roads.
- Current vehicle position
- Route information ⇒ page 227
- 13 Name of the street you are currently on.
- Start route guidance for a marked object on the map 
   page 219, Using a destination from the map
- Display details for the destination⇒ page 218
- [6] Intelligent search in immediate vicinity
- Set map orientation. Also refer to ⇒ page 226.
- 18 Navigation settings ⇒ page 226
- Set map scale. Press on the magnifying glass displayed on the map to activate/deactivate the automatic zoom directly ⇒ page 226. The p symbol appears when the function is activated.
- 20 Marked destination. Refer to ⇒ page 219, Using a destination from the map.
- ② Map content (special destinations, favourites). If several different types of map content are located close to each other, their symbols are stacked on the map. To display a list of individual symbols, press on □ ♀ Fig. 150. Press on a special destination from the list.
- Centre map to current vehicle position

- Green: no obstructions

- Orange: slow-moving traffic

Red: traffic jams/obstructions

### Further possible symbols on the map

Symbol	Description
Ġ	Home address ⇔ page 221, Favourites
	Business address ⇒ page 221, Favourites
*	Favourites ⇒ page 221
20	Shows the current destination

#### **Traffic information**

- Coloured warning symbols: There is an upcoming traffic obstruction or hazard alert on your route.
- Greyed out warning symbols: Traffic obstructions that are not relevant for your route.
- All traffic jams or other obstructions are marked with a coloured warning symbol on the map when route guidance is not active.
- Warning symbols with arrow: Traffic obstructions that you have avoided, e.g. .

#### How to use the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can use the gestures described below to operate the map ⇒ page 219, Fig. 149.

#### Moving the map

Swipe in the desired direction with one finger.

#### Moving the map quickly

Swipe in the desired direction with one finger and release the map while doing so.

#### Zooming in on the map

- ► Move two fingers apart on the map, or:
- ▶ Double tap the map with your finger.

Traffic information and estimated delay on the route

Applies to vehicles without camera-based speed limit display only

#### Zooming out on the map

- ▶ Move two fingers together on the map, or:
- ▶ Double tap the map with two fingers.

#### Turning the map

► Turn the map with two fingers.

#### Tilting the map

► Swipe up/down with two fingers.

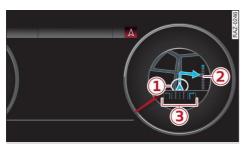


#### Note

Some of these methods may not be available on every touch display or in every menu.

# Navigation view when route guidance is started

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi virtual cockpit



**Fig. 151** Standard view in instrument cluster: Turn-off with route quidance started

Important: The route guidance function must have been started  $\Rightarrow$  page 216.

The following information is displayed in the driver information system (if available):

- 1 Current vehicle position
- ② A bar graph appears when you approach a turn-off. The fewer bars are displayed, the shorter the distance to the turn-off point. If no turn-off is imminent, the right-hand speedometer shows the remaining distance to the destination/stopover, the estimated arrival time and a direction arrow for the upcoming manoeuvre. If there is no upcoming manoeuvre, the distance to the next manoeuvre is displayed.
- 3 Lane recommendation

### Alternative routes

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 152 Display of alternative routes on the overview map

#### Calling up alternative routes

Important: The route guidance function must have been started  $\Rightarrow$  page 216 and the map must be displayed  $\Rightarrow$  page 220.

On the map legend menu, press ₱ ⇒ page 219, Fig. 149.

#### 1 Current route

The distance to the destination and the estimated time of arrival is displayed for the current route.

### 2 Alternative route

The difference in time compared with the currently selected route is displayed.

# Displaying an alternative route in the foreground

- ► Press on ① in the corresponding information window, or:
- Press and hold the information window for the corresponding alternative route (e.g. ②
   ⇒ Fig. 152).

#### Selecting a route

► Press on the information window for the corresponding route (e.g. ② ⇒ Fig. 152).

### **Further functions**

#### **Favourites**

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can call up frequently required destinations in your favourites. The home address/business address option is a quick and easy way of starting route guidance.

#### Calling up the favourites

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select NAVIGATION > (문) > Favourites.

If you are using myAudi navigation, your favourites will be synchronised with your myAudi account ⇒ page 215.

#### Storing a favourite

▶ Press ☆ in the **Details** menu ⇒ page 218, Fig. 148.

#### Storing home/business address

- Press Home address/Business address. When you call this menu up for the first time, you will be asked to set the corresponding address.
- ► Select: **Create now** > *enter a destination* > **OK**.

#### **Editing favourites**

Important: The favourites list must be displayed.

- ► To use a favourite as the destination: Press a favourite.
- ► To delete a favourite: In the Details menu, press on ★ ⇒ page 218, Fig. 148 or select the following: \$\mathscr{L}\_{\mathscr{m}} > one or more entries or Select all > Delete > (Done).
- ➤ To move a favourite: Press  $\angle$ <sub>=</sub>. Touch the  $\diamondsuit$  symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.

### (i) Note

- If you delete the home/business address, only the address is deleted. The entry in the favourites is still displayed.
- When moving favourites, please note that positions 1 and 2 are reserved for the home and business addresses.

#### **On-street parking**

Applies to: navigation system and on-street parking

You can have roadside parking spaces displayed in locations which support this feature.

1) Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider. Important: **Parking** must be activated in the notifications ⇒ page 26, Notification centre. The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇒ page 205, Audi connect. Route guidance is active, you are almost at your destination and a notification is displayed, or a point on the map is marked.

- ▶ Press on the notification. Or: Press on 🗒 on the map.
- ► To navigate to a parking space, press on a colour marking on the map.
- ► Select: 🔁 > Start.

Colour markings on the map indicate the probability of finding a space, depending on availability.

Colour	Description
green	high probability
orange	average probability
red	low probability

### Satellite map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and satellite map

You can have the navigation map shown with satellite images.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇒ page 205, Audi connect.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select NAVIGATION > ② > Map settings > Satellite map<sup>1)</sup>.

For this map display, the system uses data packets received online in the form of satellite pictures and combines these pictures with the road network from the standard map display  $\Rightarrow$  page 219, Fig. 149.



#### i) Note

The satellite map<sup>1)</sup> is updated at regular intervals when it is called up. This can take a few seconds.



 Depending on the Internet connection, the standard map may also be displayed when the satellite map<sup>1)</sup> is activated.

### Electric range

Applies to: vehicles with electric range display



Fig. 153 Display showing electric range

The electric range function shows you the maximum distance you can drive using electric power. This takes into account factors such as road categories, speed and road elevation.

- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select NAVIGATION > ② > Map settings > Show range.
- Depending on the prevailing conditions, the beginning of the coloured area shows the likely minimum electric range of your vehicle.
- The maximum distance your vehicle can travel on electric power in ideal conditions is shown by the border.

## Map update

#### Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can update the map material on your navigation system. The functions depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Map update via the online map update function ⇒ page 223.
- Map update via the myAudi app.
- Importing a map update to your MMI via USB connection ⇒ page 224.

#### Online map update

Applies to: vehicles with online map update

With the online map update function you can update the map material of your navigation system directly in the vehicle.

The MMI uses the vehicle's position to determine regions and uses this information to provide you with updates for these regions.

#### Starting the map update

Applies to: MMI

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇒ page 205, Audi connect.

 To always allow automatic map updates, select the following on the home screen: SETTINGS > System maintenance > Automatic online map update. The MMI will start the map update automatically in the background as soon as new map material is available.

You can check the status of the download process and the installation in the notification centre ⇒ page 26.



#### **CAUTION**

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs 

□ in General information on page 205.



#### Note

Due to the high volume of data, Audi recommends carrying out the map update via the USB connection  $\Rightarrow$  page 224.

#### Map update via the myAudi app

Applies to: vehicles with map update via the myAudi app

You can update the map material of your navigation system using the myAudi app.

Map update at your Audi dealer, who may charge for this service.

<sup>1)</sup> Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

#### Downloading the update

Important: You must have created a myAudi account and must have added your vehicle to it.

- ► Install the myAudi app on your mobile device and log in with your access data. Use the same myAudi account that you use for your myAudi user in the vehicle.
- ▶ Download the map material in the myAudi app.

#### Installing the update

- ► Log in as a myAudi user in the vehicle ⇒ page 34.
- Connect your smartphone to the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot ⇒ page 206. The MMI will detect the map material on your smartphone and the map update will start automatically.

You can check the status of the installation in the notification centre  $\Rightarrow$  page 26.

#### Map update via USB connection

Applies to: vehicles with map update via USB connection

You can update the map material of your navigation system using the map update function.

Important: You must have created a myAudi account at my.audi.com. You must have added your vehicle to the myAudi account.

#### Downloading the update

➤ Download the map update at my.audi.com and save it on a USB stick. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

#### Installing the update

- ► Connect the USB stick to the Audi music interface ⇒ page 237.
- ► Call up the notification in the notification centre ⇒ page 26 and press on the notification.
- ► Press **Next**. The status of the installation will be shown on the display.

### Traffic information

#### Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and online traffic information



Fig. 154 Overview of traffic information

#### Calling up traffic information

Important: The map must be displayed ⇒ page 220.

► Press on the traffic jam sign in the map legend menu ⇒ page 219, Fig. 149.

#### Displaying traffic message details

- ▶ Press on the traffic message (2) ⇒ Fig. 154.
- Press ← or → to display the previous/next traffic message.

The following information can be displayed ⇒ Fig. 154:

- ① If your MMI has calculated a better route for the current route guidance, a corresponding message is shown. The estimated delay takes into account future changes to the traffic situation on the route. Press on the entry in the list ① and select the better route. Further information can be found on ⇒ page 221.
- ② A traffic message is displayed. The distance to the hazard location is calculated based on the current vehicle position.
- Traffic messages are only displayed when route guidance is active. Press on the corresponding line to have details displayed.

### (i) Note

 Urgent traffic information, such as a car travelling in the wrong direction on the motorway, is displayed automatically as a notification. Traffic information is not available in certain countries.

#### Traffic avoidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

By receiving traffic information, your MMI calculates a better route (if one is available) and any possible time saving compared to the current route guidance.

The following options are available:

#### Automatic traffic avoidance

► Set traffic avoidance to **automatic** ⇒ page 227 and start route guidance.

If a better route is available, this is set automatically. The MMI does not inform you of a better route if the calculated time needed to avoid the traffic jam exceeds the estimated time lost in the traffic jam.

#### Manual traffic avoidance

► Set traffic avoidance to **manual** ⇒ page 227 and start route quidance.

The MMI informs you if a better route is available via a notification or a message in the traffic information ① ⇒ page 224, Fig. 154. You can then choose which route you would like to use.

To select a better route, you have the following options:

- ▶ Notification: Press ♣; the better route will be used for route guidance. Alternatively, press on the notification and then press on the information window for the better route (e.g. ② ⇒ page 221, Fig. 152).
- ► Message in the traffic information: Press on the entry in the list ① ⇒ page 224, Fig. 154.

  Press on the information window for the better route (e.g. ② ⇒ page 221, Fig. 152).

#### Online traffic information

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and online traffic information

The MMI system can receive real-time information from the Internet regarding traffic congestion, accidents, roadworks and other incidents.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇒ page 205, Audi connect. The MMI traffic information must be switched on ⇒ page 226.

Traffic information is displayed on the standard map ⇒ page 219, Fig. 149.

Online traffic information is also displayed on the satellite map  $\Rightarrow page 222$ .

### (i)

#### Note

- Every vehicle with active online traffic information contributes to specifying and predicting the traffic situation as precisely as possible. For this purpose, information on the position of your vehicle is encrypted and transmitted anonymously to the traffic data providers at regular intervals. You can switch off the data transmission at any time ⇒ page 314.
- The online traffic information network is not available in all countries or areas.

### Hazard alerts

#### General notes

Applies to: vehicles with hazard alerts

The hazard alerts function allows information on hazards such as accidents, breakdowns, skidding risks or poor visibility to be detected by Audi vehicles ahead of you and forwarded to your vehicle online.

This function is subject to certain general system limitations and may be restricted or unavailable if the Audi vehicle driving ahead does not detect a hazard, e.g.:

- If the ASR or ABS was not triggered on a slippery road ⇒ page 118
- If the hazard warning lights of a broken-down vehicle were not switched on
- If the rear fog light was not switched on in poor visibility conditions
- If a vehicle's airbag was not triggered in an accident



#### **WARNING**

Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using the hazard alerts function. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.

#### Setting up

Applies to: hazard alerts

Important: The requirements for Audi connect infotainment must be met  $\Rightarrow$  page 205.

#### Switching hazard alerts on/off on the map

▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select NAVIGATION > ② > Map settings > Traffic > Traffic information.

# Switching hazard alerts on/off on the instrument cluster

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select
 CAR > Driver assist > Hazard alerts.

#### How to use

Applies to: hazard alerts

A hazard alert is displayed on the instrument cluster for a few seconds when it is received. To hide the hazard alerts, press the \_\_\_\_\_ button on the multi-function steering wheel.

### Displaying hazard alerts on the map

Applies to: MMI

- ▶ On the home screen, press NAVIGATION.
- ▶ Press △ to show the map (if necessary).

Important: **Traffic information** must be switched on  $\Rightarrow$  *page 226*.

Breakdowns, accidents and slippery roads will be displayed on the map ⇒ page 219, Fig. 149.

#### Displaying in the route information

Important: **Traffic information** must be switched on ⇒ *page 227*.

Breakdowns, accidents and slippery roads will be shown in the route information  $\Rightarrow$  page 227.

#### Displaying in the traffic information

Breakdowns, accidents and slippery roads will be displayed in the traffic messages ⇒ page 224, Fig. 154.

### Settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can adjust the navigation system to suit your individual needs in the instrument cluster and on the MMI display. The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

#### Calling up the settings

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select NAVIGATION > ②.

# Calling up the settings via the multi-function steering wheel

► Applies to multi-function steering wheel: On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab ➤ 🗐 button.

Please note that a map setting made with the multi-function steering wheel only applies to the instrument cluster map.

#### Map settings

**Satellite map**: Refer to ⇒ page 222.

**Traffic**: You can have current traffic information displayed on the map.

- No traffic jams/obstructions
- Traffic jams/obstructions
- Traffic information

#### Map colours

- automatic: The colour of the map changes to match the current light conditions (e.g. from day to night when driving through tunnels).
- day/night

#### Map orientation

- 2D driving position/2D north: The map depicts the vehicle's current position. The map is set to face the direction of travel or north.
- 3D driving position: The current vehicle position is displayed on a three-dimensional map, and the map is set to face the direction of travel.

- overview: The entire route from the vehicle position to the final destination or next stopover is displayed on the map. The map is set to face north.
- Prayer compass: Refer to ⇒ page 227.

#### Automatic zoom

- On: The map scale is adjusted automatically according to the category of the road you are on (motorway, major road, other road) to ensure that you always have the best possible overview of the route ahead. When there is an upcoming turn-off, the map display will be adjusted automatically so that you have a more detailed view.
- Intersection: When route guidance is active and there is an upcoming turn-off, the map display will be adjusted automatically so that you have a more detailed view.
- Off

MMI map content/Map content: This function controls whether additional information (e.g. special destinations) is shown on the map on the centre display.

#### Voice guidance

**Voice guidance**: You can change the spoken cue settings. With the setting **traffic**, the MMI will only give spoken cues on traffic jams/obstructions on your route.

#### Voice guidance during calls

Entertainment fader for navigation system: This option allows the volume of the current audio source to be temporarily reduced while a navigation cue is being played.

#### Route criteria

You can set which route criteria are permitted for the route calculation and which should be avoided.

**Traffic avoidance**: Your MMI will receive traffic information which will enable it to calculate a better route ⇒ page 225, Traffic avoidance

- Automatic
- Manual

#### Motorways

#### Vignette roads

#### Toll roads

#### **Ferries**

#### Motorail

#### Seasonally restricted

- Automatic: The MMI determines whether the seasonally restricted road can be included in the route calculation based on the time tables currently stored in the navigation data.
- Allow: Roads that are closed seasonally are included in the route calculation.
- Avoid: Roads that are closed seasonally (e.g. mountain passes) are excluded from the route calculation.

#### Route information

When this function is switched on and route guidance is active, route information 
⇒ page 219, Fig. 149 is shown. The next manoeuvre is displayed at the bottom. Special destinations and traffic information are also displayed. Press on the route information to have a preview of the next manoeuvre displayed on the map. You can switch the following information in the route information on/off:

- Special destinations along the route
- Traffic information

#### Prayer compass display<sup>1)</sup>

Applies to: vehicles with prayer compass

Important: The standard map must be displayed ⇒ page 219.

Select: > Map settings > Map orientation > Mecca. The direction of prayer in relation to the current vehicle position will be displayed.

#### Presentation mode

In presentation mode, the system "drives" the planned route on the display without moving the vehicle. You can choose your start location manually (Set start location) if, for example, you

This function is only available for the markets of the Gulf Cooperation Council (GCC) member states.

#### Navigation

would like to calculate a route starting from a different position than the current position of the vehicle. To simulate route guidance: Start route guidance and press Presentation mode.



You can change the volume of a spoken cue while it is being played  $\Rightarrow$  page 33.

#### Radio

#### General notes

#### Calling up the radio menu



Fig. 155 Centre display: DAB/FM station list

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the radio may support the wavebands FM, AM and DAB (digital radio). You can use the HD Radio receiver\* to receive radio stations from the FM/AM wavebands digitally.

Depending on the station list selected, the following information may be displayed:

#### Station list

Shows the stations that can currently be received. The station list is updated automatically.

#### Station

Information such as the station name is displayed if available.

#### (3) Programme type

The programme type of the station is displayed if available. Depending on the country, it may be necessary to switch on the option to display **Station genres** ⇒ page 234.

#### (4) Waveband

Shows the current waveband of the station.

In addition to the regular waveband symbols, the following information may be available depending on the equipment in your vehicle:

Symbol	Description
[FM]/[DAB]	The station provides information on its alternative Internet station in the background. For this, <b>Service following online</b> must be switched on ⇒ page 234.
∑WEB	The station is being received via the Internet.
(vp)	The system is attempting to receive the station/podcast via the Internet.
T/s	The DAB station can no longer be received.

### (i) Note

- The DAB\* waveband is not available in all countries.
- The DAB\* waveband also supports the transmission standard DAB+\*, where available.

#### Controlling the radio via the MMI

- Applies to MMI: To select a waveband, select the following from the home screen: RADIO > Source > a category.
- ► Applies to MMI: To select a station, select the following from the home screen: RADIO > Source > a category > a station/podcast\*.
- ► To tune to a specific frequency, follow the instructions on ⇒ page 231, Search function.

# Controlling the radio via the multi-function steering wheel

Important: Radio mode must have been started.

- On the instrument cluster, select the radio/ media tab.
- ► To switch between radio and media, select the ■ button > Switch to radio/Switch to media.
- ► To display the station list, scroll the left thumbwheel.
- ► To switch to another source, press the 🔳 button.
- ► To select a station/source, scroll and press the left thumbwheel.



#### Note

Applies to multi-function steering wheel: It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

### Radio functions

#### Overview



Fig. 156 Centre display: Radio functions, playback view (left-side); sources (right-side)

#### How to use

- Applies to MMI: To open the playback view ①, select the following on the home screen: RA-DIO > Source > a category > a station/podcast\*.
- Applies to MMI: To open the sources ②, select the following on the home screen: RADIO > Source.

Depending on the radio station/podcast\* selected and the vehicle's equipment, the following options may be available:

	Symbol/designation	Description	
3	Source	To display sources in the radio menu.	
4	Waveband	Shows the current waveband of a station.	
(5)	☆/★	Favourites ⇒ page 231	
6	0	Settings ⇒ page 234	
7	Station logo	Depending on availability, you can switch between various views by pressing the station logo. Swipe to the right/left with one finger to switch between <b>Station logo</b> , <b>Cover art*</b> (album covers) and <b>Slide show*</b> (e.g. studio photos, current photos of artists or album covers, etc.). Also refer to \$\infty\$ page 234, <b>Additional online data</b> .	
8	₽	To go back one level.	
9	Search	Refer to ⇒ page 231.	
10	Last stations	Refer to ⇒ page 231.	
11	Favourites	Refer to ⇒ page 231.	

	Symbol/designation	Description	
12	FM or DAB/FM	To display stations from the <b>FM</b> waveband or the mixed <b>DAB/FM</b> station list.	
13	Online	Refer to ⇒ page 232.	
14	AM	To display stations from the <b>AM</b> waveband.	
15	More	To call up options on the current station ⇒ page 234.	
16	N/N	To select the previous/next station.	
17	以))/以	To mute/unmute the playback.	
18	List	To display the station list ⇒ page 229.	
19	If available, the station name and additional information as a plement to the normal programme may be shown, for example so refer to ⇒ page 234, Additional online data.		

#### CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs  $\Rightarrow$  1) in General information on page 205.



#### Note

Please note that not all functions are available in all sources and for all touch displays.

#### **Search function**

You can use the intelligent search function to find station names, frequencies<sup>1)</sup>, programme types (e.g. News), podcasts\* or online radio stations\*.

### Calling up the search function

▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select RA-DIO > Source > Search.

#### Entering search terms

You can enter several search terms together in any order.

The following information is available:

Symbol	Description	
0	Result from the <b>Last stations</b> list	
☆	Result from the <b>Favourites</b> list	
((oh))	Result from a <b>Station list</b>	
e.g. 🛌	Waveband of the station	

### This function is not available for DAB\* waveband.

#### Last stations

You can listen to stations from all frequencies that you have previously listened to.

#### Calling up last stations

▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select RA-DIO > Source > Last stations.

#### Listening to last stations

▶ Press on a station.

#### **Deleting last stations**

Delete > (Done).

#### **Favourites**

You can store your favourite stations from any waveband in the favourites list.

#### Calling up favourites via the MMI

▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select RA-**DIO** > **Source** > **Favourites** > a favourite.

#### Storing a favourite

► In the playback view, press ☆ (5) ⇒ page 230, Fig. 156.

Important: A list of radio stations must be displayed  $\Rightarrow$  page 229, Fig. 155.

▶ Press and hold an entry from the list until the **Options** menu appears.

► Press Store as favourite.

#### **Editing favourites**

- ► To delete a favourite: Press on ★ in the playback view. or:
- ► In the favourites list, select:  $\mathscr{A}_{\equiv}$  > one or more stations or Select all > Delete > (Done).

Important: The favourites list must be displayed.

- ► To move a favourite: Press 🚛
- ► Touch the \$\displays \text{symbol and move the entry to the desired position.}
- ▶ Press Done

#### Radio text

Additional information on the programme (e.g. general text messages, artist, composer, track) is shown in the radio text.

Important: The selected radio station must support the radio text function.

#### Calling up the radio text

▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select RA-DIO > a waveband (e.g. FM) > a station > More > Radio text.

The following functions may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

#### Displaying the most recent radio text entries

 Swipe down with one finger. Depending on the availability, the most recent radio text entries will be displayed.

#### Browsing through radio text entries

▶ Swipe up/down with one finger.

#### Calling up RadioText Plus information

If a radio text entry is displayed in colour, the station has provided a telephone number or a navigation destination as RadioText Plus information.

The following options are available:

#### Setting the destination

Select: a navigation destination marked in colour > Set as destination.

#### Making a call

Select: a telephone number marked in colour > Call.



#### Note

A call to a number given in radio text will be started immediately.

#### Online radio

#### **General information**

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and online radio

You can use the online radio function to listen to different radio stations/podcasts from the Internet.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet. A data plan must be available ⇒ page 209.

#### Calling up online radio via the MMI

 Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select RA-DIO > Source > Online.

The following functions are available:

#### Last selected

The list of most recently played stations/podcasts will be displayed.

#### Top stations

The most popular online radio stations will be displayed.

#### Filtering the list

▶ Select  $\mathcal{P}_{\equiv}$  > (a category) > a station/podcast.

The following categories may be available:

- Countries
- Genres
- Languages
- Editor's picks
- Topics
- Nearby

#### CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs  $\Rightarrow$  ① in General information on page 205.

#### i) Note

- Depending on the Internet connection and network load, online radio playback may be interrupted.
- It may not be possible to receive online radio if your Internet connection's speed has been limited.
- Whether online radio can be used depends on the availability of services provided by third parties.
- The scope of the online radio services and the way that they are displayed in the vehicle may differ from the third party service.
- Please note that some online radio stations may not be available in certain countries.
- Audi only enables you to access online radio via the MMI and accepts no responsibility for the content of the services.

#### **Podcasts**

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and online radio

#### Calling up podcasts via the MMI

▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select RA-DIO > Source > Online > Podcasts.

The following functions are available:

### Listening to a podcast

► Select a podcast > a podcast episode.

#### Search

▶ Press 🖳

The following functions are available in the podcast playback view:

#### Displaying podcast episodes

► Press List.

#### Starting/stopping podcast playback

▶ Press ▷/II.

#### Previous/next podcast

▶ Press ⋈/⋈.

#### Adjusting the play position

▶ Move the control slider to the desired position.

#### Displaying the online radio menu

► Press 🏭.

#### Switching to radio

▶ Press **Source**. The sources in the radio menu will be displayed.

#### Podcast favourites

You can store podcasts in the podcast favourites.

Important: The playback view for a podcast must be displayed.

▶ Press  $\diamondsuit$  (5)  $\Rightarrow$  page 230, Fig. 156.

Important: A list of podcasts must be displayed.

- ▶ Press and hold an entry from the list until the Options menu appears.
- ▶ Press on Favourite podcast.

#### Listening to a podcast favourite

Important: The podcast favourites must be displayed and at least one podcast favourite must have been stored.

► Select a podcast > a podcast episode.

#### Browsing podcast favourites

Important: The podcast favourites must be displayed and at least one podcast favourite must have been stored.

▶ Press < or >.

#### Displaying all podcast favourites

Important: The podcast favourites must be displayed and at least one podcast favourite must have been stored.

► Press All.

#### **Editing podcast favourites**

► To delete a podcast favourite: Press ★ in the playback view, or:

► In the podcast favourites, select All > \$\int\_{\text{\overline}}\$ > one or more podcasts or Select all > Delete > (Done).

Important: The podcast favourites must be displayed.

- ► To move a podcast favourite: Select All > A.
- ► Touch the \$\displays \text{symbol and move the entry to the desired position.}
- ► Press Done.

### **Options and settings**

#### Options

Important: The playback view ① must be displayed ⇒ page 230, Fig. 156.

▶ Press More (15). Or:

Important: A list of radio stations/podcasts\* must be displayed ⇒ page 229, Fig. 155.

Press and hold an entry from the list until the Options menu appears.

The following functions may be available depending on the source selected:

- Store as favourite ⇒ page 231.
- Radio text ⇒ page 232.
- Favourite podcast ⇒ page 233, Podcast favourites.

#### Settings

▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select RA-DIO > ②.

The following settings may be available depending on the country and on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

#### HD Radio FM/HD Radio AM

You can switch the reception of HD Radio on or off.

#### Traffic announcements

When this function is switched on, you can receive traffic announcements from different wavebands. If DAB traffic announcements are not available from the station currently set, they will be received from the FM waveband.

#### DAB announcements

When this function is switched on, you can receive announcements such as news or weather information.

#### Station genres

You can switch the programme type display on/off (e.g. **News**).

#### Disaster warning

When this function is activated, alarm announcements are shown in the notification centre ⇒ page 26.

# Service following between related DAB stations

When this function is switched on, the tuner attempts to find an alternative reception option when the reception quality becomes weaker.

When the function is switched off, the system will not do this. The current station will be maintained, and in some cases may no longer be received.

#### Additional online data

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet. A data plan must be available ⇒ page 209.

When this function is switched on, additional information (e.g. album cover, artist, track) will be downloaded from different providers, if available.

#### Service following online

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet. A data plan must be available ⇒ page 209. A station must be providing information on its alternative Internet station in the background and must be marked with the symbol [FM] or [□AB]

The radio tuner can establish a data connection and switch to an alternative station on the Internet (if available) if there is a loss of reception in the FM or DAB waveband. You may be able to receive your local radio stations in all the regions of your country via the Internet. This may lead to additional costs  $\Rightarrow$  ①. The we symbol denotes a

station which is currently being received via the Internet.

- Automatic/Off: Activates/deactivates the function to switch automatically to an alternative station on the Internet.
- With request: Manual confirmation is required in order to switch to an alternative station on the Internet.

#### Preferred online radio bit rate

Depending on the radio station selected, you can set the bit rate for online radio  $\Rightarrow$  page 232 and for **Service following online**.

To achieve the best possible playback sound quality, press **High**. To reduce data consumption, press **Low**.

### CAUTION

## (i)

Note

- If the function ⇒ page 234, Traffic announcements or ⇒ page 234, DAB announcements is switched on, playback is interrupted for announcements. To interrupt the announcement, press ② on the MMI touch control ⇒ page 33, Fig. 21.
- There may be delays when the system is switching between regular wavebands and online radio automatically.

## Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
A station is no longer listed in the station list.	Store the station as a favourite in advance and call it up via the favourites list $\Rightarrow$ page 231.
Online radio: No online radio playback.	Check that a data plan has been purchased for the country in question and that it is available $\Rightarrow$ page 209.

#### Media

### General notes

Various media sources and various options for connecting devices may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle. For example, you can play media files from a USB stick or connect mobile devices to the Audi music interface and operate them via the MMI.

Media and format limitations: The MMI system (including the connection for the USB mass storage device) has been tested for use with many of the products and media currently available on the market. However, there may be some devices/media and media files that are not supported or cannot be played, or the functionality may be limited under certain circumstances.

**Restricted performance**: If you experience restricted performance, reset the MMI to the factory settings ⇒ page 248.

**Digital rights management**: Please note that copyright law applies to media files.

DRM-protected files will not be played; these files are marked with the symbol  $\overline{\Box}$ .

**Data storage**: Never store important data on mobile devices. Audi shall not accept any liability whatsoever for the loss of files and media.

Loading time: The more files/folders/playlists are stored on a device, the longer it will take to load the files. If you want to reduce the time it takes to load the media files, use a storage medium which contains only media files, and create subfolders (e.g. for an artist or album).

Metadata: Metadata stored on audio files (e.g. artists, tracks, album covers) will be displayed automatically when the files are played. If this information is not stored on the relevant medium, the MMI system will use the database of metadata from Gracenote stored locally or online ⇒ page 242, Additional online data. Nevertheless, metadata may not be displayed in some cases.



#### **CAUTION**

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs 

□ in General information on page 205.

### Bluetooth audio player

You can use the Bluetooth audio player to play music from your Bluetooth-enabled mobile device (e.g. smartphone) wirelessly via the MMI.

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile device during the connection procedure. The Bluetooth function and the discoverability option of the MMI system ⇒ page 248 and the mobile device must be activated.

#### Connecting a mobile device

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select
   MEDIA > Source > Connect external device >
   New connection. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown after a few seconds.
- Press on the desired mobile device in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
- ▶ To update the list, press ♥.

A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be created.

► Confirm the PIN on your mobile device.

After the mobile device has been connected successfully, it will be shown as a Bluetooth audio player in the **Connected devices** menu.

Playing media ⇒ page 238



#### Note

- Pay attention to any connection queries on your Bluetooth device.
- You can bond several Bluetooth audio players to the MMI; however only one external device at a time can be actively connected to the MMI as a Bluetooth audio player 
   ⇒ page 248.
- Which media functions (e.g. random playback, list view, categories, search function, options) are supported depends on the Bluetooth device you are using.

- Please note the volume control on your Bluetooth device. Audi recommends setting the volume of mobile devices to maximum when they are being used as Bluetooth audio players.
- You can find a selection of supported Bluetooth devices in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

### Amazon Alexa

Applies to: vehicles with Amazon Alexa integration

You can play back different Amazon Alexa content over the MMI. The speech dialogue system is used for voice control.

Important: Amazon Alexa must be activated ⇒ page 31.

- ► Start Amazon Alexa via the speech dialogue system.
- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select MEDIA > Source > Amazon Alexa.

## (!) CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇒ page 205.

### Multimedia connections

#### **USB** adapters

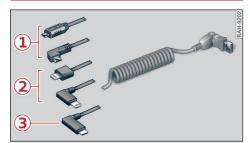


Fig. 157 Audi Genuine Accessories: USB adapters

You can connect your mobile devices to the MMI and simultaneously charge the battery using a USB adapter connected to the Audi music interface.

The USB adapters are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers:

- USB adapter for devices with micro
   USB connector
- 2 USB adapter for Apple devices with Lightning connector
- 3 USB adapter for devices with USB-C connector

## (1)

#### **CAUTION**

Please handle the USB adapters with care. Make sure the cable does not become pinched or trapped.

## (i)

#### Note

Apple devices with dock connector can only be charged using a suitable USB adapter but cannot transfer data.

#### Audi music interface

You can connect your mobile devices via the Audi music interface in order to charge the battery and operate the devices via the MMI.

The USB inputs for the Audi music interface are located in the front centre console and in the rear cabin\* and are marked with the symbol ••. If several USB devices are connected to the USB inputs (e.g. a smartphone and a USB stick), all of the devices can be used as a playback source.

# Connecting/charging a mobile device via USB adapter

► Connect the corresponding USB adapter to the USB input on the Audi music interface and then connect it to the mobile device (e.g. smartphone).

The battery will be charged automatically.

Mobile devices connected to the Audi music interface are started and operated via the MMI 
⇒ page 238.

# Disconnecting a mobile device from the Audi music interface

Disconnect the USB adapter from the Audi music interface.

#### WARNING

Today's driving conditions require your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident!

#### CAUTION

- To avoid damaging the USB inputs, please take care when detaching the connector from the Audi music interface.
- Use a USB extension cable to connect devices with an integrated USB connector (e.g. USB sticks). This will help to avoid damage to your USB device and the Audi music interface.
- Very high or very low temperatures (a common occurrence in a car's interior) can cause damage to mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Please do not leave your mobile devices in the vehicle when the temperature is very high or very low.

#### Note

- Please always observe the information *⇒* page 82.
- When you switch off the ignition, the USB ports will continue to be supplied with power as long as the energy management system does not intervene.
- Do not use any additional USB extension cables or adapters when connecting mobile devices which have an integrated cable or which must be connected via a USB adapter ⇒ page 237, Fig. 157 to the Audi music interface; this could cause performance issues.
- It cannot be guaranteed that mobile devices which do not meet the specification USB 2.0 will function properly.
- USB hubs are not supported.
- Video playback via the Audi music interface is not supported by Apple devices or by MTP devices (e.g. smartphones).
- iPod touch/iPhone malfunctions also affect operation of the device via the MMI. In this case, please reset your mobile device.

- Audi recommends that you use the most upto-date iPod touch/iPhone software possible. Please refer to the operating instructions of your mobile device for important information.
- iPod touch/iPhone 5 and later with Lightning connector are supported via the USB adapter on the Audi music interface.
- You can find a selection of supported devices in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/mp3.

### Playing media

#### **Media sources**

The following media sources can be selected, depending on the vehicle's equipment:

- Amazon Alexa ⇒ page 237.
- USB device ⇒ page 237.
- External device: You can connect external devices via Bluetooth and use the Bluetooth audio player ⇒ page 236. Alternatively, you can connect an external device directly to the Audi music interface  $\Rightarrow$  page 237.

#### Calling up media

#### Playing media files via the MMI

- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select MEDIA > Source > a source. The symbol for a source may change depending on the device connected. The device name may be displayed (e.g. MyPhone).
- ▶ Select a track from the categories in the media centre ⇒ page 239.

#### Playing media files via the multi-function steering wheel

Important: At least one media source must contain media files ⇒ page 238.

- ▶ On the instrument cluster, select the radio/ media tab.
- ► To display the playlist, scroll the left thumbwheel.
- ▶ To switch to another source, press the 🗏 but-

- ▶ To select a media file or a source, scroll and press the left thumbwheel.
- ▶ To switch between radio and media, select the following in the instrument cluster: 🗏 button
  - > Switch to radio/Switch to media.

#### i) Note

- If the function ⇒ page 234, Traffic announcements or ⇒ page 234, DAB announcements is switched on, playback is interrupted for announcements. To interrupt the announcement, press  $\odot$  on the MMI touch control  $\Rightarrow$  page 33, Fig. 21.
- For safety reasons, the video picture is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound is played.
- Applies to multi-function steering wheel: It may be necessary to use the centre display to operate certain functions.

#### Media centre



Fig. 158 Centre display: Media centre

Several categories are available in the media centre. You can search for media files across different sources. Music will still be played from the active source while you are searching on the MMI.

#### Calling up the media centre

▶ Applies to MMI: Select the following on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > a source > a category.

### 1 Source symbol

The symbol for the source you are currently using will be displayed. The symbol for a source may change depending on the device connected. A USB stick connected via the Audi music interface is shown as an example.

### ② Device name of a source

The device name of the source you are currently using will be displayed.

### (3) Categories

The categories displayed in the media centre depend on the vehicle equipment, the device connected, the contents of the selected source and the connection type.

#### Last tracks played

The most recently played media file will be played again.

#### Artists

All available artists are displayed.

▶ Select: an artist > an album > a track.

#### **Playlists**

All playlists and intelligent playlists from the source will be displayed.

► Select: a playlist > a track.

#### Intelligent playlists

Last tracks played: The most recently played tracks are displayed.

Most played tracks: The tracks played most are displayed.

#### **Folders**

The folder structure or the track/title/chapter list is displayed.

► Select: a folder > a track.

#### Compilations

You can control your compilations via the MMI.

► Select: a compilation > a track.

#### Composers

All available composers are displayed.

► Select: a composer > an album > a track.

#### iTunes Radio

▶ Press on a radio station.

#### **Audiobooks**

You can control your audiobooks via the MMI.

▶ Press on an audiobook.

#### **Podcasts**

You can control your podcasts via the MMI.

► Select a podcast > a podcast episode.

#### Genres

All available genres are displayed.

► Select: a genre > an artist > an album > a track.

#### **Videos**

All available video files are displayed.

▶ Press on a video.

#### **Tracks**

All available tracks are displayed.

▶ Press on a track.

#### Albums

All available albums are displayed.

► Select: an album > a track.

### CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

- Cloud services and the iTunes Radio category always require an Internet connection.

# i Note

- Only the categories supported by the medium used are available.
- For safety reasons, the video picture is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound is played.
- If you synchronise a portable player with cloud services, the playlists may not be displayed correctly on the MMI. Use the device's local media library.
- Applies to iPod touch/iPhone: Please also observe the notes on the Audi music interface and supported devices ⇒ page 237.

#### Media functions

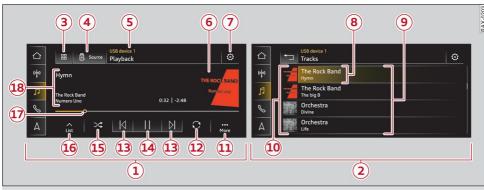


Fig. 159 Centre display: Playback view (left-side); playlist (right-side)

#### How to use

► Applies to MMI: To open the playback view ①, select the following on the home screen: ME-DIA > Source > a source > a category (e.g. Artists > an album) > a track.

► To open the playlist ②, select **List** 16 in the playback view.

Depending on the media source selected and the vehicle's equipment, the following options may be available:

	Symbol/designation	Description	
3	88	The media centre categories are displayed (depending on the active source) $\Rightarrow$ page 239.	
4	Source	To display sources in the media menu.	
S Source/device name	Applies to playback view: Device name of the source currently being played.		
		Applies to media centre view: Source you are currently browsing ⇒ page 239.	
		Important: A media source with album covers must be selected or	
6	Album cover in playback view	the covers must be available online ⇒ page 242, Additional online data.	
	VIEW	Displays the current album cover.	
		To display the playlist: Press the cover.	
7	0	Settings ⇒ page 242	
8	Information on the cur- rent track	Displays <b>track</b> and <b>artist</b> . The track currently playing is marked in colour.	
9	List	To scroll in the list: Swipe your finger upwards/downwards.	
10	Album cover in the play- list	Important: A media source with album covers must be selected or the covers must be available online ⇒ page 242, Additional online data.  Displays the current album cover.	
11)	More	Calling up options ⇒ page 242.	
	© Off	To switch between Off/Playlist/Track: Press 12.	
12	🗘 Playlist	The tracks in the current playlist will be repeated continuously.	
	ttack	The current track will be repeated continuously.	
13	M/M	To select the previous/next track (or station/chapter): Press ⋈ or ⋈.  To rewind/fast forward: To rewind/fast forward the current track, press and hold ⋈ or ⋈.  To jump to the beginning of the track: After the track has played for 3 seconds, press ⋈.	
14	D/II	To start/stop the playback.	
15	⊃¢	When this function is switched on, all the files in the playlist will be played in random order.	
16	List	The playlist ② will be displayed.	
17	Play position	The slider indicates the current playback position in the track.	
18	Information area	Displays track, artist and album.	

### (i) Note

Please note that not all functions are available in all sources and for all touch displays.

### Search function

You can search for e.g. tracks and artists across all sources.

#### Calling up the search function

Important: The selected source must support the search function

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select MEDIA > Search.

Entries containing the search terms entered will be displayed in the list of results. Every result is marked with the symbol of a category from the media centre ⇒ page 239.

You can search in the following categories:

- Artists
- Albums
- Tracks
- Genres
- Videos

### Options and settings

#### **Options**

Certain functions and settings may be available depending on the vehicle equipment, the selected source, the mobile device connected and the type of connection.

Important: The playback view must be displayed ① ⇒ page 240, Fig. 159.

▶ Press More (11).

#### Similar music

The track currently playing is briefly analysed (e.g. by artist, genre, mood, time) so that the system can display an intelligent playlist with similar tracks.

#### Picture format

Audi recommends using the **Auto** setting for the picture format. You will be shown a preview of the setting when you press on one of the picture format options. Press **OK** to use the picture format selected.

The following table provides an overview of the picture formats. The possible picture formats depend on the source being played or the video file.

Picture for- mat	Description
Auto	The MMI detects the picture for- mat of the source and displays the picture using the best possible width-to-height ratio.
4:3, 16:9	The picture is set to the relevant format. Select one of these options if the picture shown with <b>Auto</b> selected is distorted, partially cut off or not in focus.
Zoom	The picture is enlarged to fill the entire display.
Original	The picture is displayed using the picture ratio of the source format. Select this option if the picture shown with <b>Auto</b> selected is distorted, partially cut off or not in focus.

#### Settings

#### Calling up the settings

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select MEDIA > ②.

The following settings may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

#### Additional online data

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet. A data plan must be available ⇒ page 209.

When this function is switched on, additional information (e.g. album cover, artist, track) will be downloaded from different providers, if available.

### Overview

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following media file specifications are supported by the connection for the USB mass storage device:

Audio/video files		
Audi music interface: mobile devices ⇒ page 237 (e.g. iPhone, N players, USB mass storage devices belonging to "USB Device Sub Supported media 1 and 6" compatible with USB 2.0, USB sticks, USB MP3 players and-play capable), external USB flash memories and external US hard drives)		
File system	USB mass storage devices: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS USB mass storage partitions (primary/logical*): 2 per USB connection	
Metadata	Album covers: GIF, JPG, PNG up to 800x800 px. Depending on availability, the album cover will be displayed using the corresponding medium or Gracenote*.	
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX	
Number of files  USB mass storage devices: max. 50000 files per medium; n files per playlist/directory		

Audio files		
Format	File extension	
MPEG-1/-2 Layer 3	.mp3	2201111
Windows Media Audio 9/10	.wma	Up to max. 320 kbit/sec 48 kHz sampling frequency
MPEG-2/-4	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	
Opus	.opus; .ogg; .oga	
FLAC	.flac	
ALAC	.m4a	48 kHz sampling frequency
Monkey's Audio	.ape	

Video files		
Format	File extension	
MPEG-1/-2	.mpg; .mpeg	
MPEG4 AVC (H.264)	.mp4; .m4v; .mov; .avi	
Windows Media Video 9	.wmv; .asf	Up to max. 15 Mbit/sec, 1920x1080 px and 30 fps
MPEG-H (H.265/HEVC)	.mp4; .mov	and 30 ips
VP8/VP9	.webm	
Flash Video	.flv; .f4v	



 The format Windows Media Audio 9 Voice is not supported by the media sources.  Audi recommends a compression rate of at least 160 kbit/sec for MP3 files. In the case of audio files with variable bit rate, the

- display of the remaining playing time may differ from the actual figure.
- The display of country-specific characters (e.g. for ID3 tag information) depends on the language set on the system; it cannot be ensured that these characters are always displayed correctly.
- The manufacturer will provide you with information on the "USB Device Subclass" of a USB memory device.
- Some functions of MTP players such as video playback and the rating of tracks are not supported.

## Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
Audi music interface/Bluetooth audio player: The mobile device is not supported.	Please observe the notes in the chapter ⇒ page 237, Multimedia connections/⇒ page 236, Bluetooth audio player.
<b>Audi music interface</b> : The portable player is not recognised as a source.	On some mobile phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible if the battery charge is very low (less than 5 %). After it has been plugged in, the mobile device will only be recognised as a media source in the MMI again when it has sufficient battery charge.
Audi music interface: Problems during audio playback via an iPod touch/iPhone.	The <b>Bluetooth audio player</b> function is switched on. Switch the function off ⇒ <i>page 248</i> when you are not using a <b>Bluetooth audio player</b> .
Audi music interface: No audio playback possible via a connected mobile device.	Make sure that the USB mode <i>MTP</i> is selected in your mobile device's settings.
<b>Bluetooth audio player</b> : Problems with track display and playback.	Problems can occur if a third party music playback app is open when you are playing audio via the <b>Bluetooth audio player</b> . Audi recommends that you use the integrated media player on your Bluetooth device (e.g. smartphone).

# Audi Smartphone Interface

### Setting up

Applies to: vehicles with Audi Smartphone Interface

You can connect your smartphone wirelessly\*1) or via a cable to the MMI system via the Audi Smartphone Interface. Some of the content on your smartphone is displayed in an optimised screen format and can be operated via the MMI.

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. iPhone 6 or later with Lightning connector and operating system iOS 7.1.2 or higher, or smartphone with Android Auto app and operating system Android 5.0 Lollipop or higher.

- ► Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface ⇒ page 237 via a USB adapter ⇒ page 237, Fig. 157, or:
- ➤ To connect your iPhone wirelessly\*1), switch on the Bluetooth function and Wi-Fi on your iPhone.
- ► Call up the settings for Apple CarPlay on the iPhone.
- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > Connected devices > Audi Smartphone Interface > New connection.
- Using the MMI, press on your iPhone in the list of devices shown.
- ► To update the list, press .
- ▶ Follow any instructions given by the system.
- Please note any system queries on your smartphone.
- ► Applies to MMI: If you declined the use of Apple CarPlay or Android Auto the first time you connected your smartphone, select the following from the home screen: SETTINGS > Connected devices > Audi Smartphone Interface > a smartphone.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

Today's driving conditions require your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsi-

bility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident!

## 1

#### CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇒ page 205.

### (i)

#### Note

- The functions you can use depend on a number of factors including:
  - The brand of your smartphone
  - The operating system version of your smartphone
  - The software version of the app in use
  - The USB adapter/cable and the correct connection
  - Your mobile network/service provider
  - The individual settings on your smartphone
- One or several of the factors listed above can result in your smartphone being incompatible with the Audi Smartphone Interface.
   We regret that it is not possible to guarantee compatibility for all types of smartphone. For further information and support, please refer to the operating manual of your smartphone or contact its manufacturer.
- Please note that you must connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface in the front cabin to use the Audi Smartphone Interface.
- Wireless Apple CarPlay\*<sup>1)</sup> is not available in all countries.
- Wireless Apple CarPlay\*1) is only possible on vehicles without navigation system/without a vehicle position that can be analysed (GPS data) if the embedded SIM card in the vehicle is logged in to the mobile network
   ⇒ page 205.
- If the smartphone you have connected has a voice control feature, you can control your smartphone using the external voice control system ⇒ page 31.

<sup>3</sup>Y0012720AE

- The menu language displayed on the MMI is based on the setting on your smartphone.
- Some of the MMI functions are not available when an Audi Smartphone Interface connection is active.
- You cannot use mobile devices via Bluetooth when the Audi Smartphone Interface connection is active.
- Whether the Audi Smartphone Interface can be used depends on the availability of services provided by third parties.
- Audi only enables you to access third party services via the MMI and accepts no responsibility for the content of the services.

### **Troubleshooting**

Applies to: vehicles with Audi Smartphone Interface

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
Audi Smartphone	Check the battery charge level on your smartphone.
Interface cannot be	Check the USB cable and try using another one.
called up.	Check whether Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in your country.
	<b>Android Auto</b> : Check that the Android Auto app is installed on your smartphone.
Connecting the smartphone to the MMI fails.	Check that you are using the correct USB adapter and that the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and to the Audi music interface ⇒ page 237.
	Apple CarPlay: Check that Apple CarPlay is activated on your iPhone.
	Android Auto: Check in the Android Auto app whether Android Auto allows new
	cars.
	<b>Wireless connection</b> <sup>a)</sup> : Call up the settings for Bluetooth and Apple CarPlay on your iPhone. Delete your vehicle. Open the connection manager on the MMI $\Rightarrow$ page 248. Delete your iPhone in the submenus Telephone 1 and Audi Smartphone Interface. Repeat the connection procedure. Restart the MMI $\Rightarrow$ page 23. Restart your iPhone.
Smartphone is not detected automatically.	Check that you are using the correct USB adapter and that the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and to the Audi music interface ⇒ page 237.  Check that the requirements for connecting a smartphone have been met.

a) Still under development at the time of print.

### Further settings System settings

#### Introduction

This chapter describes general settings. Information on specific settings can be found in the relevant chapter. The settings available depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

#### Date and time

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > General > Date & time.

Available settings:

- Set date and time automatically
- Date
- Time
- Date format
- Time format
- Automatic time zone
- Time zone

#### Measurement units

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select
 SETTINGS > General > Measurement units.

Available settings:

- Speed
- Distance
- Temperature
- Capacity
- Pressure
- Consumption (combustion engine)
- Consumption (electric motor)

#### Language and keyboard

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Language & keyboard**.

#### Language

You can change the language of the display, the navigation cues and the speech dialogue system.

#### Keyboard

Refer to  $\Rightarrow$  page 27.

#### Sound

Important: An audio source must be active.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select
 SETTINGS > Sound

Available settings:

- Treble
- Bass
- Balance/fader
- Speed-dependent volume control
- Subwoofer
- Surround level

#### Focus

You can optimise the sound playback for different positions in the passenger compartment.

#### 3D sound

You can adjust the intensity of the 3D sound. The setting **Medium** provides optimum 3D sound for all sources.

#### Announcements and sounds

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select
 SETTINGS > Announcements & sounds.

Available settings:

- Volume of spoken cues
- Greeting sound

### $\Delta$

#### WARNING

The audio system volume should be set at a level which enables you to hear external signals (such as the sirens of police and emergency vehicles) clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.



#### Note

The volume is automatically adjusted to a preset level when you switch on the MMI.

#### Bluetooth

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > Connection settings > Bluetooth.

#### Bluetooth

You can set whether the MMI system is visible to other Bluetooth devices. To connect a new Bluetooth device, the **Visible** setting must be selected. If **Invisible** is selected, a Bluetooth connection can only be established to devices which have already been paired. You cannot connect a Bluetooth device if **off** is selected.

#### Bluetooth audio player

When this function is switched on, the profile will be connected automatically as soon as your Bluetooth audio player is within range.

#### Bluetooth name

The Bluetooth name of the MMI is displayed and can be changed.

#### **Factory settings**

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > System maintenance > Restore factory settings.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system.

The factory settings will be restored. The system will be restarted. This can take some time.



#### Note

Please note that not only settings will be deleted when you do this; saved data may also be erased.

### Software update

#### Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with software update

You can use software updates to keep the software in your vehicle up to date.

The functions depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle:

Online system update ⇒ page 248.

- Map material update for the navigation system
   ⇒ page 223.
- Software updates at your Audi dealership. This may lead to additional costs.



#### WARNING

- Only perform the installation when the vehicle is stationary - risk of accident!
- In the event of installation errors, please contact a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

#### Online system update

Applies to: vehicles with online system update

With the online system update function you can update the software directly in the vehicle.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet  $\Rightarrow$  page 205, Audi connect.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select SETTINGS > System maintenance > Software update.
- ► Press Search for updates.
- ▶ Press on the desired update.
- ► Press Next.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system.



#### **CAUTION**



#### Note

The software update can take some time.

#### Connected devices

#### Displaying connected devices

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices**.

Possible menu items:

- Telephone 1
- Telephone 2

- Audio player
- Wi-Fi hotspot
- Headset

#### **Audi Smartphone Interface**

You can connect your smartphone to the MMI ⇒ page 245.

#### myAudi app

This function is available when the myAudi app is installed and running on your mobile device and the mobile device is connected to the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot.



#### (I) CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇒ page 205.

#### Managing connected devices

Important: The connected devices menu must be displayed ⇒ page 248.

#### Connecting a device

Important: The Bluetooth discoverability option must be activated for the MMI system ⇒ page 248 and the mobile device.

- ▶ Press on a menu item, e.g. Telephone 1.
- ► To search for and connect your mobile device, press on **New connection** ⇒ page 194.

#### Selecting a connected device

- ▶ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- Press on the desired mobile device in the list of connected devices. The connection will be established.

#### Disconnecting a device

- ▶ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- Press on the connected mobile device. The selected mobile device will be disconnected from the MMI.

#### Deleting a device

- ▶ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- ► Press and hold an item until the **Options** menu is displayed.

#### ▶ Press Delete.

If a device is listed more than once, it will be deleted accordingly from all of the menu items.

#### **Further options**

Additional options may be available depending on the function selected.

Important: The connected devices menu must be displayed ⇒ page 248.

- ▶ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- Press and hold an item until the Options menu is displayed.

#### Bluetooth profiles

You can switch the profiles on/off individually on the MMI as desired.

#### **Favourite**

Activate this function to set a paired mobile phone as the standard phone on the MMI.

The standard phone will be prioritised over other Bluetooth devices and connected as soon as it is within range. This requires that the Bluetooth function of both the mobile phone and the MMI be switched on.

### Legal information

#### **General notes**

Software licence information can be found online at www.audi.com/softwareinfo.

#### Multi Media Interface

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General**.

#### Licence periods

Version information

#### Legal information

Possible options:

- Software information
- About Audi connect

#### **Audi Smartphone Interface**

Applies to: vehicles with Audi Smartphone Interface

Important: A smartphone must be connected to the MMI  $\Rightarrow$  page 245.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select
   SETTINGS > Connected devices > Audi Smartphone Interface.
- Press and hold an item until the Options menu is displayed.
- ► Press Legal information.

#### Instrument cluster

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on.

- ▶ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab ⇒ page 15.
- ► Press the 🗏 button on the multi-function steering wheel until the display appears.

#### Possible options:

- Engine code
- Software information
- Version information

#### Head-up display

Applies to: vehicles with head-up display

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. The head-up display must be switched on.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select:
 SETTINGS > Display & brightness > Head-up display > Display contents > Show licence text on head-up display.

# **Further information**

# Trademarks and licences

This Owner's Manual does not use any symbols to indicate trademarks or registered trademarks, such as  $\odot$  or  $^{\text{TM}}$ . However, the absence of such symbols does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any proprietary names.

Apple, iPhone, iPod touch, Apple CarPlay, Lightning and iTunes Radio are trademarks of Apple Inc.

IOS is a trademark or, in the USA and other countries, a registered trademark of Cisco and is used under license

All other product and manufacturer names used may be trademarks of their respective owners.

# Driving school mode

Applies to: vehicles with driving school mode

You can have the vehicle speed and the direction indicated by the turn signals shown on the infotainment display.

 Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Driving school mode

When the menu is switched (e.g. to radio), the vehicle speed and indicated direction will appear again on the display after five seconds.



### Note

The value indicated in the speedometer is the relevant speed.

# Checking and topping up fluids

# **Fuel**

# Identification of fuels<sup>1)</sup>

The symbols signify different fuels. Depending on the fuel, there may be individual symbols on the fuel pump and in the vehicle's tank flap. This is intended to help prevent incorrect fuel from being used. Fill the tank only with the fuel types shown on the fuel tank flap.

Symbol (examples)	Fuel type/description
<b>E</b> 5	<b>Petrol</b> with ethanol: "E" stands for <b>e</b> thanol. The number refers to the proportion of ethanol in the petrol. For example, "E5" means that the fuel contains a maximum of 5% ethanol.
B7	<b>Diesel</b> with biodiesel: "B" stands for <b>b</b> iodiesel. The number refers to the proportion of biodiesel in the diesel. For example, "B7" means that the fuel has a maximum of 7% biodiesel content.
XTL	Diesel: "XTL" stands for paraffin-based diesel fuel.
CNG	Natural gas: "CNG" stands for Compressed Natural Gas.

#### Petrol grade

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine

The correct grade of petrol is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be run on **unleaded petrol**. Petrol must be **sulphur-free** and must comply with the EN 228 fuel quality standard or equivalent. You can fuel your vehicle with fuels containing 10% ethanol (E10)<sup>2)</sup>. The petrol grades have different **octane (RON)** or **Anti-Knock Index (AKI)** ratings.

The following headings relate to the sticker on the inside of your vehicle's tank flap (example):

# Unleaded fuel only RON/ROZ 95 Super, Premium or min. RON/ROZ 91 Normal

The use of premium petrol (95 RON / 91 AKI) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, regular petrol (at least 91 RON / 87 AKI) can be used with a slight loss of power.

# Unleaded fuel only, min. RON/ROZ 95 Super, Premium

Premium petrol (at least 95 RON / 91 AKI) must be used.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON / 87 AKI as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible.

# Unleaded fuel only RON/ROZ 98 Super Plus or min. RON/ROZ 95 Super, Premium

The use of Super Plus petrol (98 RON / 93 AKI) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, premium petrol (at least 95 RON / 91 AKI) can be used with a slight loss of power.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON / 87 AKI as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill

<sup>1)</sup> Depending on country

<sup>2)</sup> Please observe the applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.

up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible.

### **CAUTION**

- Do **NOT** fuel your vehicle with high-ethanol fuel blends (e.g. E30 - E100), because this will damage the fuel system.
- Do NOT fuel your vehicle with high-methanol fuel blends (e.g. M15 - M100), because this will damage the fuel system and the engine.
- Even one tankful of leaded fuel would permanently impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter.
- You should use only petrol additives which have been approved by Audi. Additives with so-called octane boosters or antiknock additives can contain metallic additives that cause significant damage to the engine and the catalytic converter. Do not use such additives.
- Metal-based fuels, which can be identified from the marking on the fuel dispenser, must not be used. LRP fuel (lead replacement petrol) also contains high concentrations of metallic additive. Risk of engine damage!
- High engine speed and full throttle can damage the engine when using petrol with an octane rating lower than the correct grade for the engine.

# i) Note

- You can use higher octane fuel than your engine requires.
- In countries where sulphur-free fuel is not available, you may use low-sulphur fuel instead.

### Diesel fuel

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

Please note the information on the inside of the fuel tank flap.

The use of sulphur-free diesel complying with the EN 590 standard is recommended.

Diesel can thicken at very low temperatures. which can result in problems starting the engine or prevent the engine from running smoothly. For this reason, filling stations in some countries offer winter-grade diesel fuel during the cold months so that you can continue to operate your vehicle reliably. Ask at your filling station whether the diesel fuel available there is suitable for the current conditions and for the temperatures which could potentially occur.

# **CAUTION**

- Never use FAME fuels (biodiesel), petrol, heating oil, thinners or any other fuels or additives, as these could cause serious damage to the fuel system and the engine.
- Never start the engine if you fill up with the wrong type of fuel, as this could damage the fuel system and the engine. Obtain professional assistance.

### Paraffin-based fuel<sup>1)</sup>

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engines suitable for paraffinbased diesel fuel

You can use sulphur-free paraffin-based diesel fuel according to the EN 15940 standard if the symbol is on the sticker inside your vehicle's tank flap. You must not use this fuel if the symbol is not on the sticker.

Please also refer to the description of diesel fuel ⇒ page 253.



#### Note

Applies to vehicles with auxiliary heating: Using the auxiliary heating with paraffin-based fuel may produce smoke. To prevent this from happening, the auxiliary heating may require



<sup>1)</sup> This fuel is available in certain countries only.

a software update. Please contact a qualified workshop.

# Natural gas/CNG

Applies to: vehicles with natural gas engine

# Using compressed natural gas (CNG)

In addition to petrol, vehicles with a natural gas engine will run on either CNG (Compressed Natural Gas), e-gas or biomethane.

The compressed natural gas must conform to the EN 16723\_2 standard (preferably CNG with a maximum of 10 mg of sulphur per m<sup>3</sup>).

The tank must NOT be filled with any other available types of fuel, such as LNG (Liquefied **N**atural **G**as), LPG (Liquefied **P**etroleum **G**as)  $\Rightarrow$   $\stackrel{\wedge}{\triangle}$  or hythane (a mixture of hydrogen and methane)  $\Rightarrow$   $\stackrel{\wedge}{\bigcirc}$ .

# Natural gas quality and fuel consumption

Each time you refuel, the quality of the natural gas is detected automatically and displayed in the instrument cluster. The display shows percentages from 70% to 100%, with a higher percentage indicating a higher natural gas quality.

Natural gas is subdivided into two quality categories: Group H and Group L. H-gas has a higher methane content and thus a higher calorific value than L-gas. The higher the calorific value of the natural gas, the lower the fuel consumption.

However, the methane content and the calorific value can vary within the same quality group. Consequently, the vehicle's fuel consumption can vary even if the gas tank is always filled with fuel of the same quality.

The engine management system adapts the vehicle set-up to variations in natural gas quality. It is therefore possible to mix both quality groups in the gas fuel tank. It is not necessary to run the gas tank dry before filling up with natural gas of a different quality group.

# Safe operation of natural gas powered vehicles

If you notice a gas odour or suspect that the natural gas fuel system may be leaking, please follow the instructions below  $\Rightarrow \triangle$ .

- Stop the vehicle immediately.
- Extinguish any cigarettes immediately.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Open all the doors and the boot lid to ensure an adequate supply of fresh air.
- Remove any items which could cause sparks or fire from the vehicle.
- Do NOT drive on if the gas odour persists.
- Obtain professional assistance. Have the fault rectified.

# WARNING

- Serious personal injury can result if you ignore a gas odour inside the vehicle or when filling the tank.
  - If you notice a gas odour, park the vehicle safely and do not drive on. If you notice a gas odour, follow all the instructions described here. Please contact a qualified workshop without delay.
  - Follow the instructions above 
     ⇒ page 254,
     Safe operation of natural gas powered
     vehicles if you notice a gas odour.
  - Leave the danger area.
  - If necessary, notify the rescue services.
- Natural gas is highly explosive and highly inflammable. Improper use of natural gas can cause accidents, serious burns and other injuries.
- The vehicle is not suitable for the use of liquefied natural gas (LNG) or liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) and must never be fuelled or driven with LNG or LPG. Liquefied gas can cause the natural gas tank to explode and can cause serious injuries.
- Never try to modify the gas filler neck, and use only approved adapters.
- If damaged or corroded, a gas tank can burst and cause serious or fatal injury.
- Have the gas tanks on your vehicle checked regularly by a qualified workshop in accordance with the regulations in your country.
   For further information, please contact a qualified workshop.
- Gas tanks have a limited service life. For further information, please contact a qualified workshop.

# WARNING

If the underside of your vehicle makes contact with the ground or if your vehicle is involved in a collision (in particular if it is hit from behind), the natural gas tanks may be damaged. If damaged gas tanks are refuelled, they can burst and cause serious or fatal injury.

- Drive to a qualified workshop immediately and have the gas system checked. Do not refuel the gas tanks until the gas system has been checked.

### **CAUTION**

The vehicle is not suitable for the use of hythane and must never be fuelled with hythane. Otherwise, serious damage to the engine and fuel system could result.



### Note

Refuelling the vehicle with non-approved fuel types or ones that do not conform to the reguired standard may reduce performance and cause serious damage to the engine and fuel system.

- Before refuelling, check that the fuel designation on the fuel pump corresponds to the requirements for the vehicle.
- To avoid engine failure, fill the tank only with fuel types that correspond to the standard and designation described.



Have the natural gas fuel system checked at regular intervals by a qualified workshop.

# Filling the tank

# **Driver messages**

# **Driver messages**

Tank system malfunction! Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the tank system. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Applies to vehicles with natural gas engine:

#### Please add CNG

Please fill up with natural gas ⇒ page 254, Natural gas/CNG, ⇒ page 258, Refuelling with natural gas/CNG.

# Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

Tank flap: fault. Release tank flap manually. See owner's manual

A malfunction has occurred. The fuel tank flap will have to be released manually ⇒ page 259.

# Warning! Limited performance

The fuel tank is almost empty. You should be prepared for a significant loss of performance. Drive to a filling station without delay.

🕦 Please refuel and recharge battery. Total range x km

or

Tank system: please refuel immediately and recharge battery. Total range: x km

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, refuel the vehicle without delay; the high-voltage battery is also empty  $\Rightarrow$  page 121.

Tank flap open. Please press button again to refuel

When you press the button, you have a certain amount of time to refuel the vehicle. After this time, it is necessary to press the 🖹 button again before refuelling.

# Procedure for filling the tank



Fig. 160 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: Opening fuel tank flap



Fig. 161 Fuel tank flap with tank cap attached

Natural gas engine\*: Please also note the information on ⇒ page 258.

The fuel tank flap is unlocked/locked automatically by the central locking system.

- ► If necessary, unlock the vehicle.
- ► Conventional power unit: Press the left side of the flap to open it ⇒ Fig. 160.
- ► Plug-in hybrid drive: Pull the button in the driver's door. Once the air has been released, the fuel tank flap will open automatically.
- ▶ Unscrew the tank cap anti-clockwise.
- ▶ Hook the cap onto the open flap  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 161.
- ► Plug-in hybrid drive: Read the notes on refuelling at the end of this chapter.
- ► Insert the filler nozzle into the fuel filler neck as far as the stop.
- ► Start refuelling. The filler nozzle cuts out as soon as the tank is full. Do not try to put in more fuel after the nozzle cuts out, as this will fill the expansion chamber in the fuel tank.

- ➤ When the fuel filler pump switches itself off, wait for 5 seconds before pulling out the filler nozzle so that any remaining fuel can flow into the tank opening.
- ► Screw on the tank cap clockwise until it clicks audibly.
- ► Press the left side of the flap to close it (you should hear it click into place).

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is given on a sticker on the inside of the tank flap. Further notes on fuel  $\Rightarrow$  page 252.

The tank capacity of your vehicle is given in the Technical data section  $\Rightarrow$  page 321.

To prevent fuel and vapours from escaping, make sure that the fuel tank is properly sealed; otherwise the indicator lamp <sup>1</sup> will light up.

# WARNING

Improper refuelling and improper handling of fuel can cause explosions, fire, serious burns and other injuries.

- Do not smoke. Keep naked flames away from the vehicle.
- The ignition must be switched off when refuelling.
- Mobile phones and radio equipment must always be switched off when refuelling.
   Electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks which could start a fire.
- The auxiliary heating\* must be switched off when refuelling.
- Fuel can escape if you do not insert the filler nozzle all the way into the filler neck. Escaping fuel can ignite and cause a fire.
- Never get into the vehicle while refuelling. If you do have to get into the vehicle in exceptional circumstances, close the door and touch a metal surface before handling the filler nozzle again. This will discharge any static electricity which could generate sparks. Sparks can start a fire when refuelling.

<sup>1)</sup> Depends on engine and country

# WARNING

Audi recommends you NOT to carry a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. Fuel could escape from the canister and catch fire, particularly in the event of an accident. Fire, explosions and injuries could result.

- If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to carry a spare fuel canister, please observe the following warnings:
  - Always place the spare fuel canister on the ground before filling it. Never fill fuel into the spare fuel canister with the canister placed in or on top of the vehicle. Electrostatic electricity can build up while filling the canister and ignite the fuel vapours.
  - When using metal fuel canisters, always keep the filler nozzle in contact with the canister to prevent the build-up of static electricity.
  - Keep the filler nozzle inserted as far as possible into the filler opening while filling the canister.
  - Observe all relevant local regulations on using, storing and transporting spare fuel canisters.

# CAUTION

- If fuel overflows onto the vehicle, remove it completely straightaway to prevent damage to the vehicle.
- Never run the tank completely dry. If there is an irregular fuel supply, misfiring can occur. As a result unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and cause damage to the catalytic converter(s).
- Vehicles with diesel engine: When filling the fuel tank after having run it completely dry, the ignition must be switched on for at least 30 seconds without starting the engine. When you then start the engine it may take longer than normal (up to one minute) for the engine to start firing. This is because air needs to be bled from the fuel system while starting.



# For the sake of the environment

- Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off: this may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes
- Never pour fuel down drains or into the ground.



# Note

The tank flap is not locked when you lock the vehicle from the inside by pressing the central locking switch.



### Note

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

Diesel vehicles are equipped with an incorrect fuelling protection system<sup>1)</sup>. This system ensures that the tank can only be fuelled from a diesel filler nozzle.

- If the filler nozzle is old, damaged or too small, it may not be able to open the protection mechanism on the fuel tank. In this case, try turning the filler nozzle before inserting it in the fuel filler neck, use a different filling pump or seek professional assistance.
- The protection mechanism will not open if you try to add fuel from a spare fuel canister. You can get round this simply by adding the diesel fuel slowly.



# Note

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

- When you insert the filling nozzle, make sure that it does not press against the tank flap release mechanism (1) (see label inside tank flap  $\bigcirc$   $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 161). Otherwise, a valve in the filler neck will close and the refuelling process will be interrupted although the tank is not yet full.
- If you have pressed the tank flap release mechanism unintentionally, you will need to bleed the air from the tank system again. It is not necessary to remove the filling nozzle

from the filler neck to do so. To bleed the air from the tank system, pull the  $\square$  button in the driver's door again.

- If the engine has switched itself off due to a lack of fuel, you may need to add up to 15 litres of fuel for the vehicle to detect that it has been refuelled. Otherwise it may not be possible to restart the engine.
- Fuel can age and cause starting problems.
   Audi recommends refuelling your vehicle within six months.

### Refuelling with natural gas/CNG

Applies to: vehicles with natural gas engine

Vehicles with a natural gas engine have two fuel filler necks: one for natural gas and one for petrol.



Fig. 162 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: Opening the fuel tank flap



Fig. 163 Tank flap open: Gas filler neck 1 and filler neck seal 2

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 254, Natural gas/CNG.

When refuelling with petrol, please note the additional information and warnings  $\Rightarrow$  page 256.

Switch off the engine, ignition and any mobile phones before refuelling  $\Rightarrow \Lambda$ .

Read and follow the instructions at the natural gas filling station. Before refuelling with natural gas, make sure that the correct type of fuel is used  $\Rightarrow$  page 254.

The fuel tank flap is unlocked and locked automatically by the central locking system.

# Unscrewing the tank cap

The gas filler neck is behind the tank flap next to the petrol filler neck  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 163.

► Press the left side of the flap in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 162 to open it.

# Filling the tank

- ▶ Pull the cap off the gas filler neck (1).
- ► Make sure that the seal ② is securely seated in the gas filler neck.
- ► Fit the coupling of the fuelling line onto the gas filler neck.
- ► Lock the filler nozzle.
- ► Start the refuelling procedure.
- ► If you need to interrupt the fuelling procedure, press the stop button on the filler unit.

The compressor on the filler unit will be switched off automatically when the gas tanks are full.

# Closing the tank cap

- ► Unlock the filler nozzle.
- ► Check that the seal on the gas filler neck ② has not become stuck on the filler coupling.
- ► If necessary, fit the seal back onto the gas filler neck.
- ▶ Press the cap onto the gas filler neck.
- ► Close the tank flap. Make sure you hear it click into place.

# **WARNING**

- Natural gas is highly explosive and highly inflammable. Improper use of natural gas can cause accidents, serious burns and other injuries.
- Make sure that the filler nozzle is correctly coupled with the gas filler neck before adding fuel. Stop fuelling immediately if you notice a gas odour.
- The vehicle is not suitable for the use of liquefied natural gas (LNG) or liquefied

petroleum gas (LPG) and must never be fuelled or driven with LNG or LPG. Liquefied gas can cause the natural gas tank to explode and can cause serious injuries.

# ! CAUTION

The vehicle is not suitable for the use of hythane and must never be fuelled with hythane. Otherwise, serious damage to the engine and fuel system could result.

### Note

- The procedure for operating the filler coupling can vary on different gas filler units. If you are unsure, ask a trained member of staff at the filling station to demonstrate the filling procedure.
- In very hot weather, the overheating protection system on the gas filler unit may automatically deactivate the fuelling system.
- You may hear noises while refuelling. This is normal and does not mean that the system is damaged.
- The natural gas fuel system on the vehicle is suitable for refuelling both at domestictype appliances using small compressors (time-fill) and at CNG filling stations using large compressors (fast-fill).
- If the vehicle is refuelled and parked immediately afterwards for a long period, the fuel level shown on the gas fuel gauge ⇒ page 14 may be different when you restart the vehicle than it was immediately after refuelling. This does not mean that there is a fuel leak, but is a side-effect caused by a drop in pressure in the gas fuel tanks when the system cools down after refuelling.
- The amount of gas which can be added to the tank may vary from the capacity stated in the technical data. If the amount which can be added is higher or lower, this may be due to the following parameters: the outside temperature, the fuel pump's pumping capacity, the residual pressure in your vehicle's natural gas tanks, the current composition of the natural gas, or other factors.

# Releasing the tank flap manually

Applies to vehicles with manual tank flap release

The tank flap can be released manually if the central locking system should fail to operate.



Fig. 164 Right-hand side trim in luggage compartment: Releasing tank flap manually

The manual release mechanism is located in the side trim on the right of the luggage compartment.

- ► To release the tank flap, release the red ring from the holder and carefully pull the ring ♥(!).
- ▶ Press the left side of the tank flap to open it ⇒ page 256, Fig. 160.



# **CAUTION**

Stop pulling the ring when you feel resistance (the release mechanism is not audible). Otherwise, you could damage the manual release mechanism.



# Note

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

- Air is not released from the fuel tank when the fuel tank flap is released manually. You will only be able to add a small amount of fuel. You should stop fuelling the first time the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the fuel supply. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.
- The pressure in the fuel tank may be released audibly when you open the tank cap after manually releasing the fuel tank flap.

# Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue/DEF)

#### General notes

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

On vehicles with selective catalytic reduction, a urea solution (AdBlue/DEF) is injected into the exhaust system upstream of a NOx catalytic converter in order to reduce nitrogen oxide emissions. The catalytic converter changes nitrogen oxides into nitrogen and water with the help of the urea solution AdBlue/DEF. The urea solution is known as AdBlue or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid). The term AdBlue is used below.

The AdBlue is held in a separate tank in the vehicle.

It is not sufficient to simply have AdBlue refilled when the vehicle is serviced because this may be necessary more often than services are due or between service intervals.

As soon as a message appears in the instrument cluster display reminding you to refill AdBlue, you must refill the AdBlue tank or have this done by a qualified workshop  $\Rightarrow$  page 261.

# Checking range

The AdBlue consumption depends on the ambient and operating temperature and on how the vehicle is driven. The remaining range and quantity to be added can be checked on the instrument cluster display  $\Rightarrow page 18$ .

#### Legal information

- It is not permitted to make technical changes to the emission control system which have an effect on the exhaust gas treatment using AdBlue.
- The vehicle will no longer correspond to the Certificate of Conformity for its vehicle type if AdBlue according to ISO-22241-1 and approved by Audi is not used/refilled.
- It may be a crime to operate the vehicle without the AdBlue specified by Audi.
- If the emission control system is not operated as intended, the exhaust emissions may worsen.

 The use of AdBlue for the operation of this vehicle is required by law.

# (i)

### Note

- The instrument cluster display will tell you how far you can drive before the tank runs dry ⇒ page 260, Low AdBlue level. If the AdBlue tank runs dry, the engine cannot be started again after you switch off the ignition. Never run the AdBlue tank completely dry.
- Restrictions may be encountered when refilling in very cold temperatures, because the freezing point of AdBlue is -11 °C.
- The system is heated when the vehicle is running to ensure that the exhaust gas treatment operates even at very low temperatures.

# Instrument cluster display

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

The display informs you if the AdBlue level is too low or if a system malfunction occurs.

# Low AdBlue level

A series of warnings will inform you if the amount of AdBlue in the tank falls below a certain level. You should always fill up with AdBlue when requested to do so on the instrument cluster display.

# Please refill x ltr. AdBlue/DEF at next fuel stop. Range x km

This message tells you the maximum distance that you can drive with the remaining amount of AdBlue. Refill AdBlue.

# Refill x ltr. of AdBlue/DEF. No restart in x km. See owner's manual

This message tells you the maximum distance that you can drive with the remaining amount of AdBlue. Refill AdBlue. Otherwise, after driving the maximum distance and switching off the engine, you will not be able to restart the car. You can also call up the remaining distance on the onboard computer.

# Refill x ltr. AdBlue/DEF! No restart. See owner's manual

This message appears when there is no more AdBlue left in the tank. Refill AdBlue. Otherwise, you will not be able to restart the car after you switch off the engine.

When the AdBlue in the tank reaches the minimum level, you must add AdBlue ⇒ page 261, Before refilling AdBlue.

# Filling the wrong fluid / system fault

If you fill the AdBlue tank with a fluid other than AdBlue and the system detects that the wrong fluid has been added or there is a system fault, a driver message will appear.

# Please check AdBlue/DEF. See owner's man-

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system fault. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

# AdBlue/DEF: fault. No restart in x km. See owner's manual

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system fault and the vehicle can only be driven as far as indicated in the instrument cluster. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified. Otherwise, after driving the maximum distance and switching off the engine, you will not be able to restart the car.

# AdBlue/DEF: fault. Engine cannot be restarted. See owner's manual

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system fault. Drive to the nearest qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. You will not be able to restart the car after you switch off the engine.

# Before refilling AdBlue

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction



Fig. 165 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: Unscrewing the AdBlue cap

The AdBlue filler neck is located immediately beside the diesel filler neck.

The AdBlue tank capacity on your vehicle is given in the Technical data section  $\Rightarrow$  page 321.

When the instrument cluster displays the request to fill up AdBlue, fill up at least the amount of AdBlue displayed. If you do not refill this amount of fluid, the system may not detect that the tank has been refilled and it may not be possible to restart the engine.

- ▶ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ► Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Open the tank flap ⇒ page 256.
- ► Unscrew the cap on the filler neck anti-clockwise ⇒ Fig. 165.
- ▶ Refill AdBlue from a filler nozzle ⇒ page 262, canister ⇒ page 262 or bottle ⇒ page 263.

# WARNING

AdBlue can cause irritation to the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid. Seek medical assistance if needed.

# (1)

# **CAUTION**

- Improper handling of AdBlue can cause damage to the vehicle not covered by the warranty.
- Use only AdBlue that complies with the ISO 22241-1 standard. Do not mix AdBlue with additives and do not dilute it with water.

# Checking and topping up fluids

- AdBlue must not be added to the diesel tank, and diesel must not be added to the AdBlue tank. Never start the engine if you fill up with the wrong type of fuel, as this could damage the tank system and the engine. Obtain professional assistance.
- AdBlue attacks surfaces such as paintwork, plastic veneer and carpets. Remove spilt fluid as soon as possible with a damp cloth and plenty of water. If the AdBlue has already solidified, use warm water and a sponge. Residues of AdBlue solidify after a while if they are not removed and can damage the affected surface.
- Do not keep refill bottles or canisters in the vehicle, as AdBlue can leak and damage the vehicle interior.
- Keep AdBlue away from clothing. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid.



Please follow the AdBlue manufacturer's instructions for storage and use.

# Refilling AdBlue from a filler nozzle

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

- ► Fill up with AdBlue until the first time the filler nozzle cuts off the supply ⇔ (1).
- ▶ Put the tank cap back on ⇒ page 263, After refilling AdBlue.

# CAUTION

- The handle of the filler nozzle must point downwards when filling the tank. Otherwise the filler nozzle will not cut off the supply automatically ⇒ ① in Before refilling AdBlue on page 261.
- Do not use a damaged filler nozzle in case it does not cut off the supply properly.
- You should stop refilling the first time the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. Otherwise the level of AdBlue in the tank may be too high and AdBlue could overflow ⇒ ① in Before refilling AdBlue on page 261.



# Note

You can fill AdBlue from pumps for either light passenger vehicles or heavy goods vehicles.

### Refilling AdBlue from a canister

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

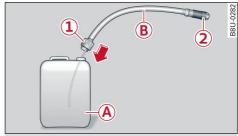


Fig. 166 Canister with screw-on hose

- ► Take the cap off the refill canister ⇒ in Before refilling AdBlue on page 261, ⇒ in Before refilling AdBlue on page 261.
- ► Screw the end of the hose ① clockwise onto the opening on the canister (A).
- ► Remove the cap ② from the other end of the hose (B).
- Fit the end of the hose 2 onto the filler neck on the vehicle and turn clockwise as far as the stop to secure.
- ► Lift the canister and then tilt it. Keep it tilted until empty or until no more fluid runs into the tank
- ▶ Turn the hose anti-clockwise to remove it.
- ► Remove the canister and screw the tank cap back on ⇒ page 263, After refilling AdBlue.



# CAUTION

Use only refill canisters of the correct type approved for your vehicle. AdBlue may leak out if you use another system.



- Your qualified workshop can tell you which refill canisters are approved for your vehicle.
- Approved refill canisters contain about 5 litres of AdBlue.

# Refilling AdBlue from a bottle

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

- ► Take the cap off the refill bottle ⇒ ⚠ in Before refilling AdBlue on page 261, ⇒ ① in Before refilling AdBlue on page 261.
- Screw the bottle clockwise onto the filler neck as far as it will go.
- ➤ To empty the bottle, lightly press the bottom of the bottle. Keep pressing the bottom of the bottle until the bottle is empty, or until no more fluid runs into the tank.
- ► Unscrew the bottle anti-clockwise without applying pressure.
- Remove the bottle and screw the tank cap back on ⇒ page 263, After refilling AdBlue.



# **CAUTION**

Use only refill bottles of the correct type approved for your vehicle. AdBlue may leak out if you use another system.



#### Note

- Refill bottles are available from qualified workshops.
- Approved refill bottles contain about 1.9 litres of AdBlue.

# After refilling AdBlue

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

#### Closing the filler neck

- ► Screw the AdBlue cap clockwise onto the filler neck until the AdBlue cap clicks audibly ⇒ ⚠ in Before refilling AdBlue on page 261, ⇒ ① in Before refilling AdBlue on page 261.
- ► Press the left side of the flap to close it (you should hear it click into place).

# After refilling

- Switch the ignition on for approximately 30 seconds to allow the system to register that fluid has been added.
- ➤ You should wait until this has happened before starting the engine.

# (i

### Note

AdBlue can freeze at very low temperatures. Restrictions may therefore be encountered when refilling. In this case, the system may not detect AdBlue when you refill and will continue to indicate a low AdBlue level. The message will disappear as soon as the tank has thawed.

# Emission control system

# **General notes**

# $\Lambda$

### WARNING

The exhaust system is very hot when the vehicle is being driven and after the engine has been switched off.

- Never touch the tailpipes when they are hotrisk of burns!
- Because of the high temperatures which can occur in the exhaust system, do not park the vehicle where the exhaust can come into contact with flammable materials under the car (e.g. on grass or at the forest edge) – risk of fire!
- Do not apply any underseal agents in the area around the exhaust system - risk of fire!

# Catalytic converter

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 263, General notes.

The vehicle must only be used with unleaded petrol, otherwise the catalytic converter will be irreparably damaged.

Never allow the fuel tank to run completely dry, as the irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This allows unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system, which can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

#### Particulate filter

Applies to: vehicles with particulate filter

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 263, General notes.

The particulate filter can filter out almost all soot particles contained in the exhaust gas. In normal driving conditions the filter is self-cleaning. Should the self-cleaning function of the filter not be able to operate, e.g. when the vehicle is continuously used only for short trips, the filter becomes obstructed with soot and the driver message Particulate filter: can be cleaned by driving vehicle. You can continue driving. See owner's manual appears. The particulate filter requires cleaning (regeneration).

Different regeneration procedures are required, depending on the type of engine (petrol or diesel) and the engine capacity.

Determine which engine is installed in your vehicle (there may be a badge on the boot lid or you can consult the vehicle data sticker  $\Rightarrow$  page 320 or vehicle registration documents).

# Regenerating the particulate filter by driving at a constant speed

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine or petrol engine (25 TFSI - 35 TFSI / 1.0 ltr., 1.4 ltr. or 1.5 ltr.) or with plug-in hybrid drive

Before starting the regeneration trip, check whether regenerating the particulate filter by **driving at a constant speed** is the correct method for your vehicle (based on the engine)  $\Rightarrow$  1.

The engine must be warmed up prior to the regeneration trip.

On vehicles with manual gearbox, follow the gear shift indicator in the instrument cluster.

- Drive at a speed of between 50 km/h and 120 km/h 

  As a result of the increase in temperature, the soot in the filter will be burned off.
- ► Do not stop the regeneration trip until the indicator lamp goes out.

This procedure causes the particulate filter to regenerate itself and may take some time (approx. 30 minutes).

If the indicator lamp does **not** go out, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

# Regenerating the particulate filter by driving and coasting

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine (40 TFSI and 45 TFSI / S and RS models / 2.0 ltr. or 2.5 ltr.)

Before starting the regeneration trip, check whether regenerating the particulate filter by **driving and coasting** is the correct method for your vehicle (based on the engine)  $\Rightarrow$  ①.

The engine must be warmed up prior to the regeneration trip.

On vehicles with manual gearbox, follow the gear shift indicator in the instrument cluster.

- Drive at a speed of at least 80 km/h ⇒ Λ.
- ► Then take your foot off the accelerator completely for a few seconds and let the vehicle coast in gear.
- Repeat this procedure (accelerate to at least 80 km/h and coast again) until the indicator lamp goes out.

This procedure causes the particulate filter to regenerate itself and may take some time.

If the indicator lamp does **not** disappear after a while, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.



#### WARNING

It is essential, when regenerating the particulate filter, that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. The recommended driving speed must never lead to the driver disregarding local traffic regulations.



#### !) CAUTION

Before starting the regeneration trip, check which method (driving at a constant speed or driving and coasting) is required for your vehicle (based on the engine). If you do not use the correct method, the regeneration trip may have no effect and the particulate filter may be damaged.



#### Note

 As a result of the high temperatures which occur during the regeneration of the particulate filter, the radiator fan may continue to

- run after the engine is switched off, even if the engine has not yet reached operating temperature.
- Noises, odours and increased engine speeds when idling may be noticed during regeneration. The availability of electric driving is limited on vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive.
- To maximise the service life of the particulate filter, always use suitable engine oil and the correct fuel. You should also avoid driving the vehicle continuously on short trips.

# **Emission control system**

If the indicator lamp ights up or flashes, a malfunction has occurred which can reduce the quality of the exhaust gas and damage the catalytic converter. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

The indicator lamp may also light up if the fuel tank flap has not been closed properly  $\Rightarrow$  page 256<sup>1)</sup>.

# **Engine compartment**

# General information

Extra caution is necessary when working on components in the engine compartment.

Always be aware of the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire when working in the engine compartment (e.g. when checking and refilling fluids). Always observe the warnings listed below and follow all normal safety precautions. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area.  $\Rightarrow \land \land$ 

Explanation of warnings (on sticker in engine compartment):



Hot engine parts! Rotating parts!



Fan can switch on at any time!



3Y0012720AE

High voltage! Switch off engine before any part of ignition system is touched!



Applies to vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: High voltage! The voltage of the high-voltage system is potentially lethal! Touching damaged high-voltage components could cause you to be fatally electrocuted.



The catalytic converter can be damaged if the engine oil level is too high!



Always read the instructions in the Owner's Manual.

# $\Lambda$

# WARNING

- Switch off the engine.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Put the gear lever in neutral (manual gearbox) or put the selector lever in the parking position P (automatic gearbox).
- Wait for the engine to cool down.
- Keep children away from the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids can cause a fire (e.g. radiator antifreeze).
- Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system.
- Never touch the radiator fan. The fan is temperature-controlled and may switch on suddenly even if the ignition is switched off.
- To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment.
   Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.
- Plug-in hybrid drive: The cap on the coolant expansion tank is fitted with a sealing tag which must not be removed under any circumstances ⇒ page 268, Fig. 169. If there is no sealing tag on the coolant expansion tank for the high-voltage system, please take the vehicle to a qualified workshop.
- Plug-in hybrid drive: The cap/sealing tag on the coolant expansion tank must only be opened by a qualified workshop.

<sup>1)</sup> Depends on engine and country

- The cap on the coolant expansion tank must not be opened if the coolant is hot. The cooling system is under pressure; there is a risk of being scalded.
- Protect face, hands and arms by covering the cap with a large, thick cloth to protect against escaping coolant and steam.
- Never remove the engine cover panel risk of burns!
- Never touch ignition cables or other components of the electronic high-voltage ignition system while the engine is running or being started - risk of electrocution!
- Automatic gearbox: The accelerator pedal must on no account be pressed inadvertently when a gear is engaged and the engine is running with the vehicle stationary. The vehicle will otherwise start moving immediately and could cause an accident.
- If any tests or repairs have to be performed with the engine running, there is an extra safety risk from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator and radiator fan, etc:
  - First apply the parking brake and put the gear lever in neutral (manual gearbox) or put the selector lever in the parking position P (automatic gearbox).
  - Always make sure that no parts of the body, jewellery, ties, loose items of clothing or long hair can become caught up in rotating engine parts. Before commencing any work, always remove ties and jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight clothing to prevent these from becoming caught up in the engine parts.
- Observe the following additional warnings if work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
  - Do not smoke.
  - Never work near naked flames.
  - Always keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.
- Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you must

- have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.
- Do not expose yourself to exhaust gases or chemical substances for any longer than necessary.

# 1

# CAUTION

When topping up fluids make sure the correct fluid is put into the correct filler opening. This can otherwise cause serious malfunctions or engine damage.



# For the sake of the environment

Inspect the ground underneath your vehicle regularly so that any leaks are detected at an early stage. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle inspected by a qualified workshop.

# Opening/closing bonnet

The bonnet is released from inside the vehicle.



Fig. 167 Footwell: Release lever



Fig. 168 Unlocked bonnet: Lever

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 265, General information.

The wiper arms should be resting on the windscreen: make sure they are not in a raised position. Otherwise the paint may get damaged.

# Opening the bonnet

- ► Applies to vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: Switch off the ignition before you release the bonnet; otherwise the combustion engine may start automatically.
- ► With the door open, pull the lever ≈ 1) under the dashboard in the direction indicated by the arrow ⇒ Fig. 167.
- ▶ Lift the bonnet slightly  $\Rightarrow$   $\bigwedge$ .
- ► Press the release lever ⇒ Fig. 168 in the direction indicated by the arrow. This will release the arrester hooks.
- ▶ Open the bonnet.

# Closing the bonnet

- ► To close the bonnet, pull it down to overcome the spring pressure.
- ► Then let it drop into the catches; do not press  $down \Rightarrow \bigwedge$ .

# **Driver messages**

# Warning! Bonnet not locked. Stop vehicle and check bonnet lock

The bonnet lock is not correctly engaged. Stop your vehicle without delay and close the bonnet.

# $\triangle$

# **WARNING**

- To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment.
   Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.
- For safety reasons the bonnet must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving. After closing it always check that it is properly secured. It should not be possible to lift the front edges of the bonnet.
- Should you notice that the bonnet is not safely secured when the vehicle is moving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly, otherwise it could cause an accident.

<sup>3</sup>Y0012720AE

# **Engine compartment layout**

Main components for checking and refilling

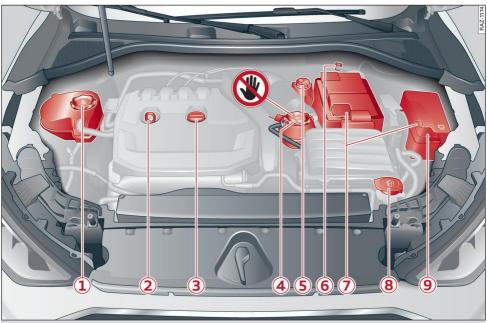


Fig. 169 Typical locations of fluid containers, engine oil dipstick and engine oil filler cap

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 265, General information.

- ① Coolant expansion tank for combustion engine (♣) ⇒ page 272
- 2 Engine oil dipstick ⇒ page 269
- 3 Engine oil filler cap ( page 270
- 4 Plug-in hybrid drive: Coolant expansion tank for high-voltage system (♣) ⇒ page 272
- (5) Brake fluid reservoir ((○)) ⇒ page 273
- (6) Earth point (-) ⇒ page 276, Charging the 12 Volt vehicle battery, ⇒ page 299, Jump-starting
- ⑦ Jump-start terminals (+) on the vehicle battery or inside the fuse box ⇒ page 276, Charging the 12 Volt vehicle battery, ⇒ page 299, Jump-starting
- (8) Windscreen washer container (♣)⇒ page 277
- 9 Fuse box ⇒ page 305

The positions of the brake fluid reservoir, the engine oil dipstick, the engine oil filler cap and the windscreen washer container may be different on some engine and country versions.



#### Note

Plug-in hybrid drive\*: Please note the information for the coolant expansion tank on ⇒ page 272, Checking the coolant level and for jump-starting on ⇒ ① in Preparations on page 299.

# **Engine oil**

# If the engine oil level is too low

Your dealership can advise you on the engine oil standard specified for your vehicle. Use this oil if you need to top up the oil level. If you use the specified oil, you can top up the engine oil level as often as necessary.

If the specified engine oil is not available, you can add a maximum of 0.5 litres of oil corresponding to the following standards **once** between oil changes. You should do this **in emergencies only**.

- Applies to vehicles with petrol engine:
   VW 504 00, VW 508 00, VW 511 00 or
   ACEA C3
- Applies to vehicles with diesel engine:
   VW 507 00, VW 509 00 or ACEA C3

Have the oil changed by a qualified workshop.



#### Note

Audi recommends engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts.

# **Driver messages**

# Switch off engine. Oil pressure too low

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Check the engine oil level  $\Rightarrow$  page 269.

- If the engine oil level is too low, add more oil
   ⇒ page 270. Do not drive on until the warning lamp has gone out.
- If the engine oil level is OK but the warning lamp still lights up, switch off the engine and do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

Applies to vehicles with oil level warning:

# 🐸 Please check oil level

- You can continue driving for the time being but you should check the engine oil level as soon as possible ⇒ page 269, Checking the engine oil level.
- If the engine oil level is normal but the indicator lamp stays on, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and avoid high engine speeds.

# Oil level sensor: engine oil change required. Please contact workshop

The engine oil has become contaminated with fuel. In this case, the oil level gradually rises and the quality of the engine oil decreases. Do not attempt to correct the level by extracting engine oil

- risk of engine damage. Drive to a qualified workshop soon to have the engine oil changed.

# Oil level sensor system: fault. Please contact workshop

The sensor for checking the engine oil level has failed. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

# Oil pressure sensor: fault. Please contact workshop

The sensor for checking the engine oil pressure has failed. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

# Please warm up engine

Fuel has entered the engine oil due to low outside temperatures or frequent short trips. Drive until the engine is warm to allow the fuel to evaporate out of the engine oil. When doing so, avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads.



#### Note

The oil pressure warning lamp is not an indicator for the oil level. The oil level should therefore be checked regularly.

# Checking the engine oil level

The oil dipstick differs depending on the type of engine.

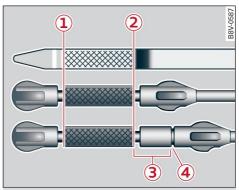


Fig. 170 Oil dipstick (examples): Checking engine oil level

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 265, General information.

- ▶ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ► Switch off the warm engine.

- ► Wait approx. two minutes.
- ▶ Open the bonnet ⇒ page 266.
- ► Pull out the oil dipstick 

  page 268, Fig. 169, wipe it with a clean cloth and insert it again, pushing it in as far as it will go.
- ► Then pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level ⇒ table on page 270.
- ▶ Push the dipstick all the way in.
- ► If the oil level is too low, add more engine oil ⇒ page 270.

### Markings on oil dipstick ⇒ Fig. 170

- Do NOT add engine oil.

# CAUTION

- The engine oil must never drop below the marking (1) - risk of engine damage!
- When topping up the engine oil, make sure that the oil level is not above the marking
   ② ⇒ Fig. 170, as this may result in damage to the catalytic converter or to the engine. If the oil level is above the marking ②, drive to a qualified workshop without delay to have the excess oil extracted. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads.
- Applies to vehicles which have an oil dipstick with area ③ ⇒ Fig. 170: If you run your vehicle on diesel fuel of poorer quality than EN 590 standard fuel, the fuel can get into the engine oil. In this case, the oil level gradually rises and the quality of the engine oil decreases. Once the oil level has reached the marking ④ or the indicator lamp has come on, the engine oil level must not be corrected by extracting the surplus oil risk of engine damage! The engine oil must be changed ⇒ page 269.

# i) Note

Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the car is used, oil consumption can be up to 0.5 ltr./1000 km. Oil consumption is likely to be higher for the first 5,000 km. The engine oil level must be checked at regular intervals, preferably when refuelling

# Topping up the engine oil

and before a journey.



Fig. 171 Engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap (example)

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 265, General information.

- ► Switch off the engine.
- ▶ Open the bonnet ⇒ page 266.
- ► Unscrew cap 😭 from oil filler opening ⇒ Fig. 171.
- ► Carefully add 0.5 litres of suitable engine oil ⇒ page 268.
- ► After two minutes check the oil level once again ⇒ page 269, Checking the engine oil level.
- Applies when using engine oil that corresponds to the specified standard: Add a little more engine oil if necessary.
- ► Screw the oil filler cap back on and push the dipstick all the way in.
- ► Close the bonnet ⇒ page 266.

# $\Lambda$

# WARNING

 Ensure that no oil comes into contact with hot engine components when topping up: this could cause a fire.

- The oil filler cap must be properly closed to prevent oil from squirting onto the hot engine or exhaust system while the engine is running – risk of fire!
- Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.
- Engine oil is poisonous and must be kept out of the reach of children.
- Store the engine oil safely in the original container.

# (1) CAUTION

No additives should be used with engine oil. These could cause engine damage.

# For the sake of the environment

- Never pour oil down drains or into the ground.
- Always observe local regulations when disposing of empty oil canisters.

# Cooling system

# Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of conditioned water and coolant additive. This coolant must not be changed.

#### **Driver messages**

Switch off engine and check coolant level.
See owner's manual

or

Less Stop vehicle and check coolant. See owner's manual

The coolant level is too low.

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Check the coolant level  $\Rightarrow$  page 272.

If the coolant level is too low, add more coolant
 ⇒ page 272. Do not drive on until the warning
 lamp has gone out.

# Loolant temperature: too high. Let engine run with vehicle stationary

Let the engine cool down by running it at idling speed for a few minutes until the warning lamp goes out.

 Do not drive on if the warning lamp does not disappear. Obtain professional assistance.

# L Cooling system: fault. Please switch off engine

Do not drive on. Stop the engine and switch off the ignition.

Obtain professional assistance.

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

# Electric drive overheating. Safely stop vehicle and check coolant

Stop the vehicle safely. Switch off the ignition and do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

# Coolant additive

The coolant additive contains anti-freeze and corrosion protection agent. When topping up, use only the type of coolant additive specified below, in combination with distilled water.

Coolant additive	Specification
G12evo	TL 774 L

The amount of coolant additive which needs to be mixed with the water depends on the temperatures to be expected in the winter season. If the anti-freeze concentration is too low, the coolant can freeze and cause engine damage.

	Coolant additive	Frost protection
Hot regions	min. 40% max. 45%	min25 °C
Cold regions	min. 50% max. 55%	max40 °C

# CAUTION

 Have your qualified workshop check the cooling system before the winter season to make sure that the anti-freeze concentration is adequate for the conditions to be

- expected. This applies particularly if you drive into a colder climate zone.
- To prevent damage to the engine, do not use a different type of coolant additive if G12evo is not available. In this case use only distilled water and bring the coolant concentration back up to the correct level as soon as possible by putting in the specified additive.
- Always top up with fresh, unused coolant.
- Radiator sealants must not be added to the coolant.
- If the coolant system has been topped up with a coolant additive other than the approved type (G12evo), you can continue driving initially; however you should take the vehicle to a qualified workshop without delay and have the coolant changed – risk of engine damage!
- The cooling system must be refilled by a qualified workshop only – risk of engine damage! You can obtain important information about recommended anti-freeze additives from your qualified workshop.

# Checking the coolant level

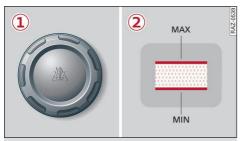


Fig. 172 Engine compartment - coolant expansion tank:

① Cap, ② Marks

Please refer to the safety notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 265, General information.

Applies to vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: Your vehicle has two separate coolant expansion tanks  $\Rightarrow$  page 268, Fig. 169: one for the combustion engine and one for the high-voltage system. The coolant expansion tank for the high-voltage system is sealed and must not be opened  $\Rightarrow$   $\bigwedge$  and  $\Rightarrow$   $\bigwedge$ !

# Checking the coolant level

- ▶ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ► Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Open the bonnet ⇒ page 266.
- ► Check the coolant level in the expansion tank ⇒ page 268, Fig. 169 using the external markings ② ⇒ Fig. 172 as a guide. When the engine is cold, the coolant level should be between the marks ②. When the engine is warm, it may be slightly above the top mark.
- ► Conventional power unit: Please read

  ⇒ page 271, Cooling system before topping up the coolant in the coolant expansion tank.
- ► Plug-in hybrid drive: Please read ⇒ page 271, Cooling system before topping up the coolant in the expansion tank for the combustion engine.
- Plug-in hybrid drive: Do NOT drive on if there is insufficient coolant in the expansion tank for the high-voltage system. Please contact a qualified workshop immediately 

  ↑.

# Topping up the coolant

Important: The coolant expansion tank must not be empty  $\Rightarrow$  ①.

If you do need to top up the coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Audi recommends mixing coolant additive with distilled water.

- ▶ Wait for the engine to cool down.
- ► Cover the cap on the expansion tank with a large, thick cloth.
- ► Carefully unscrew the cap ① ⇔ Fig. 172 anticlockwise ⇔ ↑.
- ► Add coolant in the correct concentration ⇒ page 271 up to the top mark ② ⇒ Fig. 172.
- ► You should make sure that the fluid level remains stable. If necessary, add more coolant.
- ► Screw the cap on again tightly in the clockwise direction.

Any loss of coolant normally indicates a leak in the cooling system. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the cooling system checked. If there are no leaks in the system, a loss of coolant can only occur if the coolant boils and is forced out of the system as a result of overheating.

# WARNING

- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous place. Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, stop the engine, switch off the ignition and allow the engine to cool down. Please observe the important safety warnings ⇒ page 265, General information.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment; there is a risk of being scalded. The cooling system is under pressure. Wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.
- When working in the engine compartment be aware that the radiator fan may start running suddenly, even if the ignition is switched off - risk of injury!
- The coolant and coolant additive can be a health hazard. Store the coolant additive in the original container in a safe place out of reach of children - risk of poisoning.

#### WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The coolant expansion tank for the high-voltage system may be opened and topped up by a qualified workshop only.

- The cap on the coolant expansion tank is fitted with a sealing tag which must not be removed under any circumstances
  - ⇒ page 268, Fig. 169. If there is no sealing tag on the coolant expansion tank for the high-voltage system, please take the vehicle to a qualified workshop.
- When coolant is added, it can get inside the high-voltage components and cause a short circuit - risk of fire!



# **CAUTION**

Do NOT drive on if the expansion tank is empty. Do NOT add coolant. Air could get into the cooling system and cause damage to the engine. Obtain professional assistance.

# Brake fluid



Fig. 173 Engine compartment: Cap of brake fluid reservoir

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 265, General information.

# Checking brake fluid level

▶ Read off the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇒ page 268, Fig. 169. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX marks ⇒ Λ.

The brake fluid level is also automatically monitored.

# **Driver messages**

# Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. Obtain professional assistance.

# Having brake fluid changed

The brake fluid must be changed at regular intervals by a qualified workshop. The workshop can inform you about the service intervals for the brake fluid change.



# WARNING

- If the brake fluid level is under the MIN mark, the effectiveness of the brakes and therefore the safety of the vehicle may be impaired - risk of accident! Do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.
- Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if old brake fluid is left in the system. This would seriously impair the effectiveness of the brakes and the safety of the car risk of accident!

- The brake fluid in your vehicle must comply with the VW 501 14 standard. If this brake fluid is not available, it is permissible to use an alternative high-quality brake fluid complying with the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4, Class 6 (ISO 4925).

# CAUTION

- If the brake fluid level is above the MAX mark, brake fluid may escape via the cap on the reservoir in certain circumstances and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Brake fluid must not be allowed to come into contact with the vehicle's body, otherwise it will attack the paintwork.

# Electrical system

If the warning/indicator lamp 🗂 / 📥 or 🛅 lights up, there is a power supply or battery fault or a fault in the vehicle's electrical system.

/ Llectrical system: fault. Safely stop vehicle

or

# Electrical system: fault. Battery is not being charged

Switch off the ignition and do not drive on  $\Rightarrow \triangle$ . Obtain professional assistance.

# Electrical system: fault. No restart possible. Please contact workshop

When you switch off the ignition it will not be possible to restart the vehicle. The performance of certain vehicle functions may be limited and the vehicle's handling may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

# Electrical system: fault. Please contact workshop

Switch off any electrical equipment which is not required (some equipment may be switched off automatically). The performance of certain vehicle functions may be limited and the vehicle's handling may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

# Electrical system: fault. Let engine run with vehicle stationary. See owner's manual

Do not drive on. The charge level of the vehicle battery may be very low. Let the engine run at idling speed with the vehicle stationary until the indicator lamp goes out. This is the only way to charge the vehicle battery sufficiently. If the driver message does not disappear after 5 minutes, switch off the engine and seek professional assistance.

# Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving

Starting reliability may be impaired.

If this message disappears after a while, the vehicle battery will have been sufficiently charged while driving.

If the message does not disappear again, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.



# WARNING

An electrical system fault can cause vehicle functions to fail, thus impairing the vehicle's stability - risk of accident! Switch off the ignition and do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.



# WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The 12 Volt vehicle battery is a component which is subject to wear. Reduced performance of the 12 Volt vehicle battery could result in safety-related systems such as the brake servo and power steering, the lights and the airbag systems being restricted in their function or failing to operate. This could result in serious accidents and injury. Please note that the following safety measure should be taken to prevent this:

- Have the 12 Volt vehicle battery replaced every 4 years by a qualified workshop.

# **Battery**

# General notes on batteries

Because of the complexity of the power supply, any battery work, such as disconnection, replacement, etc. **must** be carried out by a qualified workshop  $\Rightarrow \triangle$ .

Several batteries using different technologies may be fitted in your vehicle:

- Vehicle battery (e.g. for starting the engine and the basic supply) ⇒ page 275, 12 Volt vehicle battery and ⇒ page 276, Other types of battery
- Additional battery (e.g. for recuperation and extra equipment) ⇒ page 276, Other types of battery
- Plug-in hybrid drive: High-voltage battery (e.g. for electric driving) ⇒ page 121, Introduction.

### If the vehicle is not used for long periods

The battery gradually becomes discharged if the vehicle is left standing for long periods. To ensure that the vehicle can be started, the electrical equipment is powered back or switched off. Certain convenience features, such as interior lighting or electric seat adjustment, may not be available. These functions will be restored when you start the engine.

Even though some systems are deactivated automatically, certain electrical equipment continues to draw current even when the ignition is off. If the vehicle is left standing for long periods, this can result in total battery discharge. If the vehicle battery is allowed to discharge completely, an internal chemical reaction damages the battery irreparably. To avoid this, the battery should be recharged at least once a month ⇔ page 276. Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.

#### Winter conditions

Cold weather is very hard on the 12 Volt vehicle battery. For this reason, you should have the battery checked by a qualified workshop before the start of winter.

# WARNING

- Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you must have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.
- Charging cables or jump leads must never be connected directly to the 12 Volt battery on your vehicle. Always use the terminals in the engine compartment ⇒ page 276.

# (1)

### **CAUTION**

- If the car is left standing for long periods, protect the battery from frost. The battery will be damaged irreparably if it is allowed to freeze ⇒ page 276, Charging the 12 Volt vehicle battery.
- Electrical components which can heat up during operation are located behind a trim panel underneath the luggage compartment floor. To prevent these components from overheating, objects such as blankets must not be stored underneath the floor panel. The components will switch off temporarily if they overheat. This will be indicated by a message in the instrument cluster until the temperature has returned to normal

# 12 Volt vehicle battery

# Meaning of warning symbols:



Always wear safety glasses.



Battery acid is extremely corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and safety glasses.



Keep open flames, sparks, uncovered lights and lit cigarettes away from the battery!



A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge!

# Checking and topping up fluids



Always keep children away from batteries and battery acid.



Always read the instructions in the Owner's Manual.



# For the sake of the environment

propriately and must not be discarded with ordinary household waste. They contain toxic substances including sulphuric acid and lead, in addition to recyclable materials. Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.

# Other types of battery

# Meaning of warning symbols:



Keep open flames, sparks, uncovered lights and lit cigarettes away from the battery!



Always keep children away from batteries and battery acid.



Always read the instructions in the Owner's Manual.



### WARNING

Any work on the batteries must always be carried out by a qualified workshop.

- Any gases escaping from these batteries may be toxic or flammable.
- The substances contained in these batteries can be corrosive. If the contents of the battery come into contact with your skin, rinse the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash with soap. Have the affected area examined by a doctor.



#### CAUTION

To prevent damage, e.g. due to power surges, components must not be connected to the battery terminals and wires.



# For the sake of the environment

These types of batteries must be disposed of appropriately and must not be discarded with ordinary household waste. They contain toxic substances, in addition to recyclable materials. Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.

# Charging the 12 Volt vehicle battery

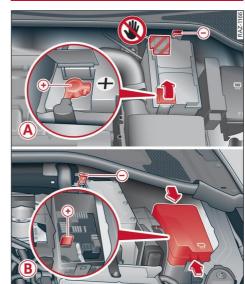


Fig. 174 Engine compartment: Terminals for battery charger or jump leads: (A) vehicles with battery in engine compartment, (B) vehicles with jump-start terminal (+) in engine compartment

Please read the safety information ⇒ page 265, General information,  $\Rightarrow \bigwedge$  in General notes on batteries on page 275 and  $\Rightarrow \Lambda$ .

Important: Only use chargers with a maximum charge voltage of 14.8 V (the battery cables do not have to be disconnected).

The battery is located in the engine compartment or luggage compartment (depending on the type of engine). Vehicles which have a battery in the luggage compartment also have a jump-start connection (+) inside the fuse box in the engine compartment. This can be used either to charge the battery or to jump-start the vehicle. The battery is always charged from the engine compartment  $\Rightarrow$  page 268, Fig. 169. The earth point  $\bigcirc$  is always on the vehicle's body.

► Switch off all electrical equipment and the ignition.

- ▶ Open the bonnet ⇒ page 266.
- ► Applies to vehicles with jump-start terminal (+): Press the two tabs on the fuse box in the direction indicated by the arrows and remove the cover  $\Rightarrow$  *Fig. 174*.
- ► Connect the charger cables correctly to the positive terminal/jump-start terminal (+) and the earth point (-).
- ► Connect the battery charger to the mains and switch it on.
- ▶ After charging the battery: switch off the battery charger and disconnect the mains cable.
- ▶ Now disconnect the charger cables.
- ► Applies to vehicles with battery in engine compartment: Close the cap on the positive termi-
- ► Applies to vehicles with jump-start terminal (+): Place the cover on the fuse box and press it on carefully until you hear it engage.
- ► Close the bonnet ⇒ page 266.

### WARNING

- A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge. Only charge the battery in a well ventilated
- When it is discharged the battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°C. You must not use a battery which has frozen, even after it has thawed, because the ice may have cracked the battery casing and allowed the battery acid to escape - risk of explosion and chemical burns! Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.
- Do not connect or disconnect the charging cables during the charging process - risk of explosion!



- Use only the terminals in the engine compartment to charge the battery.
- Important: Before you charge the battery make sure you read the manufacturer's instructions for using the battery charger.

# Windscreen washer system



Fig. 175 Engine compartment: Cap of windscreen washer

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 265, General information.

The container for the windscreen washer  $\stackrel{\leftarrow}{\omega}$  contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen/rear window\* and the headlight washer system\* ⇒ Fig. 175, ⇒ page 268. For the container capacity, please refer to  $\Rightarrow$  page 321.

Clean water should be used when topping up. If possible, use soft water to prevent scaling on the washer jets. Always add washer fluid to the water. In cold weather you should add anti-freeze to the water to prevent it from freezing.

#### **Driver messages**

# Please add washer fluid

With the ignition switched off, top up the fluid for the windscreen washer and headlight washer system\*.



# **CAUTION**

- The anti-freeze concentration must be matched to the climate of the country in which you are driving. If the concentration is too high, damage to the car may result.
- Never put in radiator anti-freeze or other additives.
- Never use washer fluid which contains paint thinners or solvents as it can damage the paintwork.

# Service interval display

The service interval display detects when the next service is due for your vehicle.

There are two service interval display levels:

- Inspection or oil change reminder: After a certain mileage, a service reminder will appear in the instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on/off. The distance or time remaining will be shown briefly.
- Inspection or oil change due: When your vehicle is due for an inspection, oil change or both, the corresponding reminder Inspection due!,
   Oil change due! or Oil change and inspection due! will appear briefly after you switch the ignition on/off.

# Checking the service intervals

You can check the distance and time remaining until the next oil change and next service inspection.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Service intervals.

Applies to: vehicles with flexible oil change service

You cannot check the service interval on a new vehicle until it has been driven for about 500 km.

Qualified workshops reset the service interval after the oil is changed. The distance to the next oil change is initially displayed based on the driving profile prior to the oil change. Your own personal driving profile is used subsequently to calculate the remaining distance. Frequent cold starts or short trips place extra demands on the engine oil with the result that the oil has to be changed more often.

# Resetting the display

Your qualified workshop resets the service interval display after each service.

It is very important that you reset the oil change display if you change the oil yourself. The next oil change will be due after a fixed service interval.

Applies to MMI: To reset the display, select the following on the home screen: CAR > Settings & service > Service intervals

# 1

# **CAUTION**

- Do not reset the oil change interval display unless you have changed the oil.
- Keeping to the correct service intervals is most important for the service life and residual value of the vehicle (and especially for the life of the engine). Services must always be carried out promptly, even if the mileage is low.

# Service interval display for natural gas system

Applies to: vehicles with natural gas engine

The service interval display detects when the next service is due for your vehicle.

Please observe any different country-specific regulations on the service intervals for natural gas systems.

# **Driver messages**

/ March / CNG mode not available in XXX.
Please contact workshop

Or:

✓/✓/ CNG inspection: CNG mode not available in XXX. Please contact workshop

This driver message appears at regular intervals in conjunction with the corresponding warning/indicator lamp. The time remaining until the next inspection of the natural gas system is due is shown in the instrument cluster. Drive to a qualified workshop within the time shown and have the natural gas system checked.

due! CNG mode not available. Please contact workshop

Or:

CNG inspection due! CNG mode not available. Please contact workshop

Your vehicle has reached the date by which the inspection is due and can now only be run on petrol. It is no longer possible to switch to CNG mode. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the natural gas system checked.

# Wheels

# Tyres and rims

# **General notes**

- ► Inspect the tyres regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign bodies embedded in the treads.
- ▶ If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the kerb.
- ▶ Damaged rims or tyres must be replaced imme-
- ► Keep grease, oil and fuel off the tyres.
- ▶ Mark the wheels before taking them off so that they rotate in the same direction when refitted.
- ▶ When removed, the wheels should be stored flat in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.

# WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum approved speed for your tyres. This causes the tyres to overheat and can even result in a blow-out - risk of accident!
- Always adapt your driving style to the prevailing road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tyres lose their grip on black ice.

# CAUTION

- Please note that summer and winter tyres are optimised for the prevailing road conditions at different times of year. Audi recommends that you use winter tyres during the winter months. At low temperatures, summer tyres lose their elasticity and grip, and braking performance also suffers as a result. Cracks can form in the tread block on summer tyres if they are used at very cold temperatures, and this can cause permanent damage to the tyres. An increase in rolling noise and tyre imbalance may result from this damage.

- Machined, polished or chrome-plated rims must not be used in winter conditions. The process used to manufacture these types of wheel rim does not provide adequate surface protection against corrosion, and the rims can be permanently damaged by road salt or similar.

# New wheels or tyres

Audi recommends having all servicing of wheels and tyres performed by a qualified workshop, since they have the necessary special tools and replacement parts in addition to trained personnel.

- ▶ New tyres do not yet give maximum grip. When driving with new tyres, drive at moderate speeds and be especially careful during the first 500 km.
- ▶ All four wheels must be fitted with tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and preferably the same tread pattern.
- ► Tyres should be replaced in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together).
- ► Audi recommends the use of Audi Genuine Tyres. If you wish to use other tyres, please note that the actual size can differ from the nominal size marked on the tyre  $\Rightarrow \bigwedge$ .
- ► If you wish to purchase a different combination of rims and tyres than the ones fitted on the vehicle during production, it is advisable to consult a qualified workshop beforehand  $\Rightarrow \Lambda$ .

The specifications for the rims and tyres approved for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's documents (e.g. EC Certificate of Conformity or COC document <sup>1)</sup>). The vehicle documents vary depending on the country in which the vehicle is registered.

If the spare wheel\* is not the same type as the tyres fitted on the car (for example if the car has winter tyres or wide-section tyres) you should only use the spare wheel\* if a puncture occurs, and then only for a short period of time. In this case, please drive with extra care. Refit a normal road wheel as soon as possible.

Applies to vehicles with four-wheel drive: All four wheels must always be fitted with tyres of the same type, make and tread pattern, as the driveline could otherwise be damaged by variations in the wheel speeds. For the same reason, only use a spare wheel\* which has the same rolling circumference as the normal road wheels

# Manufacturing date

The manufacturing date is indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly only on the inner side of the wheel):

# DOT ... 2220 ...

means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 22nd week of 2020.

# **Audi Genuine Tyres**

Audi Genuine Tyres with the marking "AO" are specially matched to your Audi. When used properly, these tyres meet the highest standards in safety and handling. Your specialist retailer will be glad to provide more information.

# $\Lambda$

# WARNING

- Use only tyre/rim combinations and matching wheel bolts approved by Audi. Otherwise damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
- For technical reasons, it is not possible to use wheels from other vehicles. In certain cases, it is not even possible to use wheels from another vehicle of the same model.
- It is very important to ensure that the tyres you have chosen have adequate clearance. When selecting replacement tyres, do not rely entirely on the nominal tyre size marked on the tyre; with some makes of tyre the effective tyre size can differ significantly from the nominal dimensions, even though the tyres have the same size designation. Inadequate tyre clearance can result in damage to the tyres or the vehicle, causing a serious safety risk.
- Avoid running the car on tyres that are more than 6 years old. If you have no alternative,

- you should drive slowly and with extra care at all times.
- The use of run-flat tyres on your vehicle is NOT authorised! Unauthorised use can cause an accident or damage your vehicle.
- If wheel trims are fitted after the car is purchased, ensure that there is an adequate flow of air for cooling the brakes – risk of accident!

# Tyre wear / damage



Fig. 176 Tyre tread: Tread wear indicators

# Tyre wear

Inspect the tyres regularly for damage.

- The wear on under or over-inflated tyres is significantly higher.
- Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear.
- If you notice excessive tyre wear, have the wheel alignment checked by a qualified workshop.
- Have your tyres rebalanced if steering wheel vibrations indicate an imbalance. Otherwise, the tyres and other parts of the vehicle may wear faster.

#### Tread wear indicators

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators ⇒ Fig. 176 running across the tread at regular intervals. The letters "TWI" or triangles on the sidewall indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

The minimum tread depth<sup>1)</sup> is reached at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators. Replace the tyres with new ones  $\Rightarrow \Lambda$ .

# Changing wheels round

Wheels should be changed round regularly to ensure that the wear is equal on all tyres. Fit the wheels from the rear axle on the front axle and vice-versa. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

On tyres with a directional tread pattern, note the direction of rotation indicated on the sidewall ⇒ page 298.

# Concealed damage

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibrations or the car pulling to one side, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. Reduce your speed immediately. Inspect the tyres for damage. If no external damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest qualified workshop and have the car inspected.

# **↑** WARNING

Insufficient tread depth or different tread depths on different wheels reduce safety. This is particularly evident in vehicle handling, when there is a risk of aquaplaning in deep puddles of water and when driving through corners. Braking is also adversely affected – risk of accident!

# Tyre pressure

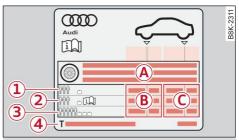


Fig. 177 B-pillar on driver's side: tyre pressure sticker

The correct inflation pressures for tyres fitted at the factory and for the spare wheel\* are specified on a sticker. The sticker  $\Rightarrow$  *Fig. 177* is on the B-pillar (driver's side).

- (A) Tyre size
- (B) Tyre pressure for the front wheels
- C Tyre pressure for the rear wheels
- 1 Tyre pressure if vehicle is partially loaded
- ② Tyre pressure (comfort setting)\* if vehicle is partially loaded (not available on all vehicles) If a maximum speed is given, it must not be exceeded.
- 3 Tyre pressure if vehicle is fully loaded
- (4) Tyre pressure for the spare wheel\*

If you intend to drive the vehicle with a partial load, adjust the tyre pressures to the specified setting ①. However, if you prefer an extrasmooth ride you can select the comfort setting\* ②. Should you wish to drive with a full load, you must increase the tyre pressure to the specified maximum ③ ⇒ ⚠.

# Checking / adjusting the tyre pressures

- ► Check the tyre pressures at least once a month and, in addition, before starting a long journey.
- ► The tyre pressures should only be checked when the tyres are *cold*. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced.

Please observe the applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.

- ▶ Refer to the sticker ⇒ Fig. 177 for the correct tyre pressures.
- ▶ If necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.
- ► Then store the new tyre pressures on the MMI ⇒ page 284.
- Check the pressure of the spare wheel\*. Keep the spare tyre inflated to the highest pressure approved for the tyre.

# $\Lambda$

# WARNING

Always adjust the tyre pressures to match your driving style and the load the vehicle is carrying.

- Excessive loads can cause you to lose control of the vehicle - risk of accident!
- Under-inflated tyres flex more and can overheat at high speeds or when the vehicle is carrying a heavy load. This could cause a tyre blow-out and you could lose control of the vehicle risk of accident!
- Incorrect tyre pressures increase tyre wear and adversely affect vehicle braking and handling – risk of accident!

### CAUTION

Replace any lost valve caps to prevent damage to the tyre valves.

# For the sake of the environment

- Under-inflated tyres will increase the fuel consumption.
- Driving with the tyre pressures adjusted to the comfort setting\* may also result in increased fuel consumption.



#### i) Note

Audi recommends always using the tyre pressure setting ① for partial loads and the setting ③ for full loads.

# Wheel bolts and rims

#### Wheel bolts

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily.

### Rims

Rims with a bolted rim flange\* or bolted trim parts\* consist of several components. A special technique is applied to bolt these components together. Never attempt to repair or dismantle them  $\Rightarrow \triangle$ .

# 1

# WARNING

If the wheel bolts have not been tightened or serviced correctly, they can come loose, and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident! For the correct tightening torque, refer to ⇒ page 298, After changing a wheel.

- Make sure that the wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hubs are always clean and free from grease.
- Only use wheel bolts that are designed to match the rims on your car.
- Always have damaged rims repaired by a qualified workshop. Never attempt to repair or dismantle rims yourself - risk of accident!

# Winter tyres

In winter road conditions winter tyres will considerably improve the car's handling. Due to their type of construction (width, rubber compound, tread pattern), summer tyres give less grip on ice and snow.

- ▶ Winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels.
- ► Only use winter tyres of the correct type approved for your vehicle.
- ▶ Please note that the maximum permissible speed for winter tyres may be lower than for summer tyres ⇒ ↑ in General notes on page 279. Your specialist retailer can advise you of the maximum speed for your tyres.
- ► After fitting the wheels you must always check the tyre pressures ⇒ page 281.

Winter tyres lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. The performance of winter tyres is also severely impaired by ageing, even if the tread is still much deeper than 4 mm.



# For the sake of the environment

Summer tyres should be fitted again as soon as possible; they give better handling on roads which are free of snow and ice. They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce fuel consumption.



# Note

All-weather tyres can also be used instead of winter tyres. Please note that winter tyres with the <u>A</u> symbol are required by law during the winter season in some countries.

# **Snow chains**

Snow chains will improve braking ability as well as traction in winter conditions.

- ► Snow chains can be used on the front wheels only.
- ► Check that the snow chains are correctly seated after driving for a few yards; follow the instructions given by the manufacturer.
- ► Keep your speed below 50 km/h. Please observe the applicable local regulations.

For technical reasons, snow chains may only be used on tyres with certain wheel rim/tyre combinations (depending on model version):

Rim size	Rim offset	Tyre size
6.5Jx16	43 mm	205/55
6.5Jx17	43 mm	205/50

Only use snow chains with **fine-pitch links**. The links must not protrude more than 10.5 mm from the tyres (including tensioner).

You must remove the snow chains on roads which are free of snow; otherwise the vehicle's handling may be impaired and the tyres may be damaged.



#### WARNING

Unsuitable or incorrectly mounted snow chains can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!



# **CAUTION**

Snow chains can damage the rim/hubcap\* if they make direct contact with it. Remove the hubcaps\* beforehand. Use snow chains which have a protective coating.



### Note

When driving with snow chains, it may help to restrict the ESC  $\Rightarrow$  page 119.

# Low-profile tyres

Applies to: vehicles with low-profile tyres

Low-profile tyres have a lower sidewall and provide a wider tread surface and rim diameter than other wheel/tyre combinations. This makes the car's handling more agile. However, the ride may be less comfortable on poor-quality roads and tracks, and rolling noise may be louder.

Low-profile tyres can be damaged more quickly than standard tyres, for example by heavy jolts, potholes, manhole covers and kerbs. It is therefore particularly important to ensure that they are inflated to the correct pressure ⇒ page 281.

Drive with particular care on poor-quality roads to ensure that you do not damage the rims and tyres.

Make sure to check your wheels regularly (every 3,000 km) for damage such as blisters/tears on the tyre sidewalls or deformations/cracks on the rims

After a heavy jolt, or if any damage occurs, you should have the rims and tyres checked and if necessary replaced by a qualified workshop.

Tyre wear occurs more quickly on low-profile tyres than on standard tyres.

# Tyre pressure loss indicator

# Tyre pressure loss indicator in instrument cluster

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator

The tyre pressure loss indicator in the instrument cluster informs the driver if the tyre pressure is too low or a system malfunction has occurred.

The tyre pressure loss indicator makes use of the ABS sensors to compare the rolling circumference and the vibration of the tyres. If changes in the inflation pressure are detected on one or more tyres, the driver is alerted by an indicator lamp and a message in the instrument cluster display. If only one tyre is affected, the display will indicate its position.

Each time you change a tyre, change the wheels round or change the tyre pressures on your vehicle (e.g. when switching from partial load to full load and vice-versa), you must store the new tyre pressures  $\Rightarrow$  page 284. Monitoring of the tyre pressures is based on the tyre pressures you have stored. The inflation pressures recommended for your vehicle are given on the tyre pressure sticker  $\Rightarrow$  page 281, Fig. 177.

The rolling circumference and vibration can change and cause a tyre pressure warning if:

- The inflation pressure in one or more tyres is too low.
- The tyres have suffered structural damage.
- The wheels were changed or the tyre pressures were changed and the new tyre pressures were not stored 

  page 284.
- Only some of the worn tyres have been replaced.

# Indicator lamps

284

If the indicator lamp 1 lights up, there is a loss of pressure on one or more tyres  $\Rightarrow \triangle$ . Check the tyre(s) and change them if necessary. Check and adjust the inflation pressures of all four tyres again and store the new tyre pressures  $\Rightarrow page\ 284$ .

Tyre pressure: fault. See owner's manual

If This appears and the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display flashes for approx. one minute and then remains lit after you have switched on the ignition or while you are driving, there is a fault in the system. Try to store the correct tyre pressures  $\Rightarrow$  page 284. In some cases the indicator lamp may not go out until you have driven the vehicle for a few minutes after storing the pressures. If the indicator lamp does not go out or if it comes on again after a short time, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

# $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- If the tyre pressure loss indicator appears on the display, slow down immediately and avoid any severe braking or steering manoeuvres. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the tyres and the tyre pressures.
- It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tyre pressures are correct. For this reason you must check the tyre pressures regularly.
- Under certain conditions (e.g. driving at high speeds, on ice and snow or on poor road surfaces) the tyre pressure loss indicator may not appear immediately.



#### Note

- If a malfunction occurs in the ESC system, the tyre pressure loss indicator may also be out of action.
- When driving with snow chains, a system malfunction can occur.
- The tyre pressure loss indicator on your Audi is specially matched to "Audi Genuine Tyres"
   ⇒ page 279. Audi recommends that you use these tyres.

# Storing tyre pressure settings

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator

When you change a tyre or the tyre pressure on your vehicle, you must confirm the change on the system.

▶ Before storing the new tyre pressures, check that the current pressures on all four wheels

correspond to the specified values and adapt the pressures to the current load ⇒ page 281.

- ► Switch on the ignition.
- ► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Tyre pressure > Store tyre pressures > Yes, store now.



# Note

Do not store the tyre pressures if you are driving with snow chains.

# Care of vehicle and cleaning

# General notes

Regular and careful care helps to maintain the value of the vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for upholding any warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

The required car care products are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers. Please follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

# WARNING

- Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can damage health if misused.
- Car care products can contain toxic substances and must always be kept in a safe place out of reach of children



# For the sake of the environment

- Please choose care products that are not harmful to the environment.
- Surplus cleaning materials should not be disposed of together with ordinary household waste.

# Washing the vehicle

The longer residues like insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap or road salt are allowed to remain on the vehicle, the more damage they can do to the paintwork. High temperatures (for instance in direct sunlight) further intensify the damage.

Before washing, soak heavy dirt with plenty of water.

Stubborn dirt, such as bird droppings or resinous tree sap, is best removed with plenty of water and a micro-fibre cloth.

After the period when salt is put on the roads, have the underside of the vehicle washed thoroughly.

# High-pressure cleaners

When cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This applies particularly to the operating pressure and the spraying distance. Do not point the spray jet directly at the seals on the windows, doors, boot lid, bonnet or sun roof\*, or at the tyres, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors\* or camera lenses\*. Maintain a distance of at least 40 cm.

Plug-in hybrid drive: Do not point the spray jet at the clip wall mount\*.

Do not use a high-pressure cleaner to remove snow and ice.

Never use high-pressure cleaners with a round-jet nozzle or "dirt blasters".

The water must not be hotter than 60 °C.

# Automatic car washes

Spray the vehicle with water before washing.

Ensure that the windows and sun roof\* are closed and that the windscreen wipers are switched off. Ensure that the car is free to roll while it is being washed in a tunnel car wash. Follow the car wash operator's rules and recommendations, especially if any accessories are attached to your vehicle.

If possible use a brushless car wash.

# Washing by hand

Clean the car with a soft sponge or brush, starting on the roof and working down. Use solventfree cleaning agents.

# Washing matt-painted vehicles by hand

To avoid damaging the paintwork when washing the car, first remove any dust, sand and grit. Insects, grease stains and fingerprints are best removed using a special cleaning agent for mattpainted surfaces.

Apply the product with a micro-fibre cloth. Do not apply too much pressure to avoid damaging the paintwork.

Rinse the car thoroughly with water. Then clean the car with a neutral shampoo and a soft microfibre cloth.

Rinse the car with lots of water again and then let it dry in the air. Remove any water stains with a chamois



## WARNING

- Follow the rules and recommendations of the car wash operator and do not wash the vehicle with the ignition switched on - risk of accident!
- To avoid cutting yourself on sharp metal parts, always wear suitable protection when cleaning the underside of the car or inside the wheel arches.
- After the car has been washed, the full braking effect can be delayed by moisture (or in winter by ice) on the discs and brake pads risk of accident! The brakes should be dried by pressing the pedal to restore full braking effect.



#### **CAUTION**

- Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent damage. Always use the electrical power control to fold the mirrors in/out on vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors\*.
- Compare the track width of your vehicle with the distance between the guide rails for the wheels in the car wash. Otherwise

- there may be a risk of damaging the wheel rims and tyres.
- Compare the height and width of your vehicle with the available height and width
  when entering and driving through the car
  wash. Otherwise there may be a risk of damaging the vehicle.
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight otherwise the paint can be damaged.
- The decals\* must not be washed with a high-pressure cleaner – risk of damage!
- Do not use insect sponges or abrasive household sponges, etc. – they can damage the surfaces.
- Matt-painted vehicle parts:
  - Do not use polish or wax otherwise the paintwork can be damaged.
  - Never use car-wash programmes that include wax coatings. This could spoil the matt finish.
  - Do not attach any stickers or magnet labels to matt-painted parts as these could damage the paintwork when they are removed.



#### For the sake of the environment

The car should only be washed in special wash bays. This prevents oily water from getting into the public drains.

# Notes on cleaning and care

For cleaning and care of individual components on the vehicle, please refer to the tables below. These are recommendations only. If you have special questions or certain components are not listed, please ask your qualified workshop. Please also refer to the notes  $\Rightarrow \triangle$ .

#### Cleaning the exterior

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy	
Wiper blades	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with glass cleaner ⇒ page 62	
Headlights/ rear lights	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent <sup>a)</sup>	
Sensors/ camera lenses	Dirt/deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning agent Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning agent	
	Snow/ice	Small brush/solvent-free de-icer spray	
Wheels	Road salt	Water	
	Brake dust	Acid-free cleaning agent	

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Tailpipes	Road salt	Water; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary
Trim/ mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent <sup>a)</sup> ; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary
Paintwork	Paint damage	Touch up using a paint pen
	Fuel overflow	Rinse with water without delay
	Surface rust	Surface rust remover, apply wax afterwards; contact your qualified workshop with any questions
	Corrosion	Have it removed by your qualified workshop
	Water no longer pearls off clean paint- work	Apply wax (at least twice a year)
	Paint has lost its shine, gloss cannot be restored by waxing	Treat with a suitable polish; finish with wax coating if polish does not contain wax compounds
	Residues, e.g. insects, bird droppings, resin- ous tree sap, road salt	Remove immediately using water and a micro-fibre cloth
	Fat-based stains, e.g. cosmetics or sun lotion	Remove immediately using mild detergent <sup>a)</sup> and a soft cloth
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as painted parts ⇒ page 286
Decals	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent <sup>a)</sup>
Audi e-tron charging system	Dirt/deposits	Soft, dry cloth
Clip wall mount	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning agent

a) Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

## Cleaning the interior

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Windows	Dirt/deposits	Glass cleaning agent, then wipe dry
Trim/ mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent <sup>a)</sup>
Plastic parts Dirt/deposits Damp cloth		Damp cloth
	Heavier dirt/deposits	Mild detergent <sup>a)</sup> ; solvent-free plastic cleaning agent if necessary
Displays/instru- ment cluster	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner; dust deposits in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed with a soft brush
Controls and displays	Dirt/deposits	Soft brush, then soft sponge with mild detergent <sup>a)</sup>
Seat belts	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent <sup>a)</sup> (allow to dry before retracting)

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Fabrics,	Surface dirt	Vacuum cleaner
leatherette, Alcantara	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild detergent <sup>a)</sup>
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Apply mild detergent <sup>a)</sup> , dab off dissolved grease or colour particles with absorbent cloth; if necessary treat with water
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, disper- sion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Special stain remover (dab off with absorbent fabric); if necessary treat with mild detergent <sup>a)</sup>
Natural leather	Fresh dirt/stains	Cotton cloth with mild detergent <sup>a)</sup>
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and suitable stain remover for leather Dried stains: grease removal spray
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, disper- sion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Stain remover suitable for leather
	Care of vehicle	Regularly apply leather-care cream with ultra-violet protection and impregnating compound; if necessary use special colour leather cream
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as plastic parts

a) Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

# **↑** WARNING

Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.



#### WARNING

- Never immerse the Audi e-tron charging system or the connectors in water.
- Only clean the Audi e-tron charging system when the operating unit is fully disconnec-

ted from the electricity grid and from the vehicle.

# (1)

#### CAUTION

#### - Headlights/rear lights

- Never clean the headlights/rear lights with a dry cloth or sponge - risk of damage!
- Do not use cleaning agents containing alcohol. This could cause the glass to crack!

#### Wheels

 Do not use paint polish or other abrasive agents.  If the protective paint coating on the wheel rim is scratched or damaged by stone chips etc., the damaged area should be touched up without delay.

#### - Camera lenses

- Never remove snow and ice from the camera lens using warm or hot water danger of cracks appearing on the lens.
- Never clean the camera lens with cleaning agents which are abrasive or contain alcohol - danger of scratches and cracks.

#### - Windows and windscreen

- Remove snow and ice from windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid scratches, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.
- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors.
   This could cause the glass to crack!
- To avoid damaging the heating element, do not put stickers on the inner side of the rear window.

#### - Ornamental trim/mouldings

- Do not use chrome cleaning agents.

#### - Paintwork

- The vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before applying polish/wax – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.
- Do not polish/wax the vehicle in direct sunlight – this can damage the paint!
- Do not attempt to polish out surface rust deposits - this can damage the paint!
- Remove cosmetics and sun lotion immediately otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.

#### - Decals

- Do not use any powder-based or abrasive cleaning products – risk of damage!
- Do not polish matt or printed decals otherwise the decals could be damaged.
- Do not use an ice scraper to remove snow and ice from windows to which decals have been applied – this could damage the decals.

#### - Displays/instrument cluster

- Before cleaning, ensure that the displays and the instrument cluster are switched off and cool. To switch off the centre display, select the following on the home screen of the MMI: SETTINGS > Display & brightness > MMI > Screen cleaning.
- The displays/instrument cluster and the surrounding trim must not be cleaned with a dry cloth - this can scratch the surfaces!
- Do not let any liquid get between the instrument cluster and the trim – risk of damage!

#### - Control consoles

 Do not let any liquid get inside the control consoles – risk of damage!

#### - Seat belts

- Do not remove the seat belts to clean them.
- Do not use chemical cleaning agents, corrosive liquids, solvents or sharp instruments to clean the seat belts or their components this can damage the belt webbing!
- If you find any damage to the belt webbing, the belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, have the belt in question replaced by a qualified workshop.

#### - Fabrics/leatherette/Alcantara

- Do not use leather care products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leatherette/Alcantara fabrics
- To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a qualified workshop.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
- Do not use the seat heating\* to dry the seats.
- Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
- Please make sure you close any velcro fasteners, e.g. on your clothing, as these could otherwise damage the upholstery.

#### Natural leather

- Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leather fabrics.
- Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
- Do not use the seat heating\* to dry the seats.
- Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods, otherwise it may tend to lose some of its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period in the bright sun, it is best to cover the leather.

#### - Clip wall mount

 Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or fluids containing alcohol – risk of discolouration!

# i Note

- It is much easier to remove dead insects if the car has been waxed recently.
- Regular waxing can help protect against surface rust.
- The decals undergo an ageing process (e.g. becoming brittle) due to various environmental factors. Excessive exposure to sunlight may cause irregularities in the colouring of the decals.

# Taking the vehicle out of service

If you wish to take your vehicle out of service for a long period of time, contact an Audi dealer or other qualified workshop. They can give you advice on the measures necessary, depending on where and for how long the vehicle is to be kept out of service.

## **Mobility**

## General notes

- ▶ If your vehicle experiences technical problems, stop the car well away from moving traffic. If you have a flat tyre, you should park the car on a level surface. Be particularly careful if you are on a slope.
- ► Apply the parking brake.
- ► Switch the hazard warning lights on.
- ▶ Put on your high-visibility vest.
- ▶ Place the warning triangle in a visible location.
- ▶ Instruct all passengers to leave the car when it is safe to do so. They should wait in a safe place (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).



#### WARNING

You should note the procedure described above for your own safety and that of other road users.

# Equipment

### High-visibility vest

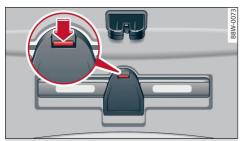
Applies to: vehicles with high-visibility vest

The factory-supplied high-visibility vests are located in the storage compartment in the driver's door.

In some countries, the high-visibility vests may be stowed elsewhere.

#### Warning triangle

Applies to: vehicles with warning triangle



Applies to: Saloon

Fig. 178 Boot lid: Warning triangle

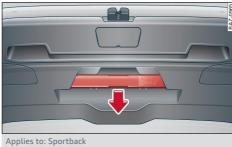


Fig. 179 Boot lid: Warning triangle

The factory-supplied warning triangle is attached to the inside of the boot lid.

Applies to: Saloon

► To remove the warning triangle, push the tab in the direction indicated by the arrow  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 178 and pull the retainer down.

Applies to: Sportback

▶ Pull the warning triangle out of the retainer ⇒ Fig. 179.

The retainer on the boot lid is specifically designed to hold the warning triangle supplied as an Audi Genuine Accessory.

#### First-aid kit

Applies to: vehicles with first-aid kit

The first-aid kit is stowed in the storage compartment in the rear right door.

#### Fire extinguisher

Applies to: vehicles with fire extinguisher

The factory-fitted fire extinguisher is accommodated in the front passenger's footwell.

In some countries, the fire extinguisher may be stowed elsewhere.

- ▶ Open the strap to remove the fire extinguisher.
- ► To secure the fire extinguisher, put it in the holder and fasten the strap.

Check how the fire extinguisher works before you need to use it. The instructions for use are shown on the fire extinguisher.

#### **WARNING**

If the fire extinguisher is not secured properly it could be catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

#### i) Note

- The fire extinguisher must be replaced with a new one after use or once it has reached its expiry date.
- The fire extinguisher must comply with legal requirements.

## Tool kit / tyre repair kit / jack

Applies to: vehicles with tool kit, tyre repair kit and jack



Applies to: Saloon

Fig. 180 Luggage compartment: Floor panel



Applies to: Sportback

Fig. 181 Luggage compartment: Floor panel

The tool kit, jack, tyre repair kit and compressor are stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

- ▶ Applies to Saloon: Lift the floor panel by the plastic handle  $\Rightarrow$  *Fig. 180*.
- ▶ Applies to Saloon: Hook the handle onto the luggage compartment seal.

▶ Applies to Sportback: Lift the floor panel by the plastic handle until it is fixed in position behind the retaining tabs on the two side sections ⇒ Fig. 181.

Applies to: vehicles with spare wheel

- ► Turn the plastic knob anti-clockwise.
- ▶ You can remove the foam box together with the towing bracket\* if necessary.
- ► Take out the spare wheel\*.
- ► Applies to Saloon: Unhook the floor panel before closing the boot lid.



#### Note

The jack in your vehicle is maintenance-free.

# Tyre repair kit

#### **Preparations**

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

- ▶ Please refer to the important safety notes ⇒ page 292.
- ► Apply the parking brake.
- ► Manual gearbox: Engage first gear.
- ► Automatic gearbox: Select transmission position P.
- ► Check whether a repair is possible using the tyre repair kit ⇒ page 293.

#### Using the tyre repair kit

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit



Fig. 182 Tyres: Irreparable tyre damage

Repaired tyres are only suitable for temporary use. Replace the damaged tyre as quickly as possible ⇒ Λ.

If the tyre was damaged by an object, such as a nail, do not remove it from the tyre.

The tyre repair kit can be used at outside temperatures down to - 20 °C.

#### The tyre repair kit must NOT be used:

- On cuts and punctures larger than 4 mm (1) ⇒ Fig. 182.
- If the wheel rim has been damaged (2).
- if you have been driving with very low pressure or a completely flat tyre (3).

In these cases, you should seek professional assistance.



#### WARNING

- Please note that the tyre repair kit is not suitable for use in every situation and should only be used as a temporary measure.
- Do not allow the sealant to come into contact with your eyes, skin or clothing.
- If you do come into contact with the sealant immediately rinse the eyes or skin affected with clean water.
- Make sure you do not breathe in the fumes.
- If you accidentally swallow tyre sealant, immediately rinse your mouth thoroughly and drink a large amount of water. Do not induce vomiting. Immediately contact a doctor.
- Change clothing immediately if it becomes soiled with the tyre sealant.
- If any allergic reactions should occur get medical help immediately.
- Keep the sealant away from children.



#### i) Note

- If sealant should leak out, leave it to dry. When it has dried, you can pull it off like a piece of foil.
- Observe the expiry date stated on the sealing compound can. Have the sealing compound exchanged by a qualified workshop.
- Interference to the radio reception may occur when using the compressor.
- Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

#### Tyre repairs

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit



Fig. 183 Tyres: Filling the tyre

Important: The tyre repair kit must be at hand and ready for use  $\Rightarrow$  page 293.

### Filling the tyre

- ► Shake the tyre sealant can well.
- ▶ Screw the enclosed filling hose onto the sealant can as far as it will go. This will automatically pierce the foil sealing the can.
- ► Take the valve cap off the tyre valve and use the enclosed valve insert tool to unscrew the valve insert ⇒ *Fia.* 183.
- ▶ Place the valve insert onto a clean surface.
- ► Remove the sealing plug from the filling hose and insert the hose into the tyre valve.
- ► Hold the tyre sealant can upside down and fill the complete contents into the tyre.
- ▶ Then disconnect the filling hose and screw the valve insert firmly back into the tyre valve.

#### Inflating the tyre

- ► Screw the compressor hose (from the tyre repair kit) onto the tyre valve and plug the connector into an electrical socket in the vehicle.
- ▶ Pump the tyre up to 2.0 to 2.5 bar and monitor the pressure shown on the pressure gauge.
- ▶ If the tyre pressure remains lower than the value specified above, remove the hose and drive 10 metres forwards or backwards at a low speed so that the sealant can spread evenly in the tyre. Now pump the tyre up again  $\Rightarrow \bigwedge$ .

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- Please observe the manufacturers' safety notes on the compressor and the instructions supplied with the tyre sealant can.
- If it was not possible to build up a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar within six minutes this means that the tyre is too badly damaged.
   Do not drive on.
- Seek professional assistance if the repair of a tyre puncture is not possible with the sealing compound.



#### Note

Do not use the compressor for longer than 6 minutes at a time, as it could overheat. When the compressor has cooled down, you can use it again.

#### After repairing a tyre

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

- Affix the sticker "max. 80 km/h", which is included in the tyre repair kit, to the dashboard where the driver will see it.
- ► After about 10 minutes, stop to check the tyre pressure.
- ► If tyre pressure is less than 1.3 bar, the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.

# $\overline{\Lambda}$

#### WARNING

After repairing a tyre please note the following points:

- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.
- Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.
- Vehicle handling could be impaired.
- If the tyre is too badly damaged, you should seek professional assistance.



#### For the sake of the environment

A used can of sealing compound can be returned to your qualified workshop for disposal.



#### Note

After repairing a tyre, remember to buy a new tyre sealant can at a qualified workshop.

# Changing a wheel

#### **Preparations**

Certain preparations must be made before you change the wheel.

- ► Please refer to the important safety notes ⇒ page 292.
- ► Apply the parking brake.
- ► Manual gearbox: Engage first gear.
- Automatic gearbox: Select transmission position P.
- ► If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle.
- ► Take out the tools ⇒ page 293 and spare wheel ⇒ page 298.
- ► Switch off the ignition.



#### WARNING

When using the jack\*, block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed by placing suitable objects underneath both the front and rear of the wheel to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

## Removing covers



Fig. 184 Wheel: Wheel bolts with caps

Applies to vehicles with wheel bolt caps:

- ► Slide the plastic clip (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) onto the wheel bolt cap until it engages ⇒ Fig. 184.
- ▶ Pull off the cap using the plastic clip.

Applies to vehicles with wheel covers:

▶ Pull off the wheel cover by hand.

#### Anti-theft wheel bolts

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft wheel bolts

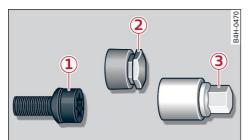


Fig. 185 Anti-theft wheel bolt with wheel bolt cap and adapter

To release the anti-theft wheel bolts, you need a special adapter (provided in the vehicle's tool kit).

- ▶ Remove the cap (2).
- ► Slide the adapter ③ all the way onto the antitheft wheel bolt ①.
- ► Fit the box spanner\* (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) as far as it will go over the adapter (3).
- ▶ Loosen the wheel bolt ⇒ page 296.

# (i) Note

Note the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place – not in your vehicle. If you need a replacement adapter, give the code number to your Audi dealer.

#### Loosening wheel bolts



Fig. 186 Wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

- Fit the box spanner\* (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) as far as it will go over the wheel bolt<sup>1)</sup>.
- ► Turn the wheel bolt approx. one turn anti-clock-wise. To apply the necessary torque, hold the box spanner\* near the end. If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner\* carefully with your foot. Hold on to the car for support and take care not to slip.

### ↑ WARNING

To avoid accidents, the wheel bolts should only be loosened slightly (one turn) before raising the vehicle with the jack\*.

#### Raising the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with jack



Fig. 187 Sills: markings

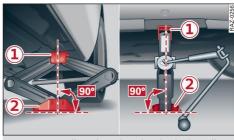


Fig. 188 Door sill: Applying the jack under the door sill

Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground (the jack can be found in the vehicle's tool kit). If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support. On a hard, slippery surface

An adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts\* \(\phi\) page 296.

- Locate the marking on the door sill closest to the wheel being changed ⇒ Fig. 187. The jacking point is located behind the marking on the door sill.
- ► Turn the knob to wind up the jack underneath the jacking point on the door sill until the claw of the jack ① completely surrounds the seam on your vehicle.
- ▶ Align the jack so that its claw ① fits around the seam and the base plate of the jack ② is flat on the ground. The base plate ② must be positioned vertically underneath the jacking point ①.
- Now fit the crank handle onto the jack by inserting it in the opening on the knob. Turn the crank handle clockwise or anti-clockwise to secure it in place.
- ► Raise the vehicle by winding the crank handle until the defective wheel is clear of the ground.

# **WARNING**

- Ensure that no one is in the vehicle before you lift it - risk of injury!
- Make sure the jack is stable. If the ground underneath the jack is slippery or soft, the jack can slip or sink in - risk of injury!
- Use only the jack supplied with your vehicle to raise the vehicle. If you use a jack from a different vehicle, your vehicle may slip off the jack - risk of injury!
- Apply the jack only at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill and align it properly. Otherwise there is a risk of injury since the jack can slip off suddenly if it is not properly engaged.
- Do not use the jack provided with the vehicle to lift any other vehicles or loads - risk of injury!
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is on the jack - risk of accident!
- Do not work under the vehicle when it is on the jack - risk of injury!

# 1 CAUTION

The vehicle must not be lifted up on its sills.
Only apply the jack at the jacking points loca-

ted behind the markings on the door sill. Otherwise your vehicle could be damaged.

### Taking off / putting on the wheel



Fig. 189 Wheel: Hexagonal socket for turning wheel bolts



**Fig. 190** Wheel: Mounting pin in wheel bolt hole nearest to the top

#### Taking off the wheel

- ► Using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle (provided in the vehicle's tool kit), unscrew the top wheel bolt and place it on a clean surface ⇒ Fig. 189.
- ➤ Screw in the mounting pin (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) by hand in place of the wheel bolt ⇒ Fig. 190.
- ▶ Then unscrew the other wheel bolts.
- ► Take off the wheel ⇒ !. The mounting pin stays where it is.

#### Putting on the wheel

When putting on a tyre with directional tread pattern, refer to ⇒ page 298.

- ▶ Put on the wheel, using the mounting pin to guide it into place 

  !.
- ► Screw in the wheel bolts and tighten them lightly using the hexagonal socket.
- ► Then unscrew the mounting pin and tighten the remaining wheel bolt lightly.

- ► Carefully lower the car with the jack\*.
- ▶ Tighten the wheel bolts in diagonal sequence with the box spanner\*.

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily. Before putting on the wheel, inspect the condition of the wheel and hub mounting surfaces. These surfaces must be clean before mounting the wheel.



#### WARNING

- Please observe the important safety information and notes on  $\Rightarrow$  page 279.
- Never use the hexagon socket in the screwdriver handle or the hexagon socket with the ratchet handle to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts. It is not possible to tighten the bolts with the required torque - risk of accident!



#### CAUTION

When removing/fitting the wheel the rim may hit and damage the brake disc. For this reason, please take care and get a second person to assist you.

#### Tyres with directional tread pattern

A directional tread pattern can be identified by arrows on the sidewall that point in the direction of rotation. Always note the direction of rotation indicated when mounting the wheel. This is important so that these tyres can give maximum grip and avoid excessive noise, tread wear and aquaplaning.

To benefit from the advantages of tyres with this type of tread pattern, the defective tyre should be replaced and refitted as soon as possible so that all tyres again rotate in the correct direction.

#### After changing a wheel

- ▶ Fit the hubcap or wheel bolt caps back on, as required.
- ▶ Put the tools and jack back in the luggage compartment.

- ▶ If the replaced wheel will not fit into the spare wheel well, stow it safely in the luggage compartment ⇒ page 84.
- ► Check the tyre pressure of the fitted wheel as soon as possible.
- ► Adjust the tyre pressure and store it on the MMI ⇒ page 284.
- ▶ The wheel bolts should be tightened to 140 Nm. Have this checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Until then, drive with caution.
- ► Have the flat tyre replaced as quickly as possible.

# Compact temporary spare wheel

Applies to: vehicles with compact temporary spare wheel

The compact temporary spare wheel is only intended for temporary use over short distances. After use, have it checked as soon as possible by a qualified workshop and, if necessary, replaced.

Please note the following restrictions when using the compact temporary spare wheel. The compact temporary spare wheel is designed specifically for this model. For this reason, do not use a spare wheel from a different type of vehicle.

The compact temporary spare wheel is stowed under the floor panel in the luggage compartment ⇒ page 293.

The tyre pressure must be adjusted to the value listed on the tyre pressure sticker  $\Rightarrow$  page 281, Fig. 177.

#### Snow chains

For technical reasons, snow chains must not be used on the compact temporary spare wheel.

Should you have a puncture on one of the front wheels when using snow chains, fit the compact temporary spare wheel in place of one of the rear wheels. You can then attach the snow chains to the wheel taken from the rear and use this wheel to replace the punctured front wheel.

#### WARNING

- The tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible after fitting the spare wheel - an incorrectly inflated tyre can increase the risk of accident.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h when the compact temporary spare wheel is fitted higher speeds can cause an accident.
- Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering when the temporary spare wheel is fitted - risk of accident!
- Never use two or more compact spare tyres at the same time - risk of accident!
- No other type of tyre (normal summer or winter tyres) may be fitted on the compact temporary spare wheel.

#### (1) CAUTION

Secure the compact temporary spare wheel in the spare wheel well with the plastic knob to prevent damage to other parts.

# Jump-starting

#### Preparations

You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required to perform the work correctly.

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged battery, you can use another vehicle to start the engine. Suitable jump leads are reauired.

Both vehicle batteries must be rated at 12 Volts. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be significantly lower than that of the discharged battery.

#### Jump leads

The jump leads must be heavy enough to carry the starter current. Refer to the details given by the manufacturer.

Only use jump leads with insulated battery clamps.

Positive cable - usually red.

Negative cable - usually black.

#### WARNING

- When it is discharged the vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°C. A frozen vehicle battery must first be thawed out before connecting the jump leads - risk of explosion and chemical burns! After jump-starting the vehicle, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the vehicle battery checked.
- Note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment  $\Rightarrow$  page 265.
- Incorrect handling of the jump leads may result in the vehicle battery exploding (risk of serious injury).
- Applies to vehicles with battery in engine compartment: Do not lean over the vehicle battery - risk of chemical burns!

# $(\mathbf{I})$

### **CAUTION**

- If the jump leads are not connected correctly this can result in serious damage to the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Plug-in hybrid drive: Do **not** use your vehicle to jump-start another vehicle. This would cause serious damage to your vehicle's electrical system.

# (i)

#### Note

- There must be no contact between the two vehicles as otherwise current could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected. This would discharge the boosting bat-
- The discharged vehicle battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Switch off any electrical equipment you do not need.

#### Jump-starting the vehicle

The two jump leads must be connected in the correct sequence.

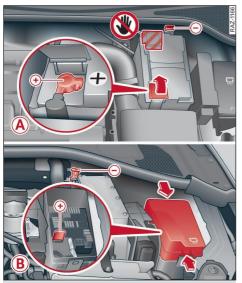


Fig. 191 Engine compartment: Terminals for battery charger or jump leads: (a) vehicles with battery in engine compartment, (a) vehicles with jump-start terminal (+) in engine compartment

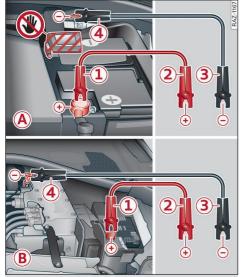


Fig. 192 Engine compartment: Terminals for battery charger or jump leads: (A) vehicles with battery in engine

compartment, (B) vehicles with jump-start terminal (+) in engine compartment

The battery is located in the engine compartment or luggage compartment (depending on the type of engine). Vehicles which have a battery in the luggage compartment have a jump-start connection • in the engine compartment. The earth point • is always on the vehicle's body.

Please observe the general notes on the vehicle battery ⇒ page 275.

# Connecting the positive terminals with the positive lead (red)

- ➤ Applies to vehicles with battery in engine compartment: Open the cap on the positive terminal ⇒ Fig. 191.
- Applies to vehicles with jump-start terminal (+): Press the two tabs on the fuse box in the direction indicated by the arrows and remove the cover ⇒ Fig. 191.
- Connect one end of the positive lead (red) to the positive terminal ① on your vehicle battery or to the jump-start terminal ①
   ⇒ Fig. 192 on your vehicle.
- Connect the other end of the positive lead (red) to the positive terminal ② on the power source.

# Connecting the negative terminals with the negative lead (black)

- Connect one end of the negative lead (black) to the negative terminal (3) on the power source.
- 4. Connect the other end of the negative lead (black) to the earth point 4 on your vehicle.

#### Starting the engine

- ► Start the engine of the vehicle providing the electricity and let it run at idling speed.
- ► Now start the engine of your vehicle with the discharged battery.
- ► If the engine fails to start: do not operate the starter for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and try again.
- Switch on the rear window heating on your vehicle (this will dissipate any voltage peaks which may occur when you disconnect the jump leads). The headlights must be switched off.

- With the engines running, disconnect the leads in the opposite sequence to how they were connected.
- ▶ Close the cap on the positive terminal.

# $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

- Applies to vehicles with jump-start terminals in engine compartment: Jump leads must never be connected directly to the battery on your vehicle. Always use the terminals in the engine compartment.
- The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle: this can cause short circuits.
- The sealing caps on the battery cells must not be opened.
- Keep sparks, flames and lit cigarettes away from vehicle batteries: the gases given off can cause an explosion.
- Position the jump leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment of the other vehicle.

# 1

#### CAUTION

- Applies to vehicles with battery in luggage compartment: Do not use the negative battery terminal when jump-starting as this could cause a malfunction in the on-board electrical system.
- Please note that the above method of connecting the leads is intended for jump-starting your vehicle.



#### Note

Connect the jump leads so they have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

# **Towing away**

#### **General notes**

You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required to perform the work correctly.

Towing requires some experience. Audi recommends contacting a towing service to have the vehicle taken away.

You should only have your broken-down vehicle towed away by another vehicle in exceptional circumstances. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow another vehicle.

#### Notes on towing vehicles

When the engine is not running, the gearbox will not be adequately lubricated if the following speed/distance restrictions are not observed:

- The vehicle must not be towed faster than 50 km/h.
- The vehicle must not be towed further than
   50 km.

# Additional notes on towing by breakdown truck

If one of the axles has to be raised in order to tow the vehicle, please refer to the following table to determine the appropriate axle for your gearbox/ drive combination. Do not wrap any kind of chain or rope around the brake lines.

	Front-wheel drive	Four-wheel drive
Manual gearbox	Front or rear axle	Front or rear axle
Automatic gearbox	Front axle	Front axle

Four-wheel drive: If the vehicle is to be towed with one of the axles raised, the ignition must be switched off; otherwise the drive train can be damaged.

#### Tow-bar / tow-rope

The vehicle can be towed with a tow-bar or towrope. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing, particularly if a tow-rope is used.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking the tow-rope. When towing off-road, there is always a risk that the anchorage points may be overloaded.

It is easier and safer to tow the vehicle with a tow-bar. You should only use a tow-rope if you do not have a tow-bar. It is advisable to use a towrope made of elastic synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

#### Notes on tow-starting

Automatic gearbox: For technical reasons, your vehicle must not be tow-started.

Manual gearbox: As a general rule, tow-starting is not recommended. If the engine will not start, it is best to try starting it using the battery of another vehicle ⇒ page 299 before attempting to tow start. If this is not possible, you can try to push-start or tow-start the vehicle ⇒ page 303, Tow-starting.

#### WARNING

- There is a high risk of accidents when towing, as the towed vehicle can easily be driven into the towing vehicle.
- There must not be anyone in the vehicle if it vehicle is taken away by a breakdown truck or a special car transporter - risk of accident!

#### CAUTION

- If it is not possible to tow the vehicle as described above (e.g. due to a gearbox failure or if the vehicle has to be towed further than 50 km), it must be transported on a special car transporter or trailer.
- Towing a vehicle with the wrong axle raised can cause serious damage to the gearbox.

# (i)

#### Note

– Switch Audi pre sense\* off ⇒ page 176 if the vehicle is being loaded onto a car transporter, train or ferry, etc. or being towed away. This prevents the pre sense\* system from taking action in an inappropriate situation.

- Please observe the relevant local regulations when towing away.

## **Towing away**

Please observe the important safety warnings on ⇒ page 301.

#### **Preparations**

- ► Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing anchorages provided for this purpose ⇒ page 303, ⇒ page 303.
- ▶ Please ensure that the tow-rope is not twisted as it could otherwise unscrew the towline anchorage while the vehicle is being towed.
- ▶ The hazard warning lights of both vehicles must normally be switched on ⇒ page 57. However, observe any regulations to the contrary.

#### Towing vehicle (front)

- ► Ensure that the tow-rope is taut before you
- ► Manual gearbox: Engage the clutch very slowly when starting to move.
- ► Accelerate with particular care.
- ▶ Avoid unnecessary braking and manoeuvres.

#### Vehicle being towed (rear)

- ▶ Ensure that the ignition is switched on, the steering wheel is not locked, and that you can operate the turn signals, horn or windscreen wipers if necessary  $\Rightarrow \Lambda$ .
- ▶ Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would.
- ▶ Release the parking brake ⇒ page 112.
- ► Manual gearbox: Put the gear lever in neutral.
- ► Automatic gearbox: Select transmission position N.
- ► Ensure that the tow-rope remains taut at all times when towing.



#### WARNING

- If the vehicle has no electrical power, do NOT use a tow-bar or tow-rope to tow the vehicle.

If the power supply should fail while the vehicle is being towed, stop towing immediately and seek professional assistance.

#### Tow-starting

Applies to: vehicles with manual gearbox

Please observe the important safety warnings on ⇒ page 301.

Important: Your vehicle must be fitted with a manual gearbox. If your vehicle has a petrol engine, it must not be towed further than 50 metres  $\Rightarrow$  ①.

- Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing anchorage provided for this purpose
   ⇒ page 303.
- ▶ Engage second or third gear before moving off.
- ▶ Press the clutch and hold the pedal down.
- ► Switch on the ignition.
- ► Once both vehicles are moving, release the clutch.
- ► As soon as the engine starts, press the clutch pedal and put the gear lever in neutral.

#### **CAUTION**

When tow-starting the vehicle, do not tow it further than 50 metres; otherwise the catalytic converter could be damaged.

### Front towline anchorage

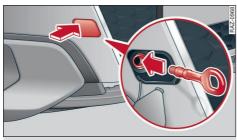


Fig. 193 Front bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage

The screw connection for the towline anchorage is located on the right side of the front bumper.

► Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle's tool kit ⇒ page 293.

- ► Firmly press the cap inwards briefly ⇒ Fig. 193. The cap will be released from the bumper.
- ► Screw the towline anchorage as tightly as possible into the mounting. To do so, use a suitable tool that enables the towline anchorage to be screwed tightly all the way into the mounting.
- ► Put the towline anchorage back in the tool kit after use.

## $\Lambda$

#### WARNING

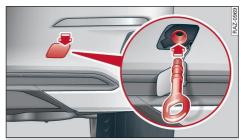
If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing - risk of accident!



#### Note

On some models, the shape of the cap can vary.

#### Rear towline anchorage



**Fig. 194** Rear bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage (version 1)



**Fig. 195** Rear bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage (version 2)

The screw connection for the towline anchorage is located on the right side of the rear bumper.

#### Mobility

- ► Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle's tool kit ⇒ page 293.
- ► Firmly press the cap inwards
  ⇒ Fig. 194/⇒ Fig. 195. The cap will be released from the bumper.
- Screw the towline anchorage as tightly as possible into the mounting. To do so, use a suitable tool that enables the towline anchorage to be screwed tightly all the way into the mounting.
- ► Put the towline anchorage back in the tool kit after use.



#### WARNING

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing - risk of accident!



#### Note

On some models, the shape of the cap can vary.

#### Fuses and bulbs

#### **Fuses**

#### Changing fuses

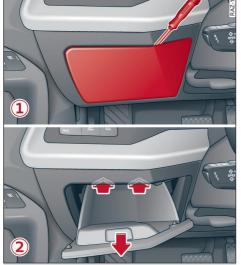


Fig. 196 Area around steering column (LHD vehicle): Cover ①, storage compartment\* ②

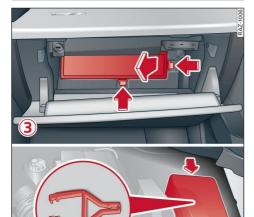


Fig. 197 Glove box (RHD vehicle): Cover 3. Engine compartment (left side): Cover 4

To see whether a fuse has blown, check whether the metal strip has melted.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the fuses are located behind a cover ① or behind the storage compartment ② in the steering column area (on LHD vehicles) or behind a cover in the glove box (on RHD vehicles) ③. Further fuses are located beneath a cover in the engine compartment (left side) ④.

- Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- ► Refer to the following tables to identify the fuse for the failed component.
- ► Take the screwdriver out of the vehicle tool kit if required ⇒ page 293.
- ▶ Remove the appropriate cover.
- ► Take the clip out of the fuse carrier in the engine compartment 4.
- ▶ Use the clip to pull out the fuse.
- Blown fuses should always be replaced with a fuse of the same ampere rating.
- ▶ Put the cover back on.

#### Colour coding for fuses

Colour	Rating in amperes
black	1
purple	3
light brown	5
brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white or transparent	25
green	30
orange	40

## **MARNING**

Never attempt to repair a fuse or replace a blown fuse by fitting a fuse with a higher ampere rating. This could damage the electrical system – risk of fire!

4

# (<u>1</u>) c

#### **CAUTION**

If a newly replaced fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system must be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

# (i)

#### Note

- Free fuse locations are not shown in the tables below.
- Some of the items of equipment listed in the tables below are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.

#### Fuses in vehicle interior

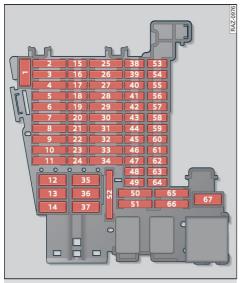


Fig. 198 Interior: Fuse layout

No.	Electrical equipment
3	Towing bracket
4	Drive components, emission control
5	Selector lever for automatic gearbox
6	Control unit for vehicle electrical system
7	Seat heating controls, control unit for vehicle electrical system
8	Panorama sun roof
9	Door control unit (front left), window regulator (rear left)

No.	Electrical equipment
11	Towing bracket
12	Control unit for vehicle electrical system
13	Control unit for vehicle electrical system
14	Sound system
16	Airbag control unit
17	Emission control
Steering column lock, control unit for	
18	venience access and start authorisation
19	Instrument cluster, emergency call mod-
	ule
20	Infotainment system, USB input
2.1	Control unit for driver assist systems, con-
21	trol unit for roof electronics, camera systems, side assist, boot lid
24	Control unit for four-wheel drive
25	Belt tensioners (driver's side)
	Door control unit (front right), window
26	regulator (rear right)
27	Belt tensioners (front passenger's side)
	Emergency cut-out connection for high-
28	voltage battery
29	Towing bracket
30	Infotainment system
31	Towing bracket
35	Control unit for vehicle electrical system
36	Air conditioner blowers
37	Boot lid control unit
39	Steering column electronics
40	Anti-theft alarm system
41	Diagnostic interface
42	Selector lever for automatic gearbox
	Tyre pressure loss indicator, A/C control
43	console, auxiliary heating, interior temper-
	ature sensor, rear window heating
	Particulate sensor, control unit for roof electronics, parking brake button, anti-
	theft alarm system, diagnostic connection,
44	headlight range control, control unit for
	garage door opener, panorama sun roof,
	light switch, light sensor/rain sensor
45	Steering column electronics

No.	Floatrical aguinment
NO.	Electrical equipment
46	Volume control, centre display, head-up
	display
47	Suspension control
48	USB connection
52	12 Volt socket
58	Control unit for driver assist systems, front
50	camera, parking aid
	Air conditioner, external sound, interior
59	mirror, switch for reversing lights, centre
33	console switch module, air quality sensor,
	12 Volt socket
60	Diagnostic connection
61	Clutch position sender, electric drive sys-
01	tem, high-voltage battery
64	Seat occupied recognition (driver side),
04	front passenger airbag off indicator lamp
65	External sound
66	Rear window wiper
67	Rear window heating

# Fuses in engine compartment

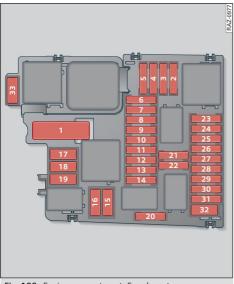


Fig. 199 Engine compartment: Fuse layout

No.	Electrical equipment		
2	Engine control unit, electronic stabilisation control (ESC), anti-lock brake system (ABS)		
3	Engine components, fuel pump, air conditioner, high-voltage charger, electric drive system		
4	Left headlight		
5	Right headlight		
7	Gear oil cooler		
8	Brake servo		
9	Horn		
10	Wipers		
11	Air conditioner		
12	Gearbox		
13	Electronic stabilisation control (ESC), anti- lock brake system (ABS)		
14	Auxiliary heating		
15	Electronic stabilisation control (ESC), anti- lock brake system (ABS)		
16	Automatic gearbox		
17	Emission control, air conditioning, supplementary heater		
18	Air conditioning, supplementary heater		
21	Engine control unit		
22	Engine start		
23	Engine control unit		
24	Engine components, diesel module, emission control, fuel leak diagnostics, oil level and oil temperature sensor, engine cooling		
25	Engine components, emission control system		
26	Engine components, exhaust flaps, fuel leak diagnostics, engine cooling		
27	Oxygen sensors		
28	Engine components		
29	Fuel pump		
30	Engine cooling		
33	Air conditioning, supplementary heater		

### **Bulbs**

#### **General information**

LED lights are maintenance-free and cannot be changed. For repairs, please contact a qualified workshop.

Changing bulbs requires a certain degree of practical skill.

If you decide to change bulbs in the engine compartment yourself, be aware of the safety risks involved  $\Rightarrow \triangle$  in General information on page 265.



#### WARNING

- Take particular care when working on components in the engine compartment if the engine is warm risk of burns!
- Bulbs are sensitive to pressure. The glass can break when you touch the bulb, causing injury.
- When changing bulbs, please take care not to injure yourself on sharp edges, in particular on the headlight housing.

# (!)

#### CAUTION

- Always switch off the ignition before carrying out any work on the electrical system – danger of short circuiting!
- Switch off the lights or parking lights before you change a bulb.
- Take good care when changing bulbs to avoid damaging any components.
- Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with your bare hands; use a cloth or paper towel instead. Otherwise, the fingerprints left on the glass will vaporise as a result of the heat generated by the bulb, be deposited on the reflector and impair its surface.
- Removing the rear light in particular can lead to the paintwork or rear light becoming damaged. This is another reason why Audi recommends having the bulbs changed by a qualified workshop.
- Never use metal tools (e.g. a screwdriver) or sharp or pointed plastic tools to lever out the rear light - this can damage the paint!

- Make sure you have a soft cloth ready to place under the glass on the rear light, to avoid any scratches.
- Make sure that the covers are correctly seated on the headlights and the rear lights.
   This will ensure that water cannot enter the housings and cause the lights to malfunction.

#### For the sake of the environment

A qualified workshop can advise you how to dispose of used bulbs in the proper manner.



#### Note

- Please check at regular intervals that all lighting (especially the exterior lighting) on your vehicle is functioning properly. This is not only in the interest of your own safety, but also in that of all other road users.
- Before changing a bulb, make sure you have the correct new bulb.

#### Bulbs at front of vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with LED headlights and turn signals with bulbs



Fig. 200 Headlight: Turn signal

You must only replace a bulb with a bulb of the same type. Information regarding e.g. the wattage can be found on the bulb.

The description for changing the bulb refers to the left headlight; the procedure for the right headlight is similar.

The following bulb can be changed, depending on the vehicle's equipment:

Bulb (12 V)	Version
1 Turn signal	PWY24W

#### Bulbs at rear of vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with bulbs

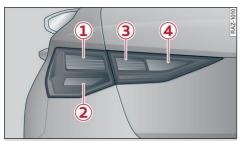


Fig. 201 Rear lights: Overview of bulbs

You must only replace a bulb with a bulb of the same type. Information regarding e.g. the wattage can be found on the bulb.

The description for changing the bulb refers to the left rear light unit; the procedure for the right rear light unit is similar.

The following bulbs can be changed, depending on the vehicle's equipment:

Bulb (12 V)	Version
1 Brake light/tail light	P21W LL
2 Turn signal	PY21W
3 Tail light	W5W
4 Reversing light/rear fog light <sup>a)</sup>	H21W

a) On right or left, depending on country

# Changing turn signal bulb in headlight

#### Removing/fitting cover

Applies to: vehicles with LED headlights and turn signals with bulbs  $% \left( \frac{1}{2}\right) =\frac{1}{2}\left( \frac{1}{2}\right) =\frac{1}{2$ 



Fig. 202 Headlight: Cover for turn signal

- ► Switch off the ignition and the lights.
- ▶ Open the bonnet  $\Rightarrow$   $\bigwedge$  in General information on page 308.
- Turn the headlight cover anti-clockwise and remove it.
- ► Change the bulb for the turn signal ⇒ page 309.
- ▶ Put the cover back on.
- ► Check whether the new bulb is working.

#### Changing bulb for turn signals

Applies to: vehicles with LED headlights and turn signals with bulbs  $% \left( \frac{1}{2}\right) =\frac{1}{2}\left( \frac{1}{2}\right) =\frac{1}{2$ 



Fig. 203 Headlight: Plastic connector for turn signal

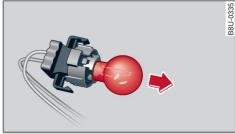


Fig. 204 Headlight: Bulb holder for turn signal

#### Removing

- ► Pull the connector together with the bulb out of the headlight housing ⇒ Fig. 203.
- ► Pull the defective bulb out of the holder 

  ∴ in General information on page 308.

#### Installing

- ► Push the new bulb into the holder so that it is securely seated ⇒ in General information on page 308.
- Guide the connector with the bulb into the housing.

► Fit the connector with the bulb into the housing and press it in until the side catches engage.

# Changing bulbs for rear lights

# Preparing to remove the light unit from the body panel

Applies to: vehicles with bulbs



Fig. 205 Side panel: Preparations

- ► Check which of the bulbs is defective.
- ► Switch off the ignition and the lights.
- ▶ Open the boot lid.
- ► Take the screwdriver, the interchangeable Torx bit and the removal wedge out of the vehicle tool kit ⇒ page 293.
- ► Remove the cover by pressing it forwards 1 and then to the side 2.
- ▶ Remove the two bolts ③ using the Torx bit.
- ▶ Remove the rear light (4) ⇒ page 310.

# Removing and installing rear lights (side panel)

Applies to: vehicles with bulbs

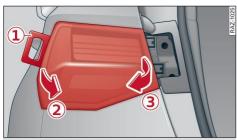


Fig. 206 Side panel: Removing rear light

Carefully slide the removal wedge ① into the gap between the body and rear light ⇒ ① in General information on page 308.

- ► Lever the rear light out of the slot in the side panel ② using the removal wedge ①.
- ► Swivel the rear light slightly outwards ③ when levering it out.
- ► Gradually ease out the rear light by pulling alternately in direction of arrows (2) and (3).
- ▶ Unplug the electrical connector.
- ► Change the defective bulb ⇒ page 310.
- ► Re-install all the parts in the reverse sequence ⇒ ① in General information on page 308.
- ► Check whether the new bulb is working.

#### Changing the bulbs (side panel)

Applies to: vehicles with bulbs

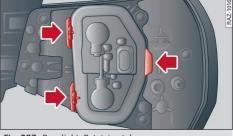


Fig. 207 Rear light: Retaining tabs

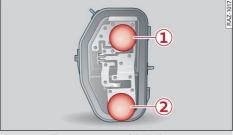


Fig. 208 Bulb carrier: Position of the bulbs

#### Removing

- ► Press the retaining tabs in the direction of the arrows ⇒ Fig. 207.
- ➤ Detach the bulb carrier from the housing ⇒ Fig. 208.

#### Installing

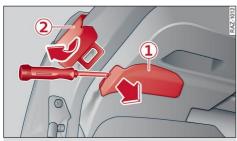
- ► Turn the new bulb to secure it in the bayonet holder ⇒ in General information on page 308.
- ► Attach the bulb carrier to the housing. The retaining tabs should click into place audibly.

#### Position of bulbs

Position	Bulb function		
1	Brake light / tail light		
2	Turn signal		

# Preparing to remove the light unit from the boot lid

Applies to: vehicles with bulbs



Applies to: Sportback

Fig. 209 Luggage compartment: Removing covers



Applies to: Saloon

Fig. 210 Luggage compartment: Opening/removing covers

- ► Check which of the bulbs is defective.
- ► Switch off the ignition and the lights.
- ▶ Open the boot lid.
- ► Take the screwdriver and the removal wedge out of the vehicle tool kit ⇒ page 293.
- ► Applies to Sportback: Prise off cover ① by levering the screwdriver carefully upwards ⇒ Fig. 209.

- Remove cover ② by pulling it in the direction of the arrow and releasing it from the fastener.
   Use the removal wedge if necessary ⇒ ① in General information on page 308.
- ► Applies to Saloon: To open cover ③, release it carefully using the screwdriver as a lever and then swivel it out in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 210.
- Remove cover (4) by pulling it in the direction of the arrow and releasing it from the fastener.
   Use the removal wedge if necessary ⇒ (1) in General information on page 308.
- ▶ Remove the rear light ⇒ page 311.

# Removing and installing rear lights (boot lid)

Applies to: vehicles with bulbs

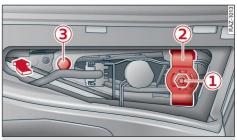


Fig. 211 Rear light: Fasteners

Commercially available tools, such as a ratchet and socket, are required in order to remove/install the rear lights. These should be placed within reach before starting the work.

- ▶ Unplug the electrical connector.
- ► Loosen the nut ① on the fastener ② until you can remove it completely.
- ► Loosen the bolt (3).
- ► Swivel the rear light outwards and unhook it at the side in the direction of the arrow.
- ► Change the defective bulb ⇒ page 312.
- ► Attach the fastener ②.
- ► Re-install all the parts in the reverse sequence ⇒ ① in General information on page 308.
- ► Check whether the new bulb is working.



The fastener is correctly seated if the nut engages audibly when tightened.

## Changing the bulbs (boot lid)

Applies to: vehicles with bulbs

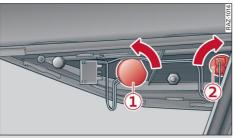


Fig. 212 Rear light: Position of bulbs

#### Removing

- ➤ Turn the bulb holder with the bulb in the direction of the corresponding arrow so that it is released from its seat.
- ► Pull the bulb holder with the bulb out of the housing.
- ► Turn the defective bulb to remove it from the bayonet holder ① or pull it out of the plug-in holder ② ⇒ ⚠ in General information on page 308.

#### Installing

- ► Guide the bulb holder with the bulb into the housing.
- ► Turn the bulb holder with the bulb into the fastener until it is seated securely.

Position	Bulb function		
1	Reversing light/rear fog light		
2	Tail light		

# Data protection

# Information on data protection

Information on who is responsible for data protection can be found on the MMI.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select: SET-TINGS > General > Legal information > About Audi connect.

# Image recording

#### Monitoring of surroundings

Applies to: vehicles with monitoring of surroundings

Certain vehicle functions require the detection and evaluation of the path travelled by the vehicle. For this purpose, permanently installed cameras detect objects in the area in which the vehicle is moving (e.g. obstacles, barriers). The live images from the cameras are transmitted to the relevant control unit to do this.

The images from the camera are not recorded or stored. They are immediately transmitted to the relevant control unit in the vehicle for processing. The control unit analyses the current image from the camera using image evaluation software. This image evaluation software determines anonymous technical dimensions, such as the distance to objects. This control unit evaluates these technical dimensions and may allow the supporting systems to control the vehicle.



#### Note

The live images from the cameras and the anonymous technical dimensions are stored for a few seconds in the short-term memory. They do not allow any conclusions to be drawn on the identity of persons or vehicles.

## Data recorders

#### Vehicle control units

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic control units for various vehicle systems such as the airbags. During normal driving, these vehicle control units store data which workshops require for diagnosis and repairs. This involves only certain data which are collected or stored for a very limited time when a control unit registers a system event. No sounds, conversations or images from the vehicle are stored.

The data may be related e.g. to the vehicle's speed, direction of travel and brake system, or to the behaviour of the restraint systems in the event of an accident. Reading out and downloading the stored data requires special devices that must be connected directly to the vehicle.

#### On-board diagnostic system (OBD)

There is a diagnostic connection for reading out various control units and the event memory located in the driver's footwell. Information regarding the operation and status of the vehicle's electronic control units is stored in the event memory. The event memory should only be read out and erased by a qualified workshop.

#### WARNING

- Improper use of the connection socket for the on-board diagnostic system can lead to malfunctions which could result in accidents and serious injuries.
- Only have the engine data read out by a qualified workshop.

#### Event data recorder

#### Event data recorder

Your vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR), the main purpose of which is to make it possible to reconstruct the behaviour of the vehicle systems in an accident situation. To this end, the EDR stores relevant data (e.g. seat belt status, speed, airbag parameters, time of accident etc.) pertaining to a period of a few seconds before an accident. This only occurs in accident or near-accident situations.

These data can help to better understand the circumstances in which accidents and injury occur. Please note that data from your vehicle will only be stored in the event of an accident or a near-accident situation. No data are stored in normal driving conditions. Furthermore, no personal

#### Data protection

data on the occupants or the accident location are stored. It is possible, however, that third parties, e.g. law enforcement agencies, may correlate the stored data with personal data as part of an accident investigation.

Reading out data from the EDR memory requires special devices and access to the vehicle or the EDR. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement agencies can also read out and analyse the stored data, provided that they have access to the vehicle or the EDR. Audi will not access the recorder remotely.

### Assist system monitor

This vehicle is equipped with an assist system monitor (ASM) which collects data not stored by the EDR in the event of an accident. The main purpose of the ASM is to make it possible to reconstruct the role and behaviour of driver assist systems in accident situations. In addition to the data stored by the EDR, the ASM stores data related to the driver assist systems from a period of a few seconds before an accident or near-accident situation. The data recorded by the ASM will depend on the vehicle's equipment and may comprise information such as: status information from the driver assist systems (e.g. switched on/ off, system events etc.), regulating input (e.g. from ESC, ABS, Audi pre sense\* etc.) and driver assist system settings (e.g. speed settings).

Reading out data from the ASM memory requires special devices and access to the vehicle or the ASM. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement agencies can also read out and analyse the stored data, provided that they have access to the vehicle or the ASM.

#### Use of data

Audi can read out or provide third parties with the information stored in the data recorders or other similar data in the following circumstances in particular:

- If the vehicle keeper or lessee gives their permission; or
- If the police have made an official request; or

If ordered to do so by a court of law or government agency.

Audi may, insofar as this is legally permitted, also use the data for analysis with respect to vehicle operation and safety performance, or may provide the data to third parties for research purposes.

### Information transmitted

#### Data collection

Applies to: vehicles with data collection

Depending on the country, Audi may collect data for the following purposes: optimisation of products and offers, public safety, provision of Audi connect vehicle control services and adjustments in line with customer expectations. The data collected and sent to Audi for these purposes may include, for example, various data regarding technical functions, environmental data, driving data and usage data. The data are sent from the vehicle at the time they are collected.

Applies to MMI: Please refer to the MMI for further information on data collection. On the home screen, select SETTINGS > General > Legal information > About Audi connect.

If you wish to opt out of data transfer to Audi, please contact an Audi dealer for further information. You can also switch off data transfer in the privacy settings.

#### Privacy settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Privacy**.

Data are transmitted out of the vehicle when Audi connect services are used or data are being collected.

► Further information on the privacy settings and the corresponding symbols can be displayed in the status bar by pressing ① on the MMI.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

#### Maximum privacy setting

When the Activate privacy function is switched on, the data connection will be deactivated or the transmission of data restricted, because all safety-related Audi connect services and all Audi connect services required by law or contract will remain activated. The majority of Audi connect services will be deactivated.

When this function is switched off, the data connection will be available for the use of Audi connect services.

#### Individual privacy settings

You can use individual MMI settings to determine which data are transmitted from the vehicle. Data will be transmitted if you switch on a data category.

You can also deactivate individual services for your vehicle at my.audi.com when you are logged in to the vehicle as the key user ⇒ page 34. These deactivated services will not be available in the vehicle. For more information, please refer to my. audi.com.

#### (1) CAUTION

Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used to connect to the Internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot.

# i) Note

- The following interfaces are not affected by changes to the privacy settings: Bluetooth, Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), Wi-Fi, Audi Smartphone Interface (ASI), Near Field Communication (NFC), charging communication (high-voltage system), Electronic Toll Collect (ETC) and on-board diagnostic system (OBD).
- When maximum privacy is switched on, your vehicle will not receive safety updates or certificates for establishing an encrypted connection, depending on the vehicle equipment. To receive safety updates and certificates, switch maximum privacy off for at least ten minutes every six months. Ensure

- that your vehicle is connected to the Internet. A symbol in the status bar of the MMI indicates whether the necessary data connection exists  $\Rightarrow$  page 26.
- If data transmission is restricted, this has the following effects on the data transmitted by the Audi connect services and the emergency call function, if fitted.
  - The emergency call function remains available in its entirety and data will still be transmitted.
  - No data will be transmitted if an online roadside assistance call is activated; however a telephone call will be placed.
  - The Audi connect key remains available with complete functionality.
  - If the geofencing alert, speed alert and valet alert services have been activated by the key user, these remain available without restrictions and data continue to be transmitted.
  - Stored destinations (favourites, last destinations, etc.) will only be stored in the vehicle. If you allow data transmission again, these destinations will be synchronised with your myAudi account. If you do not want these destinations to be synchronised, delete them before you allow data transmission again.

#### Audi connect

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Audi collects, processes, transmits and uses the personal data you provide in accordance with legal requirements to ensure that the individual Audi connect infotainment services are provided and function properly. You can use our myAudi platform, for example, to activate further Audi connect infotainment services and to transfer data to and from your vehicle. You must register once in order to be able to connect your vehicle to the platform. Audi collects, processes, transmits and uses the personal data you must provide for the registration as is necessary to ensure that Audi can provide the services and that you can use them. Using the myAudi platform and your mobile phone, you can transmit data to your

#### Data protection

vehicle for the functions of your Audi connect infotainment services and allow certain vehicle data to be transmitted from your vehicle.

If you activate certain information services included in your Audi connect infotainment portfolio, you can use the corresponding functions directly in your vehicle after entering your personal identification data (for example for access to social networks). In this case Audi passes on your identification data to the corresponding service provider. You can then access your personal content via a secure communication channel. This content is displayed and can be used in the vehicle. Audi will not store your personal content. The necessary connection data are processed and used in accordance with legal requirements to ensure that the services are provided and function properly.

Further information can be found on the MMI and on the Internet at your regional Audi site, which can be reached via www.audi.com.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select:
 SETTINGS > General > Legal information >
 About Audi connect

## Accessories and modifications to the vehicle

# Maintenance, repairs and technical changes

Please read the safety information  $\Rightarrow$  page 265, General information and ⇒ page 296, Raising the vehicle.

#### General notes

The increasing complexity of vehicle technology and the applicable safety and environmental regulations mean that your options for performing repairs and making adjustments to your vehicle yourself are very limited.

Proof of servicing may be a condition for a claim within the quarantee/warranty period to remain valid.

Have work on your vehicle performed by a qualified workshop. This will help ensure that the functions, performance and safety of your vehicle are not impaired.

#### Maintenance and repairs

Your vehicle was designed to require as little maintenance as possible. However, a certain amount of regular maintenance work is necessary to ensure that your vehicle remains safe, costefficient and reliable. Please contact a qualified workshop for precise information on vehicle maintenance.

Certain maintenance work should also be performed between the specified intervals in severe operating conditions, such as extremely low temperatures or in areas with a high dust concentration.

Special tools, measurement instruments and other workshop equipment available to qualified workshop staff are usually required for maintenance work or repairs. These guarantee that your vehicle and all its systems will function properly and be both reliable and safe. If work is not performed correctly, this may affect the operation and reliability of your vehicle and may even invalidate any claims you may wish to make under the quarantee/warranty.

#### Technical changes

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components, software, wiring or data transfer in the vehicle may cause malfunctions. Due to the way the electronic components are linked together in networks, systems which are not directly affected may also be impaired by the faults. This can seriously impair your vehicle's safety and lead to excessive wear of its components.

Depending on the country, this may also invalidate the vehicle's type approval. Qualified workshops have full information on the manufacturerapproved repair methods. They can also give advice regarding official regulations for the vehicle.

Some convenience features, such as one-touch signalling, single door unlocking and display messages can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If any functions are reprogrammed, the information in this Owner's Manual may no longer be relevant for the functions that have been changed. Audi recommends having the reprogramming carried out and approved by a qualified workshop.

#### **WARNING**

If maintenance work, repairs, or technical changes to the vehicle (e.g. installation of additional parts) are not performed properly, this can cause serious injuries - risk of accident!

#### WARNING

A vehicle's engine compartment is a potentially hazardous area and working there can lead to serious injuries.

- Always exercise extreme caution when working in the engine compartment. Always keep to the generally accepted safety procedures and use your common sense. Never put yourself at risk of injury.
- Do not perform any work in the engine compartment if you do not fully understand the procedure or if you do not have suitable information, tools and equipment.
- If you are not sure how to proceed, have the work performed by a qualified workshop.

Work which is not performed properly can cause serious injuries.

#### (1) CAUTION

- If maintenance work, repairs, or technical changes to the vehicle (e.g. installation of additional parts) are not performed properly, this can cause damage to the vehicle (e.g. corrosion).
- If emergency repairs have been performed, have your vehicle checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- Audi cannot assume any liability for damage to the vehicle caused due to these conditions not being adhered to.

#### For the sake of the environment

- You can play your part in looking after the environment through regular vehicle maintenance.
- Technical changes to the vehicle can have a negative effect on both the fuel consumption and the emissions.
- The relevant safety requirements must be observed when individual components or the entire vehicle are scrapped. This is particularly important because pyrotechnic components are fitted in various areas of the vehicle, such as in the airbags and belt tensioners. Your authorised dealer is familiar with the regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.



Because of your vehicle's aluminium body concept, all servicing, repairs or other work on the car body must be carried out by an Audi workshop or a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory. This ensures that the necessary repairs or servicing are performed properly and that only Audi Genuine Parts are installed on your vehicle. Serious damage (e.g. corrosion damage) can be caused to your vehicle if non-genuine replacement parts or accessories are used or if repairs are not performed properly.

# Accessories and replacement parts

Take advice from a qualified workshop before purchasing accessories and replacement parts. Audi recommends that you have all work performed by an Audi workshop using Audi Genuine Parts and that you use Audi Genuine Accessories.

Audi cannot judge the reliability and suitability of non-genuine products or assume responsibility for them, even if they have been approved by an officially recognised technical testing authority or by the relevant authorities.

Any retrofitted equipment which has a direct effect on the control of the vehicle must bear the approval symbols for the respective countries (e.g. e mark in the European Union) and must be approved for use in your vehicle. A cruise control system is an example of this type of equipment.

Any additional electrical equipment which is connected, but which does not serve to control the vehicle itself, must bear the declarations of conformity for the respective countries (e.g. the **C**€ symbol in the European Union). Examples of such equipment include refrigerator boxes, computers or ventilator fans.



#### **WARNING**

- The use of non-approved accessories or the wrong replacement parts can cause damage to the vehicle - risk of accident!
- When replacing a factory-fitted front number plate holder, the new holder must be of the same size and material as the original one. On vehicles without a factory-fitted front number plate holder, a holder must not be fitted in the front area, as this can impair the function of the vehicle's systems.



### **CAUTION**

An external aerial installed properly is required in order to operate radio transmitters inside the vehicle. If this is not the case, the increased electromagnetic radiation can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. Please observe the relevant local regulations and follow the

instructions from the radio equipment manufacturer.

# Information according to EU chemicals regulation REACH

On the basis of the European chemicals regulation REACH, Audi provides information on materials which may be present in your vehicle.

You can call up this information on the Internet using your vehicle identification number ⇒ page 320:

www.audi.de/reach

#### Technical data

## Identification data

#### Vehicle data sticker

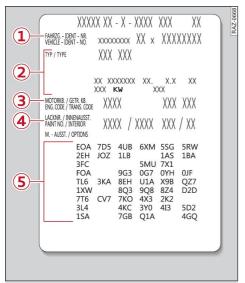


Fig. 213 Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker ⇒ Fig. 213 is located under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

One section of the vehicle data sticker is attached to the inside cover of this Owner's Manual before the vehicle is handed over.

The sticker lists the following data:

- Vehicle identification number (chassis number)
- Vehicle type / engine power / gearbox type

- 3 Engine and gearbox code
- (4) Paint No. / Interior equipment No.
- (5) Optional equipment codes

#### Chassis number

The chassis number can be found at the following locations:

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select
   CAR > Settings & service > Car information.
- On the vehicle data sticker
- At the front of the vehicle underneath the windscreen\*
- Stamped on the right side of the motor compartment

#### Type plate

The type plate is bonded onto the right door frame. Vehicles for certain export countries have no type plate.

### Explanation of technical data

The figures for some markets may vary due to special equipment as well as different export versions and test methods.

Please note that the details listed in the vehicle's registration documents can be taken as correct.



#### Note

In cases where technical data are not listed, the figures were not available at time of publication

### Vehicle data

#### Dimensions

	Length (mm)	Width (mm)	Width across mir- rors (mm)	Height, unladen (mm)
A3 Saloon	4495	1816	1984	1425
A3 Sportback	4343	1816	1984	1449 - 1458
S3 Saloon	4504	1816	1984	1415
S3 Sportback	4351	1816	1984	1438

#### **Capacities**

	Approximate capacities
Fuel tank (four-wheel drive)	55 ltr.
Fuel tank (front-wheel drive)	45 ltr.; 50 ltr. <sup>a)</sup>
Fuel tank (plug-in hybrid drive)	50 ltr.
AdBlue tank	12 ltr.; 13 ltr. <sup>a)</sup>
Windscreen/headlight washer system	5.2 ltr.
Windscreen washer system	3 ltr.

a) The values depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

## Weights

#### Roof load

Applies to: vehicles with roof carrier mountings

The maximum permissible roof load is 75 kg.

#### Kerb weight, gross vehicle weight, axle loads

The vehicle's kerb weight including the driver (75 kg) was calculated in accordance with EU reg-

ulation 1230/2012. Optional equipment may increase the kerb weight, in which case the permitted loading capacity is reduced accordingly.

The values in the tables below are given in kg.

	Kerb weight (unladen weight)	Gross vehicle weight	Maximum front axle weight	Maximum rear axle weight
A3 Saloon 30 TDI	1425	1905	1040	950
A3 Saloon 35 TDI	1490	1965	1090	970
A3 Saloon 30 TFSI	1300 / 1360 <sup>a)</sup>	1775 / 1840 <sup>a)</sup>	935 / 985 <sup>a)</sup>	930 / 940 <sup>a)</sup>
A3 Saloon 35 TFSI	1360 / 1395a)	1835 / 1875 <sup>a)</sup>	965 / 995a)	965 / 970 <sup>a)</sup>
A3 Sportback 30 TDI	1420	1905	1040	945
A3 Sportback 35 TDI	1485	1960	1090	965
A3 Sportback 30 TFSI	1295 / 1355a)	1770 / 1835a)	935 / 985a)	925 / 935 <sup>a)</sup>
A3 Sportback 35 TFSI	1355 / 1395a)	1830 / 1870 <sup>a)</sup>	965 / 995a)	960 / 965 <sup>a)</sup>
A3 Sportback 40 TFSI e	1635	2065	1065	1065
A3 Sportback 45 TFSI e	1660	2075	1075	1070
S3 Saloon TFSI	1580	2025	1095	1030
S3 Sportback TFSI	1575	2020	1095	1025

a) The value before the stroke applies to the manual gearbox; the value after the stroke applies to the automatic gearbox.

## Trailer weights

The vertical load exerted by the trailer draw bar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed 80 kg.

The values in the tables below are given in kg.

	Maximum rear	Trailer		
	axle weight when towing	Without brakes	With brakes on gradients up to 8%	With brakes on gradients up to 12%
A3 Saloon 30 TDI	1020	710	1800	1500
A3 Saloon 35 TDI	1040	740	1800	1600
A3 Saloon 30 TFSI	1000 / 1010a)	650 / 680a)	1500	1300
A3 Saloon 35 TFSI	1035 / 1040a)	680 / 690a)	1700	1500
A3 Sportback 30 TDI	1015	710	1800	1500
A3 Sportback 35 TDI	1035	740	1800	1600
A3 Sportback 30 TFSI	995 / 1005 <sup>a)</sup>	640 / 670 <sup>a)</sup>	1500	1300
A3 Sportback 35 TFSI	1030 / 1035 <sup>a)</sup>	670 / 690 <sup>a)</sup>	1700	1500
A3 Sportback 40 TFSI e	1140	750	1700	1400
A3 Sportback 45 TFSI e	1145	750	1700	1400

a) The value before the stroke applies to the manual gearbox; the value after the stroke applies to the automatic gearbox.

## Engine data

	Max. power output (kW at rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Maximum speed (in km/h)
A3 Saloon 30 TDI	85 / 2750 - 4250	300 / 1600 - 2500	210
A3 Saloon 35 TDI	110 / 3000 - 4200	360 / 1600 - 2750	232
A3 Saloon 30 TFSI	81 / 5500	200 / 2000 - [3000, 3500] <sup>a)</sup>	210
A3 Saloon 35 TFSI	110 / 5000 - 6000	250 / 1500 - 3500	232
A3 Sportback 30 TDI	85 / 2750 - 4250	300 / 1600 - 2500	206
A3 Sportback 35 TDI	110 / 3000 - 4200	360 / 1600 - 2750	224
A3 Sportback 30 TFSI	81 / 5500	200 / 2000 - 3000	204
A3 Sportback 35 TFSI	110 / 5000 - 6000	250 / 1500 - 3500	224
A3 Sportback 40 TFSI e	110 / 5000 - 6000 [150] <sup>b)</sup>	250 / 1550 - 3500 [350] <sup>b)</sup>	227
A3 Sportback 45 TFSI e	110 / 5000 - 6000 [180] <sup>b)</sup>	250 / 1550 – 3500 [400] <sup>b)</sup>	232
S3 Saloon TFSI	228 / 5450 - 6500	400 / 2000 - 5450	250
S3 Sportback TFSI	228 / 5450 - 6500	400 / 2000 - 5450	250

a) The values depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

b) The value in square brackets applies to the whole plug-in hybrid drive system.

# Radio equipment

## Information on EU Directive 2014/53/EU

#### Simplified EU declaration of conformity

Depending on its equipment, your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the equipment corresponds to the Directive 2014/53/EU insofar as this is required by law.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available on the Internet at the following address:

www.audi.com/generalinfo

CE

### Frequency table

Radio service	o service Frequency band		Supplier	
Audi connect key	13.56 MHz	60 dBμA/m @ 10m	28, 19	
Audi phone box	WCDMA FDDI: 1920 MHz - 1980 MHz	24 dBm	17	
	GSM 1800: 1710 MHz - 1785 MHz	30 dBm	17	
	LTE FDD8: 2500 MHz - 2570 MHz	23 dBm	17	
	GSM 900: 880 MHz - 915 MHz	33 dBm	17	
	LTE FDD 800: 832 MHz - 862 MHz	23 dBm	17	
Bluetooth	2402 MHz - 2480 MHz	10 dBm	30	
Connectivity	GSM 900: 880 MHz - 915 MHz	33 dBm	29	
box/cGW/OCU	LTE FDD B20: 832 MHz - 862 MHz	23 dBm	29	
	LTE FDD B28A: 703 MHz - 718 MHz	23 dBm	29	
	GSM 1800: 1710 MHz - 1785 MHz	30 dBm	29	
	UMTS FDD I: 1920 MHz - 1980 MHz	24 dBm	29	
	UMTS FDD III: 1710 MHz - 1785 MHz	24 dBm	29	
	UMTS FDD VIII: 880 MHz - 915 MHz	24 dBm	29	
	LTE FDD B1: 1920 MHz - 1980 MHz	23 dBm	29	
	LTE FDD B3: 1710 MHz - 1785 MHz	23 dBm	29	
	LTE FDD B7: 2500 MHz - 2570 MHz	23 dBm	29	
	LTE FDD B8: 880 MHz - 915 MHz	23 dBm	29	
Remote control for auxiliary heating	868.7 MHz - 869.2 MHz	25 mW ERP	26	
Front radar	76 GHz - 77 GHz	31.7 dBm	22	
Remote control key	433.05 MHz - 434.79 MHz	10 mW ERP	13	
	125 kHz	<22.7 dBμA/m @ 10m	13	
	6 GHz - 8 GHz	41.3 dBm	13	
Garage door opener	433.05 MHz - 434.79 MHz	0.04 mW ERP	11	
	868.00 MHz - 868.60 MHz	1.05 mW ERP	11	
	868.70 MHz - 869.20 MHz	1.05 mW ERP	11	

Radio service	Frequency band	Max. radio frequency power	Supplier
Rear corner radar	24.05 GHz - 24.25 GHz	14.25 dBm	13
Interface for entry and start system	125 kHz	<22.7 dBμA/m @ 10m	13
Anti-theft protection module (RSAD)	6 GHz - 8 GHz	41.3 dBm	13
Tyre pressure monitor- ing	433.92 MHz	10 mW	14
Wireless charging	110 kHz -113 kHz	42 dBμA/m	17
Wi-Fi	2402 MHz - 2480 MHz	8.5 dBm	30
	5735 MHz – 5815 MHz	13.5 dBm	30

## Supplier table

Number	Address
11	Gentex Corp. 600 North Centennial Street Zeeland, MI 49464 USA
13	Hella KGaA. Hueck & Co. Rixbecker Straße 75 59552 Lippstadt Germany
14	Huf Baolong Electronics Bretten GmbH Gewerbestr. 40 75015 Bretten-Gölshausen Germany
17	Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH Märkische Straße 72 15806 Zossen Germany
19	Marquardt GmbH Schloss-Straße 16 78604 Rietheim-Weilheim Germany
22	Robert Bosch GmbH CC-DA Postfach 1661 71226 Leonberg Germany
26	Digades GmbH, digitales u. analoges Schaltungsdesign Äußere Weberstraße 20 02763 Zittau Germany

Number	Address
28	Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co.
	KG
	Steeger Straße 17
	42551 Velbert
	Germany
29	LG Electronics European Shared
	Service Center B.V.
	Krijgsman 1
	1186 DM Amstelveen
	Netherlands
30	APTIVPORT SERVICES, S.A./BRAGA
	Rua Max Grunndig 1
	4705-820 BRAGA
	Portugal

### Further customer information

You can also find additional information e.g. product identifications at the Internet address www.audi.com/generalinfo.

Automatic wash and wipe . . . . . . . . . 60

Auxiliary air conditioning	Opening/closing	46
Auxiliary heating/ventilation 93	Opening/closing electrically	46
Average fuel consumption	Opening with foot gesture	47
Average speed	Releasing manually	48
Axle loads	Box spanner	293
322	Brake fluid	
В	Checking brake fluid level	
Background lighting	Brakes	
	Brake fluid	
Bag hooks	Emergency braking function	
Bandages  see First-aid kit	Hot	
	New brake pads	
Battery Charging (12 Volt vehicle battery)	Brightness, adjusting	
Charging (12 Volt vehicle battery) 276	Bulbs, changing	
High-voltage battery121Vehicle battery (12 Volt)275	Business address	221
Winter conditions (12 Volt vehicle battery) .275	_	
Battery (mobile phone), charging	C	
USB	Call list	198
Wirelessly	Cameras	
Battery (vehicle)	Areas covered	147
see High-voltage battery	Positions	148
Bicycle rack (trailer)	Capacities	
Biodiesel	AdBlue	260
Bioethanol (fuel)	Fuel tank	321
Blind	Washer fluid reservoir	321
Sun roof	Caps for wheel bolts, removing	295
Blower	Car care	
Blower, adjusting speed (automatic air condi-	Washing/cleaning	286
tioner)	Car keys	. 37
Bluetooth	Car wash	286
Audio player	Catalytic converter	263
Connecting a device	Central locking switch	39
Connecting a mobile phone 194	Central locking system	37
Deleting a device	Adjusting settings	38
Device overview	Auto Lock	37
Disconnecting a device 249	Boot lid	. 46
Displaying profiles 249	Convenience key	
Selecting a device	Convenience open/close	
Setting a favourite 249	Driver messages	
Boost function	Locking/unlocking doors manually	
Boost pressure display	Remote control key	
Boot	Vehicle key	
see Luggage compartment 84	Ceramic brakes	
Boot lid		323
Close button		253
General information 45	Changing bulbs	308

Data plans	209	Driving off (assist function)	
Data protection	315	see Hold assist	113
Date	18	Driving program	168
Setting	247	Driving school mode	251
Daytime running lights	54	Driving time	18
Deactivating front passenger's airbag	. 75	Driving tips	
Declarations of conformity	323	Driving efficiently	107
DEF		Driving through water	114
see AdBlue	260	Hills and gradients	114
Defrosting (windows) 89	9, 91	Dust filter	
DEF (instrument cluster)	14	see Pollution filter	. 88
Demo mode			
see Presentation mode	226	E	
Destination from map	219	E-mail	202
Details	218	E10	202
Diesel		see Ethanol (fuel)	252
Fuel	253	Economy tips	
Paraffin-based fuel		EDL .	
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)		see Electronic differential lock	118
see AdBlue	260	EDR	
Dimensions	320	see Event data recorder (EDR)	313
Dipped headlights	54	Efficiency assist	158
Directional tread (tyres)		Predictive control	164
Directory		Electrical socket	
Business card	199	see Power sources	82
Display		Electrical system	274
Cleaning	288	Electric range	
Distance covered	18	Electric windows	
Distance warning	170	Malfunction	
Doors		Electro-mechanical parking brake	
Child lock	48	Electronic differential lock	
Courtesy lighting	57	Electronic immobiliser	. 42
Locking/unlocking manually	39	Electronic stabilisation control	
Door safelock	40	Embedded SIM card	
Downhill speed control	114	Emergency assist	
Driver information system	. 15	Emergency braking function	
Drives		Emergency call 201,	
see Media	238	Emergency key	
Drive select		Emergency running	
see Audi drive select	116	Emission control system 263,	
Drive system		Energy consumers	
Audi drive select	116		
Drive system (driver message)	110	Energy flow display	108
Driving abroad	209	•	105
Driving away	99	Energy recovery	103

Fuses	Charging indicator on vehicle 125
Changing	Charging methods 121
Fuse list	Charging time
	Connecting charging cable 124
G	Driver message when charging 127
g-tron	Opening charging flap 124
see Natural gas engine 105, 254	Setting timers
Garage door opener	Transporting charging equipment 129
Gas odour	What to do if not using for a long time 123
Gear shift indicator	High-voltage system
	Hill hold assist
Glove box	Hills, driving on
Gradients, driving on	Hold assist
Greeting sound, setting 247	Home address
	HomeLink
Н	see Garage door opener 51
Handbrake	Home screen
see Electro-mechanical parking brake 112	Horn 8
Handsfree	Hotspot
Hands Free Profile	see Wi-Fi
Hazard alerts	
Hazard warning lights 57	I
Head-up display	Ignition
Adjusting brightness	Switching on/off
How to use	Immobiliser
Setting	see Electronic immobiliser 41
Headlight range control 54	Indicator lamps
Headlights	see Warning lamps 9
Headlight range control 54	Inflation pressures
Washer system 60	Tyre pressure loss indicator 284
Washer system (topping up washer fluid) . 277	Tyres
Washing	Inspection intervals
Head restraints, adjusting 68	Instrument cluster
Heated	Changing views
Rear window	Cleaning
Seats	Engine code
Heating	Failure
HFP	Gear shift indicator
see Hands Free Profile 194	On-board computer
High-visibility vest 292	Operation
High-voltage battery	Selecting layout
Audi e-tron charging system (compact) 130	Selecting tabs
Charging	Service interval display
Charging cable for public charging stations .129	Service interval display, natural gas system
Charging connections on vehicle 121	
Charging equipment	(g-tron)       278         Software information       250

Manual operation	MMI Radio
Boot lid	see Multi Media Interface 23
Charging connector	MMI Radio plus
Doors	see Multi Media Interface 23
Panorama sun roof 50	Mobile phone
Manual release	see Telephone
Fuel tank flap	Mobile phone tray
Map	see Audi phone box
Changing map scale 219	Mode 3 charging cable
Display	see Charging cable for public charging sta-
How to use	tions
Using a destination 219	Motorway light
MAP	Mountain passes
see Message Access Profile 202	Mounting pin (for changing wheels) 293
Map preview	Multi-function steering wheel
Map update	Assigning function to button
myAudi app	Buttons
Online	Operation
USB connection	Speech dialogue system
Massage function	Multi Media Interface
Front	Menus/symbols
Matrix LED headlights	Operation
Matt paintwork, washing 286	Switching on/off
Maximum speed	Music
Measurement units, setting	see Media
Media	Mute
Media centre	myAudi
Media drives	myAudi navigation
Formats supported	
	myAudi users
Memory function	N.I.
Memory list	N
see Favourites	Natural gas
Menu language	see Natural gas engine 105, 254
see Language, setting	Natural gas engine 105, 254
Message Access Profile	CNG
Messages	Fuel gauge
Mild hybrid drive	Fuel system leak
Mileage recorder	Gas odour
Resetting	LNG
Mirrors	Natural gas quality
Adjusting exterior mirrors	Operating mode
Anti-dazzle setting	Refuelling
Make-up mirrors 60	Service interval display, natural gas system
MMI Navigation System plus	(g-tron)
see Multi Media Interface 23	Tank cap

Particulate filter	R
Path descriptions	
Pedals	Radio       229         Radio text       232
Performance (engine)	Station list
Personal profiles	
see Users	Radio equipment
Petrol	Radio Equipment Directive
Phone book	Radio frequency
see Directory         199	see Waveband
Picture format	Radio transmitters
Video	Rain sensor/light sensor
PIN	Headlights
4-digit myAudi PIN	Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) 60
Protection	Random playback 240
Playback (media)	Range monitor
Plug-in hybrid drive	Range potential
Air conditioning	Range (electric)
Coolant	REACH (chemicals regulation) 319
Power meter	Reading lights 57
Plug-in hybrid mode	Rear air conditioner console
Podcast	Child lock
see Online radio	Rear carrier systems
Polishing	Towing mode
Pollen filter	Rear cross-traffic assist
see Pollution filter	Rear fog light
	Rear lights
Pollution filter	Washing
Power-operated boot lid	Rear seats, folding down
Power meter	Rear shelf
Power sources 82, 237	see Storage shelf behind rear head re-
Power steering	straints
see Steering	Rear window heating 90, 92
Prayer compass	Recuperation
Predictive control	Recuperation settings
Predictive messages	Releasing charging connector manually 127
Pre sense	
see Audi pre sense	Reminder signal
Presentation mode	Remote access rights (key user)
Pressure display (boost)	Remote control
Progressive steering	Auxiliary heating/ventilation
Pyrotechnic components	Garage door opener
	Remote control key
0	Convenience open/close
	LED
quattro	Replacement keys
Selective wheel torque control 118	Replacing the battery 43

Safelock mechanism 40	Search function
Unlocking/locking 42	Media
Repair kit	Radio
Tyre Mobility System (tyre repair kit) 293	see also Intelligent search 216
Repairs	Seat belts 69
Replacement keys 41	Cleaning
Replacement parts	Securing child restraint system 80
Rest recommendation	Seats
Rev counter	Adjusting
Reverse gear	Cleaning
see Transmission positions 100	Folding down
•	Head restraints 68
Reversing camera	Memory function
Right-hand traffic	Seat heating
Rims	Storing seat profile
Washing	Securing vehicle
Rolling	Selective catalytic reduction
Electro-mechanical parking brake 112	see AdBlue
Hold assist	Selector lever
Neutral (gearbox) 100	Selector lever position
Rolling away	see Transmission positions 100
Roof	Self-help
see Panorama sun roof 50	Sensors
Roof carrier	Areas covered
Roof load	Positions
Route guidance	Service interval display
Stopping	Service interval display, natural gas system (g-
see also Navigation 215	tron)
Running in	Service Schedule (digital)
New brake pads	
New tyres	Settings
	Bluetooth
S	
	Date and time         247           Directory         201
Safelock mechanism	E-mail
Satellite map	Language
Saving fuel	Measurement units
Coasting	Media
Economy tips	Navigation
Energy consumers	Radio
Recuperation	Sound
Scrappage	System
Screen	Telephone
see Touch display 21	Text message
Screwdriver	Time zone
	Wi-Fi hotspot
	Setup wizard

Shop	207	Storage shelf behind rear head restraints	. 83
Shuffle		Stretch net	86
see Random playback	240	Sun roof	
Side assist	176	see Panorama sun roof	50
Cleaning sensors	287	Sun visors	60
Side lights	. 54	Supplementary heater	. 92
SIM card	206	Surround view cameras	184
Smartphone		Suspension	116
see Telephone	194	Audi drive select	116
Snow chains	283	Suspension control	116
Software information		Swerve assist	175
Legal information	249	Switching between calls	200
Software version (MMI)		Switching engine off	109
Version information	249	Symbols	
Sound adjustment	247	Charging equipment	127
Source overview		Navigation	
Spare wheel		Traffic	
Speech dialogue system		see also Warning lamps	
How to use		Synchronisation (air conditioner)	
Speed display (driving school vehicles)		System settings	
Speed limit display	231	System seeings	247
see Traffic sign recognition	150	т	
Speed limiter	130		
see Speed regulation systems	156	Tailgate	
Speed limits	130	see Boot lid	46
see Traffic sign recognition	150	Tank	
Speedometer		Gas fuel gauge	258
		Natural gas	258
Speed regulation systems		Technical changes	317
Speed warning function		Technical data	320
Start/stop system		Telephone	194
Switching off/on		Answering/ending calls	200
Starting with jump leads		Audi phone box	196
Starting (engine)	109	Charging battery (USB)	196
Station memory		,	194
see Favourites		3 1	195
Steering		3	200
Audi drive select		3 1	196
Steering lock	. 97	External aerial	
Steering wheel		Options during a call	
Adjustment		Playing music	
Manual adjustment		Reminder signal	
Paddle levers		Wireless charging	197
see also Multi-function steering wheel		Temperature display	
Stopover (navigation)		Coolant	
Stopping vehicle	. 99	Temperature display (outside temperature)	. 18
Storage compartments	83		

VIEW button
Voice control function
External
Volume of announcements, setting 247
Volume, adjusting
W
Warning lamps 9
Warning triangle 292
Washing
Washing ornamental trim/mouldings 288
Washing tailpipes 288
Waveband
Waxing
Weights
Wheel bolts
Changing wheel(s) 295
Wheel covers, removing 295
Wheel imbalance 280
Wheels
Changing
Tyre pressure loss indicator 284
Washing
Wi-Fi
Settings
Using hotspot
Window blind
see Panorama sun roof 50
Windows
Child lock
Cleaning/de-icing
Convenience open/close
Windscreen Washing 60
Windscreen washer system 60, 277
Windscreen wipers 60
Winter conditions
Auxiliary air conditioning 95
Auxiliary heating
Cooling system
De-icing windows
Defrosting windows 89, 91
3

Diesel
Rear window heating 90, 92
Seat heating
Snow chains
Tyres
Vehicle battery (12 Volt) 275
Washing the vehicle 286
Windscreen washer system 277
Winter tyres
Wiper blades (front)
Changing 61
Cleaning 61
Wiper blades (rear)
Changing
Cleaning
Wireless Apple CarPlay
see Audi Smartphone Interface 245
Wireless charging



Owner's Manual Audi A3

Please note the following revision to ensure safe use of the Audi pre sense front system:

The event "You approach a stationary vehicle" described in **Driving situations** only applies to speeds of up to approx. 85 km/h. This event does not apply to speeds of up to approx. 250 km/h and the description for this vehicle is incorrect.

Below you will find the revised section on **Driving situations** for the Audi pre sense front system.

# Audi pre sense front

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense front

#### **Driving situations**

The system can react to certain events, depending on how quickly the vehicle is travelling.

The system can react to the following events up to a speed of approx 85 km/h:

- You approach a stationary vehicle.
- A pedestrian<sup>1)</sup> or cyclist<sup>1)</sup> is moving in your lane.<sup>2)</sup>

The system can react to the following events up to a speed of approx 250 km/h:

- A vehicle ahead brakes significantly.
- You approach a much slower vehicle from behind.
- You approach a stopped vehicle (the system is only capable of reacting if it previously detected that this vehicle was moving in the same direction as you).

Not available on vehicles for some markets.

<sup>2)</sup> The speed range may vary from country to country.

Audi works continuously to develop and further improve all products and models. Audi reserves the right to alter any part of the vehicle and its equipment or technical specifications at any time. The Owner's Manual is based on the information available at the time of printing. No legal commitment can therefore be implied by the information, illustrations or descriptions in this publication.

No part of this publication may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written per-

mission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG reserves the right to change the information in this publication without prior notice. All rights under the laws of copyright are expressly reserved by AUDI AG.



### For the sake of the environment

This environmentally friendly paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.

#### Supplement

English 08.2020 8Y0012720HA



8Y0012720HA